

# Social Science



# PARAMOUNT

## Coaching Centre Pvt. Ltd.

An ISO 9001 : 2008 Certified Company

Main Centre/Head Office

704, Above Big Apple, Near Batra Cinema, Mukherjee Nagar - Delhi - 09

Web : [paramountcoachingcenter.com](http://paramountcoachingcenter.com) Email : [paramount.no1@gmail.com](mailto:paramount.no1@gmail.com)

☎ : 011-27607854, 88608-22222, 88603-33333, 88608-33333



# HISTORY

SSC  
POT

LOT



# The Prehistoric Period

- ✓ The prehistoric period in the history of mankind can roughly be dated from 2,00,0000 BC to about 3500-2500 BC, when the first civilizations began to take shape.
- ✓ The first modern human beings or the Homo Sapiens set foot on the Indian subcontinent somewhere between 50000 BC and 40,000 BC and they soon spread through a large part of the subcontinent, including peninsular India.
- ✓ They continuously flooded the Indian subcontinent in waves of migration from what is present-day Iran.
- ✓ These primitive people moved in groups of few families and lived mainly on hunting and gathering.

## Stone Age

- ✓ The age when the prehistoric man began to use stones for utilitarian purpose is called as the Stone Age.
- ✓ Stone Age is divided into three broad divisions – Paleolithic Age or Old Stone Age (from unknown till 8000 BC), Mesolithic Age or Middle Stone Age (8000 BC – 4000 BC) and Neolithic Age or New Stone Age (4000 BC – 2500 BC) on the basis of the specialization of stone tools, which were made during that time.

## Paleolithic Age

- ✓ The human beings living in the Paleolithic Age were essentially food gatherers and depended on nature of food.
- ✓ The art of hunting and stalking wild animals individually and later in groups led to these people making stone weapons and tools.
- ✓ These kind of tools were generally used to kill small animals and for tearing flesh from the carcass of the hunted animals.

- ✓ These tools are characteristic of the Paleolithic Age and were very rough.

## Mesolithic Age

- ✓ In the Mesolithic Age, the stone tools began to be made more pointed and sharp.
- ✓ To ensure a life that had abundance of food and clothing, the stone tools began to appear in increasingly specialized ways.
- ✓ Apart from hand axes, they also produced crude, stone-tipped wooden spears, borers, and burins.
- ✓ This period also saw the domestication of animals and cultivation of wild varieties of crops.
- ✓ Because of farming, small settlements began to take shape.
- ✓ Archaeological excavations have unearthed Mesolithic sites in Chhota Nagpur area of central India and the areas in the south of the River Krishna.
- ✓ Fire was started to be produced

## Neolithic Age

- ✓ Neolithic Age (4000 BC – 2500 BC) or New Stone Age was the last phase of Stone Age and is characterized by very finely flaked small stone tools, also known as blades and burins.
- ✓ Neolithic Age also saw the domestication of cattle, horses, and other farm animals.
- ✓ An important invention of this time was the wheel.
- ✓ Fire was started to be produced

## Chalcolithic Phase

- ✓ Towards the end of Neolithic period, metals like bronze and copper began to be used.
- ✓ This was the Chalcolithic phase (1800 BC to 1000 BC).
- ✓ Some of the sites of this era are Brahmigiri (near Mysore) and Navada Toli (on River Narmada).



# 2

## Indus Valley Civilization

(2500 BC – 1500 BC)

### Important Discoveries

Year	Site	Discovered by
1921	Harappa	Dayaram Sahni
1922	Mohenjodaro	R.D. Banerjee
1953	Kalibangan	B.B. Lal
1955-56	Ropar	Y.D. Sharma
1957	Lothal	S.R. Rao
1973-74	Banwali	R.S. Bisht

### Facts:

- ✓ From the beginning of 4<sup>th</sup> millennium BC, the individuality of early village cultures began to be replaced by more homogenous style of existence.
- ✓ By the middle of 3<sup>rd</sup> millennium, a uniform culture had developed at settlements spread across nearly 500, 000 square miles, including parts of Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Gujarat, Baluchistan, Sindh and the Makran coast. It was a highly developed civilization and derived its name from the main river of that region-River Indus.
- ✓ The cities were far more advanced than their counterparts in prehistoric Egypt, Mesopotamia or anywhere else in Western Asia.

### Geographical Extent

- ✓ Covered parts of Punjab, Sindh, Baluchistan, Gujarat, Rajasthan and some parts of western UP.
- ✓ Major sites in Pakistan are Harappa (on Ravi in W. Punjab), Mohenjodaro (on Indus), Chanhudaro (Sindh), etc. In India, major sites are Lothal, Rangpur and Surkotda (Gujarat), Kalibangan (Rajasthan), Banwali (Hissar), and Alamgirpur (western UP).
- ✓ Largest and the latest site in India is Dholavira in Gujarat. Dr. J.P. Joshi and Dr. R.S. Bisht were involved in it.

### Town Planning

- ✓ Elaborate town planning. It follows the grid system. Roads well cut, dividing the town into large rectangular blocks.
- ✓ Used burnt bricks of good quality as the building material.
- ✓ Their drainage system shows developed sense of health and sanitation.
- ✓ The towns were divided into 2 parts: Upper Part of Citadel and Lower Part.
- ✓ In Mohenjodaro, a big public bath (Great Bath) has been found.

### Script and Language

- ✓ The script was boustrophedon, written from right

to left in one line and then from left to right in the next line.

- ✓ Not yet deciphered.
- ✓ The script is not alphabetical but pictographic (about 600 undeciphered pictographs).

### Religion

- ✓ The chief male deity was Pashupati Mahadeva (proto-Siva), represented in seals as sitting in a yogic posture on a low throne, and having three faces and two horns. He is surrounded by four animals (elephant, tiger, rhino and buffalo), each facing a different direction, and two deers appear at his feet.
- ✓ The chief female deity was Mother Goddess, who has been depicted in various forms.
- ✓ There is sufficient evidence for the prevalence of phallic (lingum) and yoni worship also.
- ✓ The worship of fire is proved by the discovery of fire altars at Lothal, Kalibangan and Harappa.
- ✓ Indus people also worshipped Gods in the form of trees (pipal, etc.) and animals (unicorn etc)
- ✓ Further they believed in ghosts and evil forces and used amulets as protection against them.

### Art and Craft

- ✓ The Harappan culture belongs to the Bronze Age.
- ✓ Bronze was made by mixing tin and copper.
- ✓ Tools were mostly made of copper and bronze.
- ✓ Cotton fabrics quite common. Woollen in winter.
- ✓ Very fond of ornaments (of gold, silver, ivory, copper, etc) and dressing up.
- ✓ Ornaments were worn by both men and women.
- ✓ Potter's wheel was in use-
  - Harappan Pottery is bright or dark red and is uniformly sturdy and well baked.
  - It is chiefly wheel made, and consists of both plain and painted ware, the plain variety being more common.
- ✓ They played dice games.

### Sources of Materials

Material	Source
Gold	Afghanistan, Persia Karnataka
Silver	Afghanistan, Iran
Copper	Baluchistan and Khetri (Rajasthan)
Tin	Afghanistan, Central Asia

### Agriculture

- ✓ Used wooden ploughs.
- ✓ Produced sufficient to feed themselves. Food grains were stored in granaries.



## Burial Practices

- ✓ Three forms of burials are found at Mohenjodaro, viz. complete burials, fractional burials (burial of some bones after the exposure of the body to wild beasts and birds) and post-cremation burials.
- ✓ The general practice was extended inhumation, the body lying on its back with the head generally to the north.

## Economic life

- ✓ Well-knit external and internal trade.
- ✓ Barter system was there.
- ✓ A dockyard has been discovered at Lothal.

## Trade and Commerce

- ✓ Inter-regional trade was carried on with Rajasthan, Saurashtra, Maharashtra, South India, parts of Western Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
- ✓ Foreign trade was conducted mainly with Mesopotamia and Baharam.
- ✓ Trade was carried on by land as well as overseas transport.
- ✓ Bullock carts and pack-oxen were employed for land transport.
- ✓ There is evidence of sea and river transport by ships and boats in several seals and terracotta models.

## Seals

- They are the greatest artistic creations of the Indus people.
- Most commonly made of Steatite (soft stone).
- Majority of the seals have an animal engraved on them with a short inscription.

## Decline

- ✓ The Harappan Culture lasted for around 1000 years.
- ✓ After 2000 BC, the Indus culture slowly declined and gradually faded away.
- ✓ Some ascribe this to the decreasing fertility of the soil on account of increasing salinity caused by expansion of the neighbouring desert.
- ✓ Others attribute it to some kind of depression in land, which caused floods.
- ✓ Still others point out that the Aryans destroyed it.
- ✓ According to some scholars, decline of trade, particularly oceanic trade with Sumerians, must have contributed partly to the decline.
- ✓ Even though there are various theories for the downfall of this civilization, the most accepted version is that of ecological imbalance.

## Major Sites

### Harappa

- ✓ So far 891 seals have been recovered from Harappa,

that is 40% of the total number of seals belonging to Indus Valley Civilization which have been found.

- ✓ A red sandstone naked male torso has been found which shows traces of tattooing.
- ✓ Between the granary and the citadel, there has been found a series of circular platforms, probably for the pounding of grain.
- ✓ At a lower level below the granary, platforms and the citadel, were crowded with rough dwellings which suggest slave habitats.

### Mohenjodaro

- ✓ In Hindi language, the word Mohenjodaro means 'mound of the dead'.
- ✓ It is the largest of all Indus cities.
- ✓ The Great Bath is the most important public place. Located at the center of the citadel, it is remarkable for beautiful brickwork. Its floor is made of burnt bricks set in gypsum and mortar. It must have served as a ritual bathing site.
- ✓ Remains have been found of an oblong multi-pillared assembly hall and a big rectangular building, which must have served administrative purposes.
- ✓ Most of Mohenjodaro houses are built of kiln-fired bricks.
- ✓ The major streets are 33 feet wide and run north-south, intersecting subordinate ones, running east-west at right angles.
- ✓ The evidence of Indian ships (figured on a seal) and a piece of woven cloth have been discovered from here.
- ✓ Parallel rows of two-roomed cottages found. The workmen or poor sections of the society perhaps used these cottages.
- ✓ A bronze dancing girl, Steatite statue of a priest and a seal bearing Pashupati have been found here.
- ✓ Excavation reveals that the city was flooded more than seven times.

### Kalibangan

- ✓ Has pre-Harappan as well as Harappan cultural phases.
- ✓ Less developed compared to Mohenjodaro.
- ✓ There is evidence of mud-brick fortification.
- ✓ Pre-Harappan phase here shows that the fields were ploughed unlike the Harappan period.
- ✓ Archaeologists have discovered two platforms (within the citadel) with fire altars suggesting the practice of cult sacrifice.
- ✓ The existence of wheel conveyance is proved by a cartwheel having a single hub.

### Banwali

- ✓ Like Kalibangan, Amri, Kot Diji and Harappa,

Banwali also shows two cultural phases-pre-Harappan and Harappan.

- ✓ Here we find large quantity of barely, sesamum and mustard.

### **Dholavira**

- ✓ It is the latest and one of the two largest Harappan settlements in India, the other being Rakhigarhi in Haryana.

- ✓ The other Harappan towns were divided into two parts-Citadel and the Lower Town, but Dholavira was divided into three principal divisions, two of which were strongly protected by rectangular fortifications.

There are two inner enclosures-the first one hemmed in the citadel (which probably housed the highest authority) and the second one protected the middle town (meant for the close relatives of

the rulers and other officials). The existence of this middle town, apart from the lower town, is the exclusive feature of this city.

### **Lothal**

- ✓ Only Indus site with an artificial brick dockyard. It must have served as the main seaport of the Indus people. It was surrounded by a massive brick wall, probably for flood protection.
- ✓ Lothal has evidence of the earliest cultivation of rice (1800 BC). The only other Indus site where rice husk has been found is Rangpur near Ahmedabad.
- ✓ Fire altars, indicating the probable existence of a fire cult, have been found.

Paramount Coaching Centre



## Vedic Age (1500 BC – 1000 BC)

- ✓ It is generally agreed that Aryans originally lived somewhere in Steppes region stretching from southern Russia to central Russia.
- ✓ The consensus is that originally, they lived somewhere in the east of Alps.
- ✓ On their way to India, Aryans first appeared in Iran and a little after 1500 BC, they appeared in India.
- ✓ Rig Veda has many things in common with Avesta - the oldest text in Iranian language.
- ✓ Rig Veda is the earliest specimen of any Indo-European language.
- ✓ Early Aryans were semi-nomadic and kept large herds of cattle.
- ✓ As they settled down in villages, they also became cultivators, using ox to draw their ploughs.
- ✓ The Indian sub-continent got its name Bharat Varsha after the Bharata tribe, which was the strongest one.
- ✓ During the later Vedic phase, the Aryans moved away from their early settlements to the Ganga-Yamuna Doab.
- ✓ Ramayana has partly unfolded the tale of Aryan advent into the south.

### Rig Vedic Polity

- ✓ The chief was the protector of the tribe or Jana.
- ✓ However, he did not possess unlimited powers as he had to reckon with the tribal assemblies.
- ✓ Sabha, Samiti, Vidhata and Gana were the tribal assemblies. Of these, Vidhata was the oldest. These assemblies exercised deliberative, military and religious functions.
- ✓ The two most important assemblies were Sabha and Samiti. Samiti was general in nature and less exclusive than Sabha.
- ✓ There were a few non-monarchical states (ganas), whose head was Ganapati or Jyestha.

### Rig Vedic Society

- ✓ People owed their primary loyalty to their tribe, which was called Jana.
- ✓ The family was essentially patriarchal and birth of a son was desired.
- ✓ The family was a large unit indicated by a common word for son, grandson, nephew and one word for paternal and maternal grandfather.
- ✓ Rashtra (kingdom) had not come into existence.

### Social Divisions

- ✓ When the Aryans first came to India, there was neither any consciousness of caste, nor were the professions hereditary. The word 'Varna' is used

in the Rig Veda with reference to only the Aryan or Dasa having, respectively, fair or dark complexion, but never with reference to the Brahmana or Rajanya (Kshatriya).

- ✓ Quadruple division of society made its formal appearance only at one place in the Tenth Mandala of Rig Veda (Purushasukta hymn). The term Shudra is mentioned for the first time here in the Tenth Mandala of Rig Veda.
- ✓ The Ashrama system had not developed fully till the Later Vedic Period.

### Rig Vedic Gods

- ✓ The early Vedic religion was naturalistic. Evidently, there were neither temples nor idols. The mode of prayer was recitation of mantras. Sacrifice was offered for Praja (children), Pasu (cattle) and Dhana (wealth) and not for spiritual upliftment or against misery.

#### Gods

Vayu	Wind God
Dyaus	Father of Heaven
Aditi	Mother of Surya
Maruts	Storm spirits
Gandharvas	Divine musicians
Ashvins	Healers of diseases and experts in surgical art
Ribhus	Gnomes
Apsaras	Mistresses of Gods.
Rudra	An archer God, whose anger brought disease

#### Female Deities

Usha	Goddess of Dawn
Aditi	Mother of Gods
Prithvi	Earth Goddess
Aryani	Forest Goddess
Saraswati	The River deity

### Position of Women

- ✓ Women attended Sabha and Vidhata in Rig Vedic times.
- ✓ Women held respectable positions in society. They could attend tribal assemblies. They took part in sacrifices along with their husbands. There are not examples of child marriage and the marriageable age for girls was 16 to 17 years.
- ✓ We also get evidence of widow remarriage and practice of Niyoga (levirate) in which a childless widow would co-habit with her brother-in-law until the birth of a son.
- ✓ Monogamy was the established practice. However, polygamy and polyandry were also known.

# 4

## Later Vedic Age (1000 BC – 600 BC)

- ✓ During the Later Vedic Age, the Aryans thoroughly subdued the fertile plains watered by Rivers Yamuna, Ganges and Sadanira. They crossed the Vindhya and settled in Deccan, to the north of Godavari.

### Political Organisation

- ✓ During the Later Vedic Age, popular assemblies lost much of their importance and royal power increased at their cost. In other words, chiefdom gave way to kingdom. Formation of large kingdoms made the king more powerful. For all practical purposes, kingship became hereditary.
- ✓ The Vidhata completely disappeared. Sabha and Samiti continued to hold ground, but their character changed and they were not more representative of the will of the majority.
- ✓ Women were no longer permitted to attend the assemblies, which came to be dominated by nobles and Brahmanas.
- ✓ The term *rashtra* indicating 'territory' first appeared in this period.

### Social Organisation

- ✓ Society in the Later Vedic Age became increasingly complex and came to be divided into four Varnas: Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas and Sudras.
- Brahmanas:** The growing cult of sacrifice enormously added to the power of Brahmanas, who performed various rituals and sacrifices for their clients. In the beginning, they were merely one of the sixteen classes of priests, but later on they overshadowed others.
- Kshatriyas:** They constituted the warrior class. Majority of the rulers belonged to this class.
- Vaisyas:** They were the agriculturists, cattle-rearers, traders, artisans and metal workers, which formed the bulk of population. In some texts, the Kshatriyas are represented as living on the tributes collected from the Vaisyas.
- Sudras:** They were the lowest in social hierarchy and were meant to serve the upper three Varnas.
- ✓ The upper three Varnas were known as the *Dvijas* (twice born) i.e. the upper three Varnas were entitled to 'upanayana' or investiture with the sacred thread.
- ✓ Education began with upanayana ceremony. Sometimes the girls were also initiated. The age of upanayana was 8 years for Brahmana, 11 for Kshatriya, and 12 for Vaisyas.
- ✓ Certain sections of artisans such as Rathakara or chariot-maker enjoyed high status and were entitled to the sacred thread ceremony.

- ✓ In Later Vedic Age, polygamy was prevalent and there were instances of child-marriage.
- ✓ The term *Nagara* appears for the first time in the Later Vedic Age, showing faint beginnings of town life.

### Later Vedic Religion

- ✓ Towards the end of the Vedic Age, a section of society began to resent priestly domination. The Upanishads criticized the cult of rituals and sacrifices and laid stress on 'Right Belief and Right Knowledge'.
- ✓ They emphasised that knowledge of self (Atman) should be acquired and relation of Atman with Brahma (God) should be properly understood.
- ✓ Deeds of one life affected the next. This gave the theory of *Karma*.

### THE VEDIC LITERATURE

- ✓ The word *Veda* is derived from the Sanskrit word *Vid* meaning, to know or knowledge par excellence.
- ✓ Vedic texts are divided between *Sruti* (based on revelation), which is distinct from *Smriti* (based on memory).
- ✓ Four Vedas and their Samhitas, the Brahmanas, the Aranyakas and the Upanishads form a class of literature known as *Sruti*.

#### The Vedas

- (a) **Rig Veda**
  - ✓ Oldest religious text in the world.
  - ✓ A collecting of hymns. Were recited at the time of sacrificial rites and other rituals with utmost devotion.
  - ✓ Contains 1028 hymns (1017+11 valakhilyas) and is divided into 10 mandalas.
  - ✓ The X mandal contains the famous *Purushsukta* which explains that the 4 varnas (Brahmans, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra) were born from the mouth, arms, thighs and feet of the creator, Brahma.
  - ✓ The third mandala contains the *Gayatri Mantra* (addressed to sun).
- (b) **Sama Veda**
  - ✓ Derived from the root 'Saman'. i.e., 'melody'. It is a collection of melodies.
  - ✓ It has 1603 verses but except 99 all the rest have been borrowed from Rig Ved.
  - ✓ Contains 'Dhrupada Raga'.
- (c) **Yajur Veda**
  - ✓ Deals with the procedure for the performance of sacrifices.



**(d) Atharva Veda**

- ✓ Divided into 20 kandas (books) and has 711 hymns-mostly dealing with magic (along with personal problems of people).

**The Brahmanas**

- ✓ They explain the hymns of the Vedas in an orthodox manner.
- ✓ Each veda has several Brahmanas attached to it.
  - Rigved: Kaushetki and Aitreya
  - Yajurveda: Taitriya and Shatpatha
  - Samaveda: Panchvish and Jemineya
  - Atharvaveda: Gopath

**The Aranyakas**

- ✓ Called 'forest books', written mainly by the hermits living in the jungles for their pupils.
- ✓ Deals with meaning of Rituals. Opposed to sacrifice and emphasize 'Meditation'.

**The Upanishads**

- ✓ The word means 'to sit down near someone' and denotes a student sitting near his guru to learn.
- ✓ They are the main source of Indian philosophy.
- ✓ There are 108 Upanishads.
- ✓ They also condemn the ceremonies and the sacrifices.

**Smritis**

- ✓ Explains rules and regulations in the Vedic life.
- ✓ Main are Manusmriti, Naradasmriti, Yagyavalkyasmriti and Parasharsmriti.

**Vedangas**

- ✓ Six Vedangas are Shiksha, Kalpa, Vyakarana, Nirukta, Chhanda and Jyotisha.
  - Shiksha deals with pronunciation.
  - Vyakarana with grammar.
  - Nirukta with etymology.
  - Chhanda with meter.
  - Jyotisha with astrology.

**Darshans**

- ✓ There are 6 schools of Indian philosophy known as Shad - Darshan.
- ✓ There are given by 6 philosophers of Ancient India:
  - Nyaya (Analysis) Darshana: Gautama.
  - Vaisheshika Darshana: Kanada Rishi (referred to as Kanu).
  - Sankhya Darshana: Kapila
  - Yoga Darshana: Patanjali.
  - Purva Mimansa: Jaimini
  - Uttara Mimansa: Badaryana or Vyasa (wrote Mahabharata, classified Vedas, composed the puranas, gave vedantic philosophy).

**Upavedas**

- ✓ There are four upavedas:
  - Dhanurveda (deals with art of warfare) (Upaveda of Yajur Veda).

- Gandharva veda (deals with art and music) (Upaveda of Sama Veda).
- Shilpa veda (deals with architecture) (Upaveda of Atharva Veda).
- Ayurveda (deals with medicine) (Upaveda of Rig Veda).

**Epics**

- ✓ Though the two epics-the Mahabharata and the Ramayana-were compiled later, they reflect the state of affairs of the Later Vedic Period.
- ✓ The Mahabharata, attributed to Vyasa, is considered older than the Ramayana and describes the period from the tenth century BC to the fourth century AD. It is also called Jaisamhita and Satasahasri Samhita and has one lakh verses.
- ✓ The Ramayana, attributed to Valmiki, has 24,000 verses. Its composition started in the fifth century BC and passes through five stages; the fifth stage ended in the twelfth century AD.

**Ashramas**

- ✓ The ashrama system is found mentioned for the first time in the Aitareya Brahmana.
- ✓ Meant mainly for regulating the life of the male members of the higher castes, they consisted for four stages: (a) Brahmacharin or student life; (b) Grihastha or life of the householder; (c) Vanaprastha or partial retirement and Sanyasin or complete retirement (ascetic life).
- ✓ Full recognition of the fourth stage was done only in the Post-Vedic period.

**Puranas**

- ✓ The strikingly varied nature of the contents of Puranas seems to be the result of diverse materials: tales, anecdotes, songs and ballads, traditional lore etc.

These include mythology, cosmogony, various legends, genealogical accounts, folk beliefs, law codes and miscellaneous topics.

The Puranic literature is thus a unique outcome of the ever-continuing synthesis of various socio-economic formations operative between the 5<sup>th</sup> century BC and the 12<sup>th</sup> century AD.

Every addition in the Puranic literature brought in its train numerous new deities with images and temples, pilgrimages and vows, sects etc.

The change in the mode of worship (from sacrifice to worship of idols) visual appeal of the deities as against the worship of ideas, the fact of idol worship being more satisfying than yajna or sacrifice, revulsion to the violence and bloodshed involved in animal sacrifices-all these explain the socio-religious-economic transformations taking place in the Aryan society.

The Puranas may be regarded as a unique record of the outcome of continual clash and friction, readjustment and mobilization, conservatism and the accommodating spirit of the Indian society, keen to come to terms with its evolving ethos.

# 5

## The rise of the Magadha Kingdom (600 to 300 BC)

### The Mahajanapadas

- ✓ About 6<sup>th</sup> century BC, iron implements began to be used widely.
- ✓ As iron implements helped clear the dense forests of the Gangetic plains, civilization expanded eastwards.
- ✓ The new agricultural tools and implements improved the knowledge of cultivation.
- ✓ This helped in the production of surplus food gains, which could be collected by the Kings to meet their military and administrative needs.
- ✓ Establishment of an agrarian economy enabled the people to lead a settled life, to stick to their land, and also to expand at the cost of the neighbouring virgin areas.
- ✓ Around this time, sixteen Mahajanapadas or kingdoms rose to pre-imminence in India.
- ✓ According to Anguttara Nikaya, they were-Kashi, Kosala, Anga, Magadha, Vajji, Malla, Chedi, Vatsa, Kuru, Panchala, Matsya, Surasena, Assaka, Avanti, Gandhara and Kamboja.
- ✓ These Mahajanapadas were either monarchical or republican in character.
- ✓ The Mahajanapadas of Anga, Kashi, Kosala, Chedi, Vatsa, Matsya, Shursen, Ashmak, Awanti, Gandhara and Magadha were ruled by kings or monarchs.
- ✓ The kings in these states had the supreme authority.
- ✓ The Mahajanapadas of Vrijji, Malla, Kuru, Panchal and Kamboj were republican states and so were other smaller states like Lichhavi, Shakya, Koliya, Bhagga and Moriya.
- ✓ These republican states had a Ganaparishad or an Assembly of senior and responsible citizens.
- ✓ This Gana-parishad had the supreme authority in the state.

### Magadhan Ascendancy

- ✓ Of the sixteen Mahajanapadas, Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa and Avanti were more powerful.
- ✓ They fought amongst themselves for political pre-eminence for about hundred years.
- ✓ Ultimately, Magadha, under the leadership of Bimbisara (542 – 493 BC) and Ajatshatru (493 – 461 BC) emerged victorious.
- ✓ The victory of Magadha was a victory for the monarchical system, which was now firmly established in the Ganges plain.
- ✓ Magadhan ascendancy began with Bimbisara of the Haryanka dynasty.
- ✓ He married the princesses of Kosala, Vaishali and Madra, which helped him in his expansionist policy.
- ✓ His one and only conquest was that of Anga. He also gained a part of Kashi as the dowry in his marriage with the sister of King Prasenajit of Kosala.
- ✓ Bimbisara was murdered by his own son, Ajatasatru (492-460 BC).
- ✓ He defeated Prasenajit, married his daughter, and annexed Kashi.
- ✓ Ajatasatru was succeeded by Udayin (460-444 BC), who founded the new capital at Pataliputra.
- ✓ The Haryanaka dynasty was succeeded by the Sisunaga dynasty, which destroyed the power of Avanti and incorporated it in the Magadhan empire.
- ✓ Thus, the 100-year-old rivalry between Avanti and Magadha came to an end.
- ✓ The Sisunagas were succeeded by the Nandas, who annexed Kalinga to the empire.
- ✓ Mahapadma Nanda was the most important king of his dynasty.
- ✓ The Nandas are said to have checked Alexander's army from advancing towards Magadha.
- ✓ Their rule was supplanted by that of the Mauryas.



# 6

## Religious Movements

The period between 7<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> century BC was a turning point in the intellectual and spiritual development of the whole world, for it witnessed the emergence of early philosophers of Greece, the great Hebrew poets, Confucius in China and Zoroaster in Persia.

It was at this time that Jainism and Buddhism arose in India, each based on a distinctive set of doctrines and each laying down distinctive rules of conduct for attaining salvation.

### Causes of New Movements

- ✓ Vedic philosophy had lost its original purity.
- ✓ Vedic religion had become very complex and degenerated into superstitions, dogmas, and rituals.
- ✓ Supremacy of the Brahmins created unrest in the society and Kshatriya reacted against the Brahmanical domination.
- ✓ Introduction of a new agricultural economy in eastern India.
- ✓ The desire of Vaishyas to improve their social position with the increase in their economic position due to the growth of trade.

### Buddhism

- ✓ Gautama, the Buddha also known as Siddhartha, Sakyamuni and Tathagata.
- ✓ Born in 563 BC (widely accepted) on the vaisakha purnima day at Lumbini, near Kapilvastu, capital of the Sakya republic.
- ✓ Left home at the age of 29 and attained Nirvana at the age of 35 at Bodhi Gaya.
- ✓ Delivered his first sermon at Sarnath.
- ✓ He attained Mahaparinirvana at Kusinara in 483 BC.

### Type of Buddhism

**Hinayana:** (a) Its followers believed in the original teachings of Buddha, (b) They sought individual salvation through self-discipline and meditation, (c) They did not believe in idol-worship, (d) Hinayana, like Jainism, is a religion without God, Karma taking the place of God. (e) Nirvana is regarded as the extinction of all. (f) The oldest school of Hinayana Buddhism is the Sthaviravada (Theravada in Pali) or the 'Doctrine of the Elders'. (g) Its Sanskrit counterpart, which is more philosophical is known as Sarvastivada or the doctrine which maintains the existence of all things,

physical as well as mental. (g) Gradually, from Sarvastivada or Vaibhasika branched off another school called Sautantrika, which was more critical in outlook.

**Mahayana:** (a) Its followers believed in the heavenliness of Buddha and sought the salvation through the grace and help of Buddha and Bodhisattvas. (b) Believes in idol-worship. (c) Believes that Nirvana is not a negative cessation of misery but a positive state of bliss. (d) Mahayana had two chief philosophical schools: the Madhyamika and the Yogachara. (e) The former took a line midway between the uncompromising realism of Hinayanism and the idealism of Yogachara. (f) The Yogachara school, founded by Maitreyanatha, completely rejected the realism of Hinayana and maintained absolute idealism.

### Buddhist Councils

*The first Council was held in 483 BC at Sattapanni cave near Rajagriha to compile the Sutta Pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka.*

*The second council was held at Vaisali in 383 BC. The monks of Vaisali wanted some change in the rites. Schism into Sthaviraadins and Mahasanghikas.*

*The third council was held at Pataliputra during the reign of Asoka, 236 years after the death of Buddha. It was held under the Presidentship of Moggalliputta Tissa to revise the scriptures.*

*The fourth council was held during the reign of Kaniska in Kashmir under the Presidentship of Vasumitra and resulted in the division of Buddhists into Mahayanists and Hinayanists.*

### Five Great Events of Buddha's Life and their Symbols

- Birth: Lotus and Bull
- Great Renunciation: Horse
- Nirvana: Bodhi tree
- First Sermon: Dharmachakra or wheel
- Parinirvana or death: Stupa

### Four Noble Truths

- The world is full of sorrows.
- Desire is root cause of sorrow.
- If Desire is conquered, all sorrows can be removed.
- Desire can be removed by following the eight-fold path.

### Eight Fold Path

- *Right understanding*
- *Right speech*
- *Right livelihood*
- *Right mindfulness*
- *Right thought*
- *Right action*
- *Right effort*
- *Right concentration*

### **Three Ratnas**

- *Buddha*
- *Dhamma*
- *Sangha*

### **Contribution of Buddhism**

- ✓ The doctrine of Ahimsa-so strongly stressed, devoutly preached and sincerely practised by the Buddhists, was incorporated in Hinduism of later days.
- ✓ The practice of worshipping personal Gods, making their images and erecting temples in their honour became a part of the later day Hinduism.
- ✓ Buddhism proved to be one of the greatest civilizing forces, which India gave to the neighbouring countries.
- ✓ Buddhism broke the isolation of India and helped in establishment of intimate contacts between India and other countries.
- ✓ Buddha extended the teaching of two elder contemporaries, Alara Kalama, and Udlaka.

### **Jainism**

- ✓ Born in 540 BC at Kundagrama near Vaisali.
- ✓ Siddhartha was his father; Trisala his mother, Yasoda his wife and Anojja was the daughter.
- ✓ Attained Kaivalya at Jrimbhikagrama in eastern

India at the age of 42.

- ✓ Died at the age of 72 in 468 BC at Pavapuri near Rajagriha.
- ✓ He was called Jina or Jitendriya, Nirgrantha and Mahavira.

### **The Principle of Jainism as Preached by Mahavira**

- ✓ Rejected the authority of Vedas and the Vedic rituals.
- ✓ Did not believe in existence of God.
- ✓ Believed in Karma and the transmigration of soul.
- ✓ Laid great emphasis on equality.

### **Jaina Councils**

**First Council** was held at Pataliputra by Sthulabahu in the beginning of the third century BC and resulted in the compilation of 12 Angas to replace the lost 14 Purvas.

**Second Council** was held at Valabhi in the 5<sup>th</sup> century AD under the leadership of Devaradhi Kshamasramana and resulted in final compilation of 12 Angas and 12 Upangas.

### **Way to Nirvana (Three Ratnas)**

- *Right faith (Samyak vishwas)*
- *Right knowledge (Samyak jnan)*
- *Right conduct (Samyak karma)*

### **Five Main Teachings**

- (i) Non-injury (ahimsa) (ii) Non-lying (saryai) (iii) Non-stealing (asateya) (iv) Non-possession (aprigraha). (v) Observe continence (Brahmacharya). (The first four principles are of Parsavanath and the fifth Bramacharya was included by Mahavira).





# The Mauryan Empire

## (325-183 BC)

### Chandragupta Maurya

- ✓ In 305 BC Chandragupta defeated Seleucus Nikator, who surrendered a vast territory.
- ✓ Megasthenes was a Greek ambassador sent to the court of Chandragupta Maurya by Seleucus.
- ✓ Chandragupta became a Jain and went to Sravanbelgola with Bhadrabahu, where he died by slow starvation (Salekhan).
- ✓ Under Chandragupta Maurya, for the first time, the whole of northern India was united.
- ✓ Trade flourished, agriculture was regulated, weights and measures were standardized and money came into use.
- ✓ Taxation, sanitation and famine relief became the concerns of the State.

### Bindusara

- ✓ Bindusara extended the kingdom further and conquered the south, as far as Mysore.
- ✓ Bindusara asked Antiochus I of Syria to send some sweet wine, dried figs, and a Sophist. Antiochus I sent wine and figs but politely replied that Greek philosophers are not for sale.
- ✓ Bindusara patronized Ajivikas.

### Asoka

- ✓ According to the Buddhist tradition Asoka usurped the throne after killing his 99 brothers and spared Tissa, the youngest one. Radhagupta a Minister of Bindusara helped him in fratricidal struggle.
- ✓ Under Asoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its climax. For the first time, the whole of the subcontinent, leaving out the extreme south, was under imperial control.
- ✓ Ashoka fought Kalinga war in 261 BC in the 9<sup>th</sup> years of his coronation. The king was moved by massacre in this war and therefore abandoned the policy of physical occupation in favour of policy of cultural conquest. In other words, Bherighosha was replaced by Dhammaghosha.
- ✓ Asoka was not an extreme pacifist. He did not pursue the policy of peace for sake of peace under all conditions. Thus, he retained Kalinga after its conquest and incorporated it into his empire.

- ✓ Asoka sent missionaries to the kingdoms of Cholas and Pandyas, and five states ruled by Greek kings. We also know that he sent missionaries to Ceylon and Suvarnabhumi (Burma) and also parts of South East Asia.

### Facts about Mauryas

- ✓ During Mauryan rule, though there was banking system in India, yet usury was customary and the rate of interest was 16% per annum on borrowing money. In less secure transactions (like sea Voyages etc) the rate of interest could be as high as 60% per annum.
- ✓ During Mauryan period, the punch marked coins (mostly of silver) were the common units of transactions.
- ✓ Tamralipti in the Gangetic delta was the most prosperous port on the East Coast of India.
- ✓ Megasthenes in his Indica had mentioned 7 castes in Mauryan society. They were philosophers, farmers, soldiers, herdsmen, artisans, magistrates and councilors.

### The Decline

- ✓ Mauryan Empire lasted a little over a century and broke up fifty years after the death of Asoka.
- ✓ In 185 BC, Mauryan king was overthrown by Pushyamitra Shunga, an ambitious Commander-in-Chief of armed forces.
- ✓ He started Shunga dynasty in Magadha.
- ✓ Mauryan Empire ushered in a dream that was to survive and echo again and again in centuries to come.

### Some probable causes of decline of the Mauryan Empire:

1. Brahmanical reaction
2. Financial crisis
3. Oppressive rule
4. Neglect of north-west frontier.
5. Weak policy of Asoka.
6. Pacific policy of Asoka.
7. News knowledge in outlying areas-dissemination of Knowledge of Manufacturing Iron.

### THE INDO-GREEKS

- The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was Menander (165-145 BC), also known as Milinda.
- He was converted into Buddhism by Nagasena (described in the Pali text, Milinda panho or The Questions of Milinda).
- Greeks were the first to issue coins which can be definitely attributed to the kings, and also the first to issue gold coins in India.
- The Greeks were followed by the Shakas, who controlled a larger part of India than the Greek did.
- A king of Ujjain, who called himself Vikramaditya, defeated Shakas. An era called the Vikram Samvat is reckoned from the event of his victory over the Shakas in 57 BC.

### THE SHAKAS OR

### SCYTHIANS

### THE PARTHIANS

### THE KUSHANS

(45 AD)

- The most famous Parthian King was Gondophernes (AD 19-45), in whose reign St. Thomas is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.
- Kanishka was their most famous king.
- He patronized the following persons:
  - Ashwaghosha (wrote 'Buddhacharita', which is the biography of Buddha).
  - Nagarjuna (wrote 'Madhyamik Sutra')
  - Vasumitra (Chairman of fourth Buddhist Council)
  - Charak (a physician, wrote 'Charak Samhita')
- Kanishka is known in history for two reasons:
  - He started an era in AD 78, which is now known as Saka era and is used by the Govt. of India.
  - He extended his whole-hearted patronage to Buddhism (Held the fourth Buddhist Council in Kashmir).

### THE SUNGA DYNASTY

- Pushyamitra founded this dynasty.
- They were basically Brahmins. This period saw the revival of Brahmatism.
- Patangali's classic Mahabhashya was written at this time.

### THE KANVA DYNASTY

- The founder of this short-lived dynasty was Vasudeva, who killed the last Sunga king, Devabhuti.

### THE SATAVAHANAS OR

### THE ANDHRAS

- They were swept away by Satavahanas of the Deccan.
- They were the successors of the Mauryans in the Deccan and the Central India.
- Simuka is regared as the founder of this dynasty. The most important king was Gautamiputra Satakarni (AD 106-130) who raised the power and prestige of Satavahanas to greater heights.



## Sangam Age

### THE PANDYAS

- Their capital was Madurai.
- The Pandya kings profited from trade with the Roman empire and sent embassies to the Roman emperor Augustus.

### THE CHOLAS

- The kingdom was called Cholamandalam or Coromandal. The chief centre was Uraiyur, a place famous for cotton trade. Capital was Kaveripattanam/Puhar.
- Main source of wealth was trade in cotton cloth. They also maintained an efficient navy.

### THE CHERAS

- Their capital was Vanji (also called Kerala country).
- It owed its importance to trade with the Romans. The Romans set up two regiments there to protect their interests.

### NOTE

- All the gathered information on Pandyas, Cholas and Cheras is based on Sangam literature. Sangam was a college or assembly of Tamil poets held probably under Royal Patronage (esp. Pandyas).
- Sangam age corresponds to the post-Maurya and the pre-Gupta period.

### The Early Kingdoms

#### The Pandyas (Emblem-Fish)

- ✓ The Pandyas were first mentioned by Megasthenes, were said that their kingdom was famous for pearls.
- ✓ The Pandyan territory included modern districts of Tirunelveli, Ramnad and Madurai in Tamil Nadu. It had its capital at Madurai situated on the banks of Vaigai river.
- ✓ The Pandyas kingdom profited from trade with Roman Empire and sent emissaries to Roman emperors, Augustus and Trojan.
- ✓ The earliest known Pandyan ruler was Mudukudumi, who ruled from Madurai. He accused Kovalan of theft. As a result, the city of Madurai was laid under a curse by Kannagi (Kavalan's wife).

#### The Cholas (Emblem - Tiger)

- ✓ The Chola kingdom called as Cholamandalam was situated to the north-east of Pandya kingdom between Pennar and Vellar rivers.
- ✓ The Chola kingdom corresponded to modern Tanjore and Tiruchirapalli districts.
- ✓ Its main capital was Uraiyur, a place famous for cotton trade. One of the main sources of wealth for Cholas was trade in cotton cloth.
- ✓ Puhar, identical with Kaverippattinam was the main port of Cholas and served as alternative capital of Cholas.

- ✓ The earliest known Chola king was Elara who in 2<sup>nd</sup> century BC conquered Sri Lanka and ruled over it for nearly 50 years.

- ✓ Their greatest king was Karikala (man with charred leg) who founded Puhar and constructed 160 km of embankment along the Kaveri River.

They maintained an efficient navy.

The Cholas were wiped out by the attack of Pallavas from North.

#### The Cheras (Emblem - Bow)

- ✓ The Chera country occupied the portion of both Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- ✓ The capital of Cheras was Vanji.
- ✓ Its main ports were Muzris and Tondi.
- ✓ The Roman set up two regiments at Muzris (identical with Cranganore) in Chera country. They also built a temple of Augustus at Muzris.
- ✓ One of the earliest and better known Chera rulers was Udiyangeral. It is said that he fed both the armies of Kurukshetra war and so earned the title Udiyangeral.
- ✓ The greatest of Chera king however was Senguttuvan or Red Chera. It is said that he invaded north and even crossed the Ganga.
- ✓ He was also the founder of the famous Pattini cult related to worship of goddess of chastity - Kannagi.

# 9

## The Age of the Guptas

(320-550AD)

### The Gupta Dynasty

<i>Chandragupta I</i>	320-335 AD
<i>Samudragupta</i>	335-375 AD
<i>Ramagupta</i>	375-380 AD
<i>Chandragupta Vikramaditya</i>	380-413 AD
<i>Kumargupta Mahendraditya</i>	415-455 AD
<i>Skandagupta</i>	455-467 AD

### Later Guptas

- ✓ *Purugupta, Narasimhagupta, Baladitya, Kumaragupta II, Buddhagupta\*, Bhanugupta, Harshagupta, Damodargupta, Mahasenagupta*
- ✓ Some 500 years after the collapse of Mauryan Empire, a new dynasty called Guptas arose in Magadha and established its control over the greater part of India (though their empire was not as large as that of Mauryas).
- ✓ This period is also referred as the 'Classical Age' or 'Golden Age' of ancient India.

### Chandragupta I

- ✓ He was the first Gupta ruler to assume the title of Maharajadhiraja.
- ✓ He strengthened his kingdom by matrimonial alliance with the powerful family of Lichchhavis who were the rulers of Mithila. His marriage to Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi brought an enormous power, resources and prestige, he took advantage of the situation and occupied the whole of fertile Gangetic valley.
- ✓ He started the Gupta Era in 319-20 AD.

### Samudra Gupta

- ✓ Samudragupta was perhaps the greatest king of Gupta dynasty.
- ✓ His name appear in Javanese text *Tantrikamandaka*, and Chinese writer, Wang-Hiuen-Tsang refers that an ambassador was sent to his court by King Meghvarma of Sri Lanka, who had asked his permission to build a Buddhist monastery at Bodh Gaya for the monks travelling from Sri Lanka.

- ✓ The most detailed and authentic record of his reign is preserved in the Allahabad pillar inscription, composed by his court poet Harisena.
- ✓ Samudragupta believed in policy of war and conquest and has been termed as the Napoleon of India by Vincent A. Smith.
- ✓ When he died his mighty empire bordered with Kushan of Western province (modern Afganistan and Pakistan) and Vakatakas in Deccan (modern southern Maharashtra).
- ✓ Allahabad pillar inscriptions mentions the title Dharma Prachar Bandhu for his – that is he was the upholder of Brahmanical religion.
- ✓ After all his military triumphs, he performed the Ashwamedha, which is evident on some of his coins. Ashwamedha gave him the coveted title of Maharajadhiraj, the supreme king of kings. His greatest achievement can be described as the political unification of most of the India or Aryavarta into a formidable power.
- ✓ Coins – Archer types, tiger type and Battle type. On some of his gold coins he is represented playing the Veena.

### Position of Women

- ✓ The position of women deteriorated further.
- ✓ Polygamy was common.
- ✓ The first example of sati appears in Gupta time in 510 AD in Eran in Madhya Pradesh.
- ✓ The women of higher orders did not have access to independent source of livelihood.
- ✓ Women lacked property rights. However stridhana was considered her property.

### Trade and Coinage

- ✓ In Gold content, Gupta coins are not as pure as Kushans.
- ✓ The Guptas also issued good number of silver coins for local exchange.
- ✓ The Gupta copper coins are very few as compared to Kushanas, which show that use of money did not touch common people.

**Harshavardhana (606-647 AD)**

- ✓ Harsha belonged to Pushyabhuti dynasty, which ruled from Thanesvar. Pushyabhutis were the feudatories of the Guptas, but had assumed independence after Huna invasions.
- ✓ His reign is comparatively well-documented, thanks to his court poet Bana Bhatta, who was the author of works such as Harshacharita (as account of Harsha's rise to power), Kadambari and Parvatiparinay.

**Pallavas (560-903 AD)**

- ✓ There is controversy regarding the origin of Pallavas. Possibly the Pallavas were a local tribe who established their authority in the Tondainadu or the land of creepers.
- ✓ They were orthodox Brahmanical Hindus and their capital was at Kanchi.
- ✓ Both Chalukyas and Pallavas tried to establish their supremacy over land between Krishna and Tungabhadra.
- ✓ Pallava king Narasimhvarman (630-68 AD) occupied Chalukyan capital at Vatapi in about 600 AD and assumed the title Vatapikonda.

**Chola empire (9<sup>th</sup>-12<sup>th</sup> Century)**

- ✓ The founder of Chola Dynasty was Vijayalaya, who was at first a feudatory of the Pallavas. He captured Tanjore in 850 AD.
- ✓ The greatest Chola rulers were Rajaraja (985-1014 AD) and his son Rajendra I (1014-1044 AD)
- ✓ Raja built a Saiva temple of Rajarajeshwara at Tanjore.
- ✓ The Chola Empire was divided into Mandalams or provinces and these in turn were divided into Valanadu and Nadus.

**Chalukyas (546-757 AD)**

- ✓ They established their capital at Vatapi (Badami) in district of Bidar in Karnataka.
- ✓ Pulakesin II was able to check Harsha's design to conquer Deccan.
- ✓ The Chinese pilgrim Hiuen Tsang visited his kingdom.
- ✓ Pallava ruler Narsimhavarman I invaded the Chalukya kingdom, killed Pulakesin II and captured Badami.



# DYNASTIES AND RULERS IN ANCIENT INDIA

## HARYANKA DYNASTY

**Bimbisara**

(544 BC-492 BC)

## AJATSHATRU

(492 BC-460 BC)

**UDAYIN** (460 BC-444 BC)

## SHISHUNAGA DYNASTY

## NANDA DYNASTY

(1st of Non-Kshatriya Dynasties)

### NOTE

- **Alexander's Invasion:** Alexander invaded India in 326 BC. He fought the famous Battle of Hydaspas (on banks of Jhelum) with the king of Punjab, Porus.

## THE MAURYAN DYNASTY

**Chandragupta Maurya**

(322-297 BC)

**Bindusara**

(297-273 BC)

**Ashoka**

(269-232 BC)

- Contemporary of Buddha.
- His capital was Rajgir (Girivraja). He strengthened his position by matrimonial alliance with the ruling families of Kosala, Vaishali, and Madra (3 wives).
- Son of Bimbisara, killed his father and seized the throne. Annexed Vaishali and Kosala.
- He founded the new capital at Pataliputra, situated at the confluence of the Ganga and Son.
- Founded by a minister Shishunaga. Dynasty lasted for two generations only.
- Greatest achievement was the destruction of power of Avanti.
- Considered by many as the first non-Kshatriya dynasty. Founder was Mahapadma Nanda.
- Alexander attacked India in their reign. DhanaNanda was there at that time.

- With the help of Chanakya, he overthrew the Nandas.
- Defeated Seleucus, the general of Alexander. Seleucus sent Megasthenes (the author of 'Indica') to his court.
- Called Amitraghata by Greek writers.
- He is said to have conquered 'the land between the 2 seas', i.e., the Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal.
- Regarded as one of the greatest kings of all times.
- The Kalinga War (260 BC, mentioned in XIII rock edict) changed his attitude towards life. Ashoka became a Buddhist after that.
- The emblem of Indian Republic has been adopted from the 4-lion capital of the Ashokan pillar at Sarnath.

## THE INDO-GREEKS

- Built the Sanchi Stupa in present day Madhya Pradesh.
- The most famous Indo-Greek ruler was Menander (165-145 BC), also known as Milinda.

He was converted into Buddhism by Nagasena (described in the Pali text, Milinda panho or The Questions of Milinda).

- Greeks were the first to issue coins which can be definitely attributed to the kings, and also the first to issue gold coins in India.
- The Greeks were followed by the Shakas, who controlled a larger part of India than the Greek did.
- A king of Ujjain, who called himself Vikramaditya, defeated Shakas. An era called the Vikram Samvat is reckoned from the event of his victory over the Shakas in 57 BC.

## THE SHAKAS OR SCYTHIANS

## THE PARTHIANS

- The most famous Parthian King was Gondopernes (AD 19-45), in whose reign St. Thomas is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.

## THE KUSHANS

(45 AD)

- Kanishka was their most famous king.
- He patronized the following persons:
  - Ashwaghosha (wrote 'Buddhacharita', which is the biography of Buddha).

- Nagarjuna (wrote 'Madhyamik Sutra')
- Vasumitra (Chairman of fourth Buddhist Council)
- Charak (a physician, wrote 'Charak Samhita')
- Kanishka is known in history for two reasons:
  - He started an era in AD 78, which is now known as Saka era and is used by the Govt. of India.
  - He extended his whole-hearted patronage to Buddhism (Held the fourth Buddhist Council in Kashmir).

#### THE SUNGA DYNASTY

- Pushyamitra founded this dynasty.
- They were basically Brahmins. This period saw the revival of Bhagvatism.
- Patangali's classic Mahabhashya was written at this time.

#### THE KANVA DYNASTY

- The founder of this short-lived dynasty was Vasudeva, who killed the last Sunga king, Devabhuti.
- They were swept away by Satavahanas of the Deccan.

#### THE SATAVAHANAS OR THE ANDHRAS

- They were the successors of the Mauryans in the Deccan and the Central India.
- Simuka is regared as the founder of this dynasty. The most important king was Gautamiputra Satakarni (AD 106-130) who raised the power and prestige of Satavahanas to greater heights.

#### THE PANDYAS

- Their capital was Madurai.
- The Pandya kings profited from trade with the Roman empire and sent embassies to the Roman emperor Augustus.

#### THE CHOLAS

- The kingdom was called Chola mandalam or Coromandal. The chief centre was Uraiyur, a place famous for cotton trade. Capital was Kaveripattanam/Puhar.
- Main source of wealth was trade in cotton cloth. They also maintained an efficient navy.

#### THE CHERAS

- Their capital was Vanji (also called Kerala country).
- It owed its importance to trade with the Romans. The Romans set up two regiments there to protect their interests.

#### NOTE

- All the gathered information on Pandyas, Cholas and Cheras is based on Sangam literature. Sangam was a college or assembly of Tamil poets held probably under Royal Patronage (esp. Pandyas).
- Sangam age corresponds to the post-Maurya and the pre-Gupta period.

#### THE GUPTA DYNASTY

##### Chandragupta-I (AD 319-335)

- Started the Gupta era in 319-320 AD.
- He enhanced his power and prestige by marrying Kumara Devi, princess of the Lichchavi clan of Nepal.
- He acquired the title of Maharajadhiraj.

##### Samudragupta (AD 335-380)

- The Gupta kingdom was enlarged enormously by Chandragupta's son Samudragupta, because of his bravery and generalship he is called the 'Napoleon' of India (by the historian V.A. Smith).
- He assumed the titles of Kaviraj and Vikramanka.

##### Chandragupta-II (AD-380-413)

- Took the title of Vikramaditya by defeating Rudrasimha III, a Kshatrap king of Ujjain.
- He was the first ruler to issue silver coins. Also issued copper coins.
- The iron pillar inscription, fixed near Qutabminar in Delhi mentions a king Chandra (considered by many as Chandragupta II only).
- His court was adorned by celebrated nine gems (navratnas) including Kalidasa, Amarsimha, Varahmihir, and Dhanvantri.
- Chinese pilgrim Fahien visited India at this time.

##### Kumaragupta-I (AD-413-455)

- He adopted the title of Mahendraditya.
- Founded Nalanda University (a renowned university of ancient India.)
- In the last years of his reign, the peace and prosperity of the empire was disturbed due to the invasion of Turko- Mongol tribe, Hunas. During the war with the Hunas, Kumaragupta died.

## **Skandagupta**

(AD 455-467)

## **PUSHYABHUTIDYNASTY**

**Harsha Vardhana**

(AD 606-647)

## **CHALUKYAS OF VATAPI**

(Badami)

## **RASHTRAKUTAS**

## **THE GANGAS**

## **THE PALLAVAS**

## **THE IMPERIAL CHOLAS**

(AD 864-1279)

## **THE PALAS OF BENGAL** (Capital: Monghyr)

### **NOTE**

*3 rival powers-Pratiharas, Palas and Rashtrakutas declined almost simultaneously as there was extra pressure to maintain their armies as well as the rise of feudatories.*

## **THE RAJPUTS**

- They were divided into 4 clans-
- Pratihara or Pariharas of S. Rajasthan.
- Chauhans of E. Rajasthan.
- Chalukyas or Solankis of Kathiwar.
- Parmaras or Pawars of Malwa.

- Kumaragupta-I was followed by Skandagupta. He faced Hunas effectively.
- After his death, the great days of the Guptas were over. The empire continued but central control weakened, and local governors became feudatory kings with hereditary rights.

## **Post Gupta Period**

- Belonged to Pushyabhuti family & son of Prabhakar Vardhan.
- Originally belonged to Thaneshwar, but shifted to Kannauj.
- Defeated by Pulakesin-II, the great Chalukya king, on the banks of Narmada in 620.
- Chinese pilgrim, Hieun Tsang (Prince of Travelers) visited during his reign.
- He established a large monastery at Nalanda. Banabhatta, who adorned his court wrote Harshacharita and Kadambari. Harsha himself wrote 3 plays-Priyadarshika, Ratnavali and Nagananda.
- Founder-Pulakesin-I.
- Pulakesin-II was their most famous king, who was a contemporary of Harsha.
- Founder -Dantidurga.
- Their king, Krishna-I is remembered for constructing the famous rock-cut Kailasha temple at Ellora.
- Their king, Krishna-III set up a pillar of victory and a temple at Rameshwaram.
- Rashtrakutas are credited with the building of cave shrine of Elephanta.
- Their king, Narsimhadeva constructed the Sun Temple at Konark.
- Their king Anantvarman Ganga built the famous jagannath temple at Puri.
- Kesaris, who used to rule Orissa before Gangas built the Lingaraja temple at Bhubaneswar.
- Founder-Simhavishnu. They set up their capital at Kanchi (south of Chennai).
- Narsimhavarmam was their greatest king. He founded the town of Mahabalipuram (Mahabalipuram) which he adorned with beautiful rock-cut Baths or Seven Pagodas. Hieun Tsang visited Kanchi during his reign.
- Founder-Vijayalaya. Capital was Tanjore.
- The greatest Chola rulers were Rajaraja-I (985-1014) and his son Rajendra (1014-1044).
- Rajaraja I constructed Rajarajeshwari temple (also called Brihadeshwar Shiva temple) at Thanjavur. His son Rajendra-I annexed the whole of Sri Lanka. In the North, went as far as Ganga and the dominions of the Pala king Mahipala. He took the title of 'Gangaikonda' after that.
- Dancing figure of Shiva called Nataraja belong to this period only.
- Cholas temples had massive 'Vimanas' or towers and spacious courtyards. The entrances had elaborate Gopurams (gateways).
- Local Self Government was there (concept of Panchayati Raj has been borrowed from it).
- Its founder was Gopala (750 AD).
- Their King, Dharampala founded Vikramsila University & revived Nalanda University.



## The Delhi Sultanate (1206-1526 AD)

### Qutb-ud-din Aibak

- ✓ Qutb-ud-din Aibak was the founder of first independent Turkish kingdom in northern India. For his generosity, he was given the title of Lakh Baksh (giver of Lakhs).
- ✓ He constructed two mosques Quwat-ul-Islam at Delhi and Adhai din ka Jhopra at Ajmer. He also began the construction of Qutub Minar, in the honour of famous Sufi saint Khawaja Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- ✓ Aibak was a great patron of learning and patronized writers like Hasan-un-Nizami, author of Taj-ul-Massir and Fakhr-ud-Din, author of Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi.

### Iltutmish

- ✓ Iltutmish was the real founder of Delhi Sultanate. He made Delhi the capital, in place of Lahore.
- ✓ He saved Delhi Sultanate from the wrath of Chengiz Khan-the Mongol leader by refusing shelter to Khwarizm Shah, whom Chengiz was chasing.
- ✓ He completed the construction of Qutub Minar.
- ✓ He issued the silver tanka and copper jital for the first time. He organized the Iqta system and introduced reforms in civil administration and army, which was now centrally paid and recruited.
- ✓ He set up an official nobility of slaves known as Chahalgani (group of forty).

### Razia Sultan

- ✓ Though Iltutmish had nominated his daughter Razia Sultana as the successor, the nobles placed Rukn-ud-din Firoz on the throne. However Razia got rid of Rukn-ud-din and ascended the throne. Razia was popular among the people but she was not acceptable to the nobles and theologians. She further offended the nobles by her liking for an Abyssinian slave-Yakut.
- ✓ Soon after her accession, the governors of Multan, Badliun, Hansi and Lahore openly revolted against her. There was a serious rebellion in Bhatinda. Altunia, governor of Bhatinda refused to accept suzerainty of Razia. Razia accompanied by Yakut marched against Altunia. However, Altunia got Yakut murdered and imprisoned Razia. Subsequently, Razia married Altunia and both of them marched towards Delhi. In 1240 AD, Razia became the victim of a conspiracy and was assassinated near Kaithal.

### Ghiyas-ud-din Balban

- ✓ Balban ascended the throne in 1265 AD.
- ✓ He broke the power of chahalgani and restored the prestige of the crown. That was his greatest contribution towards the stability of the Sultanate.
- ✓ To keep himself well-informed, Balban appointed spies.
- ✓ He created a strong centralized army to deal with internal disturbances and to check Mongols who were posing a serious danger to Delhi Sultanate.
- ✓ He established the military department – Diwan-i-Arz.
- ✓ The Persian court model influenced Balban's conception of kingship. He took up the title of Zil-i-Ilahi (shadow of God).
- ✓ He introduced Sijda (prostration before the monarch) and Paibos (kissing the feet of monarch) as the normal forms of salutation.
- ✓ He destroyed Mewati Rajput brigandage in the doab, here forests were cut and forts built.

### Alauddin Khalji

- ✓ Alauddin Khalji ascended the throne after getting his uncle Jalal-ud-din murdered.
- ✓ He was the first Turkish Sultan of Delhi who separated religion from politics. He proclaimed – "Kingship knows no Kinship".

### Administrative Reforms

- ✓ He introduced the system of Dagh or the branding of horse and Chehra or preparation of the descriptive role.
- ✓ Alauddin ordered that all land was to be measured and then the share of state was to be fixed. The post of special officer called Mustakhraj was created for the purpose of collection of revenue.
- ✓ The peasants had to pay half the produce as land revenue.
- ✓ Many forts were built by him and the most important of them was Alai Fort. He also constructed Alai Darwaja the entrance gate to Qutub Minar. He also built the palace of thousand Pillars called Hazar Situn.

### Slave Dynasty

Qutb-ud-din Aibak	1206-10 AD
Aram Shah	1211 AD
Shamsuddin Iltutmish	1211-36 AD
Ruknuddin Feroz	1236 AD

<i>Razia Sultan</i>	<i>1236-40 AD</i>
<i>Muizuddin Behram</i>	<i>1242 AD</i>
<i>Alauddin Masud</i>	<i>1246 AD</i>
<i>Naseeruddin Mahmud</i>	<i>1246-66 AD</i>
<i>Ghiyasuddin Balban</i>	<i>1266-86 AD</i>
<i>Muizuddin Kaikubad</i>	<i>1290 AD</i>
<i>Kaimur</i>	<i>1290 AD</i>
<b>Khalji Dynasty</b>	
<i>Jalaluddin Khalji</i>	<i>1290-96 AD</i>
<i>Alauddin Khalji</i>	<i>1296-1316 AD</i>
<i>Shihabuddin Omar</i>	<i>1316 AD</i>
<i>Mubarak Khalji</i>	<i>1316-20 AD</i>
<i>Khusro Khan</i>	<i>1320 AD</i>
<b>Tughlaq Dynasty</b>	
<i>Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq</i>	<i>1320-24 AD</i>
<i>Muhammad Tughlaq</i>	<i>1324-51 AD</i>
<i>Firoz Shah Tughlaq</i>	<i>1351-88 AD</i>
<i>Mohammad Khan</i>	<i>1388 AD</i>
<i>Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq Shah II</i>	<i>1388 AD</i>
<i>Abu Baqr</i>	<i>1389-90 AD</i>
<i>Nasiruddin Muhammad</i>	<i>1390-94 AD</i>
<i>Humayun</i>	<i>1394-95 AD</i>
<i>Nasiruddin Mahmud</i>	<i>1395-1412 AD</i>
<b>Sayyid Dynasty</b>	
<i>Khizr Khan</i>	<i>1414-20 AD</i>
<i>Mubarak Shah</i>	<i>1421-33 AD</i>
<i>Muhammad Shah</i>	<i>1434-43 AD</i>
<i>Alauddin Alam Shah</i>	<i>1443-51 AD</i>
<b>Lodhi Dynasty</b>	
<i>Bahlul Lodhi</i>	<i>1451-89 AD</i>
<i>Sikander Lodhi</i>	<i>1498-1517 AD</i>
<i>Ibrahim Lodhi</i>	<i>1517-1526 AD</i>
<b>Muhammad Bin Tughlaq</b>	

He tried to introduce many administrative reforms. He had five ambitious projects for which he has become particularly notable.

- 1) **Taxation in the Doab:** The Sultan made an ill-advised financial experiment in the Doab between the Ganges and Yamuna. He not only increased the rate of taxation but also revived and created some additional Abwabs or cesses. Although the share of the state remained half as in time of Alauddin, it was fixed arbitrarily not on the basis of actual produce. Prices were also fixed artificially for converting the produce into money. It is said that the increase was twenty-fold and to this were added Ghari or House tax and the 'Charahi' or pasture tax.

The Sultan created a new Department of Agriculture called Diwan-i-Kohi. The main object of this department was to bring more land under cultivation by giving direct help to peasants.

- 2) **Transfer of Capital:** The most controversial step which Muhammad Tughlaq undertook soon after

his accession was the so called transfer of capital from Delhi to Deogir. Deogir had been a base for the expansion of Turkish rule in South India. It appears that the Sultan wanted to make Deogir second capital so that he might be able to control south India better. Deogir was, thus, named Daulatabad. After a couple of years Muhammad Tughlaq decided to abandon Daulatabad largely because he soon found that just as he could not control South India from Delhi, he could not control North from Daulatabad.

- 3) **Introduction of Token Currency:** Muhammad Tughlaq decided to introduce bronze coins, which were to have same value as the silver ones. Muhammad Tughlaq might have been successful if he could prevent people from forging the new coins. He was not able to do so and soon the new coins began to be greatly devalued in markets. Finally, Muhammad Tughlaq decided to withdraw the token currency. He promised to exchange silver pieces for bronze coins.
- 4) **Proposed Khurasan Expedition:** The Sultan had a vision of universal conquest. He decided to conquer Khurasan and Iraq and mobilized a huge army for the purpose. He was encouraged to do so by Khurasani nobles who had taken shelter in his court. Moreover there was instability in Khurasan on account of the unpopular rule of Abu Said.
- 5) **Quarachil expedition:** This expedition was launched in Kumaon hills in Himalayas allegedly to counter Chinese incursions. It also appears that the expedition was directed against some refractory tribes in Kumaon Garhwal region with the object of bringing them under Delhi Sultanate. The first attack was a success but when rainy season set in, the invaders suffered terribly.

His first projects led to revolts all around his empire. His last days were spent in checking the revolts in thatta in Sindh (altogether 36 revolts in 25 years).

### Firoz Shah Tughlaq

- ✓ After his accession Firoz Tughlaq faced the problem of preventing the imminent break up of Delhi Sultanate. He adopted the policy of trying to appease the nobility, the army and theologians and of asserting his authority over only such areas, which could be easily administered from the centre. He therefore made no attempt to reassert his authority over South India and Deccan.
- ✓ He decreed that whenever a noble died, his son should be allowed to succeed to his position, including his Iqta and if he had no sons, his son-in-law and in his absence his slave.
- ✓ Firoz extended the principle of heredity to the army. Soldiers were allowed to rest in peace and to send in their place their sons. The soldiers were not paid in cash but by assignments on land revenue of villages. This novel technique of payment led to many abuses.
- ✓ Firoz tried to win over the theologians proclaiming

that he was a true 'Muslim king' and the state under him was truly Islamic. In order to keep the theologians satisfied a number of them were appointed to high offices.

- ✓ He tried to ban practices, which the orthodox theologians considered unislamic. Thus he prohibited the practice of Muslim women going out to worship at graves of saints. It was during the time of Firoz that Jizya became a separate tax. Firoz refused to exempt the Brahmanas from payment of Jizya since this was not provided for in Shariat.
- ✓ The new system of taxation was according to Quran. Four kinds of taxes sanctioned by the Quran were imposed and those were Kharaj, Zakat, Jizya and Khams. Kharaj was the land tax, which was equal to 1/10 of the produce of the land, Zakat was  $2\frac{1}{2}\%$  tax on property, Jizya was levied on non-Muslims and Khams was 1/6 of the booty captured during war.
- ✓ In order to encourage agriculture, the Sultan paid a lot of attention to irrigation. Firoz repaired a number of canals. The first canal was from Sutlej to Ghaggar. The second canal carried the waters of Jamuna to the city of Hissar. The third canal started from neighbourhood of Mandhavi and Sirmour Hills and connected with Hansi. The fourth canal flowed from the Ghaggar by the fort of Sirsuti up to village of Hirani-Khera.
- ✓ He was a great builder. To his credit are cities of Fatehabad, Hissar, Jaunapur and Firozabad. During his Bengal campaign he renamed Ikdala as Azadpur and Pandua as Firozabad. The two pillars of Ashoka, one from Topra and another from Meerut were brought to Delhi.
- ✓ The Sultan established at Delhi, a hospital described variously as Dar-ul-shifa.
- ✓ A new department of Diwan-i-Khairat was set up to make provision for marriage of poor girls.
- ✓ Another step which Firoz took which was both economic and political in nature, was that he opened a new department for slaves known as Diwan-i-Bandagan.

### Sikander Lodhi

Sikander Lodhi conquered Bihar and Tirhut. He transferred his capital from Delhi to Agra, city founded by him. Sikander Shah was a fanatical Muslim and he broke the sacred images of the

Jawalmukhi Temple at Nagarkot and ordered the temples of Mathura to be destroyed. He took a keen interest in the development of agriculture. He introduced the gaz-i-Sikandari (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields.

### Ibrahim Lodhi

The Afghan nobility was brave and freedom loving, but it was because of its fissiparous and individualistic tendencies that the Afghan monarchy weakened. Moreover, Ibrahim Lodhi asserted the absolute power of the Sultan. As a result, some of the nobles turned against him. At last Daulat Khan Lodhi, the governor of Punjab invited Babur to overthrow Ibrahim. Babur accepted the offer and inflicted a crushing defeat on Ibrahim in the first battle of Panipat in 1526 AD. Ibrahim was killed in the battle and with him ended the Delhi Sultanate.

### Administration

- ✓ The key figure in the administration was Wazir. In the earlier period the Wazir was primarily a military leader but now he began to be considered more an expert in revenue affairs and presided over a large department dealing both with income and expenditure.
- ✓ The head of military department was called Ariz-i-Mamalik. The special responsibility of Ariz's department was to recruit, equip and pay the army.
- ✓ Diwan-i-Risalat dealt with religious matters, pious foundations and stipends to deserving scholars and men of piety. It was presided over by a chief Sadr or chief Qazi.
- ✓ The Qazi dispensed civil law based on Muslim law (Sharia). The Hindus were governed by their own personal laws, which were decided by panchayats in villages.
- ✓ When the Turks conquered the country they divided it into number of tracts called Iqtas, which were parcelled among the leading Turkish nobles. The holders of the office were called Muqti or Walis. It was these tracts, which later became province or Subas.
- ✓ Below the province, were the Shiqs and below them the Paragana. We are told that the villages were grouped into units of 100 or 84 traditionally called Chaurasi. The Paragana was headed by Amil. The most important people in village were the Khuts (Land owners) or Muqaddam or headman. We also hear of village accountant called Patwari.



### Bhakti Saints

- ✓ **Ramanuja** - In 11<sup>th</sup> century Ramanuja tried to assimilate Bhakti to the tradition of Vedas. He argued that grace of God was more important than knowledge about him in order to attain salvation. The tradition established by Ramanuja was followed by number of thinkers such as Madhavacharya, Ramananda, Vallabhacharya and others.
- ✓ **Ramadasa (1608)** - He established ashramas all over India. It was from him that Shivaji received the inspiration to overthrow Muslim authority and found the kingdom.
- ✓ **Gurunanak (1469-1539 AD)** - He was a mystique of Nirguna School. But his followers brached off from Hinduism and founded a separate religious system. He became a wandering preacher of a casteless, universal, ethical, anti-ritualistic and monotheistic and highly spiritual religion.
- ✓ **Surdas (1483-1513 AD)** - He belongs to Saguna School. He was a disciple of famous religious teacher Vallabhacharya. He sang the glory of Krishna's childhood and youth in his Sursagar.

- ✓ **Tulsi Das (1532-1623 AD)** - He belongs to Saguna school of Hindu Mystics. He composed the famous Ramacharitamanas.

### Sufism

- ✓ Those saints among the Muslims who advocated a life of purity and renunciation were called Sufis. Another view is that the word Sufi came out of the word Sooph meaning wool.
- ✓ Sufism sprang from the doctrine of Wahadat-ul-wajud or unit of being. This doctrine was propounded by Ibn-ul-Arabi (1165-1240 AD).
- ✓ One of the earliest Sufis was a woman saint Rabin of Basra who laid great emphasis on love as bond between god and individual soul.
- ✓ The Sufis were organized in 12 order of Silsilas. The silsilas were generally led by a prominent mystic who lived in Khanqah along with his disciples.
- ✓ The link between the teacher or Pir and his disciple or Murid was a vital part of Sufi system. Every Pir nominated a successor or Wali to carry out work.

Paramount Coaching Centre

## The Coming of the Mughals

### BABUR (1484-1530)

- ✓ He was invited to attack India by Daulat Khan Lodi, Subedar of Punjab; Ibrahim Lodi's uncle Alamkhan Lodi and Rana Sanga.
- ✓ He was successful in his 5<sup>th</sup> expedition. In the Battle of Panipat 20<sup>th</sup> April 1526, he finally defeated Ibrahim Lodhi. Babur was the first one to entitle himself as the Padshah.

**Battle of Panipat (1526)**- Babur defeated Ibrahim lodi.

**Battle of Kanawa (1527)**- Babur defeated Rana sanga.

**Battle of Chanderi (1528)**- Babur defeated Medini Rai.

- ✓ He wrote "Tuzuk-i-Baburi" in Turkish. It was translated into Persian by Abdur Rahim Khan-i-Khanan. Other works include a "Masnavi".

### HUMAYUN (1530-40; 1555-56)

#### Campaigns

- ✓ 1530 Kalinjar-The Raja offered nominal submission. 1532 - Muhamud Lodi defeated at Dauhrua.
- ✓ 1533- siege of Chunar, Sher khan (later Sher Shah) offered nominal submission by sending son Qutab Khan to Humayun's court.
- ✓ Humayun then built Dinpanah at Delhi as his second capital.
- ✓ Second siege of Chunar and then the march to Gaur which was stopped at Tiliagarhi pass by Jalal Khan (Sher Shah's son) in 1538. Occupied Gaur where Sher Shah had left wine, women and opium to delay Humayun who renamed it Jannatabad (paradise) Hindal meanwhile assumed the crown at Agra. 1539: Battle of Chausa Buxar. Humayun was saved by Nizam, the water carrier (Bishti).
- ✓ 1540: Humayun was again defeated by Sher Shah at Kanauj.
- ✓ He faced a formidable opponent in the Afghan, Sher Khan (Shah) who in the successive battles of Chausa and Kannauj defeated Humayun and forced him to flee India.
- ✓ Humayun saw the death of Sher Shah as an opportunity to regain the throne. Humayun had conquered Qandahar and re-established his control over Kabul with the help of the Safavid King of Persia. He could now use Kabul as his base for campaigns into India.
- ✓ His sister Gulbadan Begum, wrote his biography - Humayunama in Persian.
- ✓ Humayun died while climbing down the stairs of his library in 1556.

### SHER SHAH (1540-1545)

He was born to Hasan, (the Jagirdar of Kwaspur, Sahasram and Hajipur Tanda) as Farid. Ibrahim lodi transferred his father's Jagir to him. In 1527-28-he joined Babur's service and then returned to Bihar as deputy governor and guardian of the minor king Jalal Khan Lohani. He aided Mahmud Lodi at Ghagra. 1530-he usurps throne as Hazarat-i-Ala. He gained Chunar by marrying the widow Lad Malika. Humayun besieged Chunar again. In 1539 he captured Chausa. He assumed the title Sher Shah as emperor. In 1540 he annexed Kanauj and then Lahore.

He died in 1545 while conquering Kalinjar.

### AKBAR (1556-1604)

- ✓ Akbar was 14 years old when he was crowned at Kalanaur in 1556, but, he could consolidate his position only after the second battle of panipat (5<sup>th</sup> Nov 1556), fought against Mohammad Adil Sur's Wazir-Vikramaditya (Hemu).
- Between 1556-60, Akbar ruled under Bairam Khan's regency.
- Akbar's earliest campaigns were against Durgawati of Garh-Katanga (Gond & Rajput principalities) followed by Chittor (Rana Udai Singh); Ranthambor (Rao Surjan Hada).
- ✓ The two powerful forts of Rajasthan -Ranthambor and Chittor (guarded by Jaimal) - were captured by the Mughals.
- ✓ Akbar's deccan campaign began with the siege of Ahmednagar (defended by Chand Bibi). Ahmednagar soon resurrected itself under the leadership of Malik Amber.
- ✓ Bagwan Das (5000zat) and Man Singh (7000zat) enjoyed a privileged position in the Mughal court.
- ✓ Akbar faced a rebellion in Gujarat in 1572, which was crushed and following which he built the Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri.
- Akbar's Religious policies**
- ✓ He abolished Jaziya and pilgrimage tax and forcible conversion of prisoners of war.
- ✓ He built an Ibadat Khana at Fatehpur sikri to discuss religious matters. He invited many distinguished persons.
- ✓ To curb the dominance of Ulema, Akbar introduced a new khutba, written by Faizi and proclaimed Mahzarnama in 1579. Which made him the final interpreter of islamic law in case of any controversies. It made him Amir-ul-Momin (leader of the faithful) and Amir-i-Adil (a just ruler).

- ✓ His liberalism is reflected again in the pronouncement of Tauhid-i-Ilahi which propounded sufidivine monotheism.

#### **Tenets of Din-i-Ilahi (1582)**

- ✓ It could be adopted on Sunday by performing paibos. (The emperor placed his feet on the head of the initiated), following which Akbar gave Shat (formula).
- ✓ He had to abstain from meat and give alms.
- ✓ There were no scriptures and priests.
- ✓ Tauhid-i-Ilahi had four grades of devotion in the ascending order – sacrifice of property, life, honour and religion.
- ✓ Birbal, Abul Fazl and Faizi joined the order.
- ✓ Badauni believed that Akbar was creating a new religion but contemporary historians believe that he was only trying to attain the status of Insaan-i-Kamil.

#### **Akbar's Court**

- ✓ Akbar established the painting Karkhana, headed by Abdus Samad.
- ✓ Abul Fazl wrote Akbarnama, the appendix of which was called Ain-i-Akbari. This section deals with the laws and revenue system.

#### **JAHANGIR (1605-27)**

- ✓ His wife, Nurjahan (daughter of Itimad- daulah) exercised tremendous influence over the state affairs. She was made the official Padshah Begum.
- ✓ Jahangir banned slaughter of animals on Sunday and Thursday
- ✓ He established Zanjir-i-Adal at Agra Fort for the seekers of royal justice.
- ✓ Jahangir also married Jodha Bai of Marwar, and a Kachchwaha princes.
- ✓ His son Khusrau, who received patronage of Guru Arjun Dev, revolted against Jahangir. The fifth sikh Guru Arjun Dev was later sentenced to death for his blessings to the rebel prince.
- ✓ Khurram (shahjahan) supported by his father-in-law, Asaf Khan also revolted against Jahangir but the two soon reconciled.
- ✓ His military general, Mahabat Khan revolted and abducted him but Nurjahan saved him with her diplomatic efforts.
- ✓ He was well read and wrote his memoirs Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri in Persian.
- ✓ On the refusal to pay the fine Guru Arjun 's son, Hargovind was imprisoned in the fort of Gwalior.
- ✓ Jahangir faced a formidable opponent in Malik Amber (an Abyssinian) in his expedition to Ahmednagar. Shahjahan 's military capacity was proved during the expeditions undertaken during Jahangir 's reign and Ahmednagar was annexed (1601).

#### **SHAHJAHAN (1628-58)**

- ✓ In 1612, he married Arjumand Banu Begum who became famous as Mumtaz Mahal later.
- ✓ In 1632, he defeated Portugese and annexed Ahmednagar in 1636
- ✓ Shahjahan's reign is described by French traveller Bernier and Taveriner and the Italian traveller Manucci. Peter Mundi described the famine that occurred during Shah Jahan's time.
- ✓ Shahjahan succeeded to the throne on the death of Jahangir in 1628. The first thing that he had to face was revolts in Bundelkhand (Jujhar Singh Bundela of Orchha) and the Deccan (Khan-i-Jahan Lodi, the governor of Deccan).
- ✓ He sent his armies to Balkh and Badakshan in Central Asia in order to secure the defence of north-western India. Shah Jahan had recovered Kandahar (1638) from the Iranians but lost it again (1649) despite three campaigns under Prince Murad, Aurangzeb and Dara.
- ✓ The War of succession took a notorious turn during Shahjahan's reign and his two daughters Jahan Ara and Roshan Ara supports his two sons, Dara and Aurangzeb, respectively.

#### **Aurangzeb(1658-1758)**

- ✓ He defeated Dara Shikoh (1659)
- ✓ He took the title of Alamgir in 1659.
- ✓ He was called as Zinda Pir, the living saint.
- ✓ In 1662, Mir Jumla, Aurangzeb's ablest general led the expedition against Ahoms.
- ✓ He forbade inscription of Kalma on the coins.
- ✓ He ended the celebration of Navroz festival.
- ✓ Mutasib (regulator of moral conduct) were appointed.
- ✓ He forbade music in the court.
- ✓ He ended Jarokha darshan, use of almanacs and weighing of the emperor.
- ✓ Aurangzeb complied Fatwa-i-Alamgri.
- ✓ Jaziya was re-introduced. However, the Hindu mansabdars maintained their high proportion during his rule.
- ✓ The Mughal conquests reached a climax during his reign, as Bijapur and Golconda were annexed in 1686 and 1687, respectively.
- Revolts under Aurangzeb**
- ✓ Aurangzeb's failure to understand the root causes and nature of the rise of Marathas, gave him a formidable opponent, Shivaji.
- ✓ The first anti-imperial reaction took place in the form of Jat Rebellion under Gokla, Rajarma and Churaman Satnamis.
- ✓ First Afghan rebellion was by Yusufshahi tribes of Afghanistan of Roshnai sect.
- ✓ Second Afghan rebellion led by Ajmal Khan.
- ✓ During his reign, ninth Sikh Guru Tegh Bahadur was executed.



### **RAHADUR SHAHI (1707-1712)**

- ✓ Aurangzeb died in 1707. A war of succession started amongst his three surviving sons viz. Muzzam-the governor of Kabul, Azam-the governor of Gujarat and Kam Baksh-The governor of Bijapur. Muzzam defeated Azam and Kam Baksh and ascended the Mughal throne with the title of Bahadur Shah.
- ✓ Muzzam pursued pacifist policy and was therefore also called Shah Bekhaber.
- ✓ He also assumed the title of Shah Alam I.
- ✓ He made peace with Guru Gobind Singh and Chatrasal. He granted Sardeshmukhi to Marathas and also released Shahu.
- ✓ He forced Ajit Singh to submit but later in 1709, recognised him as the Rana Marwar.
- ✓ He defeated Banda Bahadur at Lohgarh and reoccupied Sirhind in 1711.

### **JAHANDAR SHAH (1712-13)**

- ✓ Ascended the throne with the aid of Zulfikhar Khan. His nephew, Farrukh Siyar, defeated him. He abolished Jiziya.

### **FARRUKH SIYAR (1713-1719)**

- ✓ Ascended the throne with the help of Sayyid brothers. Abdullah Khan and Hussain Khan who were Wazir and Mir Bakshi respectively. Farrukh Siyar was killed by the Sayyid brothers in 1719. Banda Bahadur was captured at Gurudaspur and executed.

### **MOHAMMAD SHAH (1719-48)**

- ✓ During his reign Nadir Shah raided India and took away the peacock throne and the Kohinoor diamond.
- ✓ He was a pleasure loving king and was nick named Rangeela.
- ✓ Nizam-ul-mulk was appointed Wazir in 1722 but he relinquished the post and marched to the Deccan to found the state of Hyderabad.
- ✓ Bengal acquired virtual independence during the governorship of Murshid Quli Khan.
- ✓ Saddat Khan Burhan ul-Mulk who was appointed governor of Awadh by him laid down the foundation of the autonomous state.

### **AHMED SHAH (1748-1754)**

- ✓ During his reign, Ahmed Shah Abdali (one of the ablest generals of Nadir Shah) marched towards Delhi and the Mughals ceded Panjab and Multan.

### **ALAMGIR (1754-59)**

- ✓ During his reign Ahmed Shah Abdali occupied Delhi. Later, Delhi was also plundered by the Marathas.

### **SHAH ALAM II (1759-06)**

- ✓ During his reign Najib Khan Rohilla became very powerful in Delhi so much so that Shah Alam II could not enter Delhi. The Battle of Buxar (1764) was fought during his reign.

### **AKBAR SHAH II (1806-37)**

- ✓ During his reign Lord Hastings ceased to accept the sovereignty of Mughals and claimed an equal status.

### **BAHADUR SHAH II (1837-62)**

- ✓ The last Mughal king, who was confined by the British to the Red Fort. During the revolt of 1857 he was proclaimed the Emperor by the rebellions. He was deported to Rangoon following the 1857 rebellion.

### **Important Battles In Indian History**

#### **B.C.**

- 327 : Alexander the Great defeated Porus in the Battle of Hydaspes
- 261 : Ashoka captured Kalinga after a bloody battle near Bhubaneswar.

#### **A.D.**

- 712 : Invasion of Sind under the command of Mohammed-bin Qasim
- 1191 : First Battle of Tarain in which Prithviraj Chauhan defeated Muhammad Ghori.
- 1192 : Second Battle of Tarain in which Prithviraj Chauhan was defeated by Muhammad Ghori.
- 1526 : First Battle of Panipat. Ibrahim Lodi was defeated by Babur
- 1539 : Battle of Chausa. Humayun was defeated by Sher Shah Suri.
- 1540 : Battle of Kanauj or Bilgram. Humayun was defeated by Sher Shah Suri, who now became the ruler of Delhi.
- 1556 : Second Battle of Panipat. Hemu was defeated by Akbar.
- 1576 : Battle of Haldighati. Rana Pratap was defeated by Akbar.

### **IMPORTANT FOREIGN TRAVELLERS/ ENVOYS**

#### **Megasthenes (302-298 B.C.)**

- ✓ An ambassador of Seleucus Nicator, who visited the court of Chandragupta Maurya. He wrote an interesting book Indica in which he gave a vivid account of Chandragupta Maurya's reign.

#### **Fa-Hsien (405-411 A.D.)**

- ✓ He came to India during the reign of Chandragupta II. The object of his visit was to see the holy places of Buddhism and to collect Buddhist books and relics. He was the first Chinese pilgrim to visit India.

#### **Hiuen-Tsang (also spelt yuan chwang) (630-645 A.D.)**

- ✓ He visited India during the reign of Harsha.

#### **Marco Polo (1292-1294 A.D.)**

- ✓ A Venetian traveller he visited South India in 1294 A.D. His work The Book of Sir Marco Polo gives an invaluable account of the economic history of India.

## DYNASTIES AND RULERS IN MEDIEVAL INDIA

### Mahmud of Ghazni

- Mahmud came to the throne of Ghazni in 997 AD.
- He started his raids in India in 1001 by attacking and killing Jaipala, the king of Punjab in the 1st Battle of Waihind.
- In the 2nd Battle of Wahind (1008) he defeated Anandpala (Hindushahi ruler of Punjab).
- He led 17 expeditions between 1001 and 1027. He plundered Thaneshwar, Mathura, Kannauj and Somnath.
- The plunder of Somnath temple (dedicated to Shiva) in 1025, situated on the sea coast of Kathiwar, was famous.
- His objective was to plunder the riches of temples and palaces and he was not interested in expanding his empire to India.

### Mohammad Ghori

- He was also a ruler of a small kingdom in Afghanistan. But he was interested in conquering northern India and adding it to his kingdom.
- Prithviraj Chauhan, who was the king of Delhi at that time, received contingents from other Rajput kings, defeated him in the 1st Battle of Tarain (1191).
- But Mohammad Ghori defeated Prithviraj in the 2nd Battle of Tarain in 1192.

### THE ILBARI DYNASTY OR SLAVE DYNASTY

Qutab-Ud-Din Aibak  
(1206-1210)

- Died in 1206, leaving Qutab-ud-Din Aibak the charge.
- Lahore and later Delhi were his capitals.
- Famous for his generosity and earned the sobriquet of lakh-baksh (giver of Lakhs).
- Laid the foundation of Qutab Minar after the name of Famous Sufi saint, Khwaja Qutbuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki.
- Died of a horse fall at Lahore, while playing Chaugan (polo).
- Built the first mosque in India-Quwat-ul-Islam (Delhi) and Adhai din Ka Jhonpara (at Ajmer).
- He formed Turkan-i-Chahalgani or Chalisa (a group of 40 powerful Turkish nobles to suppress nobles).
- Divided his empire into IQTAS, an assignment of land in lieu of salary, which he distributed to his officers.
- He introduced the silver tanka and the copper jital-2 basic coins of the Sultanate.

Iltutmish  
(1210-1236)

- She disregarded purdah, began to adorn male attire and rode out in public on elephant's back.
- She promoted Jalaluddin Yakut, an Abyssinian, to the important office of superintendent of the stables. It provoked the Turkish officers.
- She had to marry Altunia, the Governor of Bhatinda.
- She was killed, along with her husband, by Bahram Shah, a son of Iltutmish.
- She was the first and the last Muslim woman ruler of medieval India.
- He ordered the separation of military department from the finance department (diwan-i-wizarat), and the former was placed under a ministry of military affairs (diwan-i-ariz).

Raziya  
(1236-1240)

Balban  
(1266-1286)

- He declared the Sultan as the representative of god on earth. He impressed upon the people that king was the deputy of God (niyat-i-khudai) and shadow of God (zil-i-ilahi). Introduced Sijdah or Paibos practice, in which the people were required to kneel and touch the ground with their head to greet the Sultan.

## THE KHALJI DUNASTY

**Jalaluddin Firuz Khalji**  
(1290-1296)

**Alauddin Khalji**  
(1296-1316)

- He was the first ruler to put forward the view that since a large majority of people in India are Hindus, the state in India could not be a total Islam state.
- Added an entrance door to Qutab Minar, Alai Darwaza and built his capital at Siri.
- Also built Hauz Khas, Mahal Hazaar Satoon and Jamait Khana Mosque.
- First Sultan to have permanent army-paid soldiers in cash, imported horse, detailed description of each soldier (Chehra) and each horse (Dagh) was kept (first time). His Land Revenue System is very famous.
- First Turkish Sultan of Delhi who separated religion from politics. He proclaimed-"Kingship knows no kinship".
- Though Alauddin was illiterate, he was a patron of learning and art. There were many great poets in his court. Both Amir Khusrau and Mir Hasan Dehlvi enjoyed his patronage.

## THE TUGHLAQ DYNASTY

**Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq**  
(1320-1325)

**Muhammad Bin Tughlaq**  
(1325-1351)

- Took keen interest in the construction of canals and formulated a famine policy.
- Built the fortified city of Tughlabad and made it his capital.
- Regarded as the most controversial figure in India history, because of his five ambitious projects:
  - **Increase in the land revenue in the Doab:** The measure proved to be ill-timed, as Doab was passing through famine which was followed by plague.
  - **Transfer of capital to Deogir (Daulatabad) in 1327:** But Daulatabad was found to be unsuitable because it was not possible to control N. India from there. So he decided to retransfer the capital to Delhi along with the people. Many died while going to and returning from Daulatabad.
  - **Introduction of token currency:** Token currency meant introduction of bronze tankas in place of silver tankas with equal value. But this experiment failed, due to counterfeit coins. So he withdrew the scheme and all token coins were exchanged for silver coins.
  - **Planning of expedition for the conquest of Khurasan and Iraq:** But the scheme was abandoned as conditions in Iraq improved (paid the extra army for one full year).
  - **The plan for the conquest of Qarachil (Kumaon hills):** It also met with a disastrous end.
- During his last days, the whole of S. India became independent and three major independent states- The empire of Vijaynagar, The Bahmani kingdom and Sultanate of Madura were founded.
- The famous traveller, Ibn Batuta came to Delhi during 1334.
- Built new towns-Hissar, Firozpur, Fatehabad, Firoz Shah Kotla & Jaunpur.
- Repaired Qutab Minar when it was struck by lightning.
- Built his capital Firozabad & to beautify it, brought 2 Ashoka Pillars, one from Topara in Ambala & the other from Meerut.
- Wrote a book 'Fatuhat Firozshahi'.

**Firoz Shah Tughlaq**  
(1351-1388)

## NOTE

- *Timur was great Mongol leader of Central Asia who reached Delhi in Dec. 1398.*
- *AT that time, Nasiruddin Mehmud ( a later Tughluq king) was the ruler.*
- *Timur ordered general massacre in Delhi and robbed people mercilessly.*

## THE SAYYID DYNASTY

- Khizr Khan founded this short-lived dynasty and claimed to have descended from the prophet of Islam.
- Khizr Khan's 3 successors-Mubarak Shah (1421-33), Muhammad Shah (1434-43) & Alauddin Alam Shah (1443.-51) were incapable leaders.
- They were Afghans by race (considered the first Afghan dynasty of India).
- Revived Sultanate to quite an extent.

## THE LODHI DYNASTY

**Bahlul Lodhi**

(1451-1489)

**Sikandar Lodhi**

(1489-1517)

- Noblest of the three Lodhi rulers.
- Introduced the Gaz-Sikandari (Sikandar's yard) of 32 digits for measuring cultivated fields.
- In 1504, he founded the city of Agra and made it his capital.
- Was defeated and killed by Babur in the 1st Battle of Panipat in 1526.

**Ibrahim Lodhi**

(1517-1526)

## THE MUGHAL EMPIRE

**Babur**

(1526-1530)

- Defeated Ibrahim Lodi in the First battle of Panipat in 1526 and introduced gunpowder in India.
- Defeated Sangram Singh (Rana Sanga) of Mewar in the Battle of Khanua in 1527.
- Defeated another Rajput ruler, Medini Rai (or Chanderi) in the Battle of Chanderi in 1528.
- Defeated the Afghan chiefs under Mahmud Lodi (brother of Ibrahim Lodi) in the Battle of Ghagra in 1529.
- Died in 1530. Buried at Aram Bagh in Agra; later his body was taken to Aram Bagh, Kabul.
- His memoir, the Tazuk-i-Baburi in Turki language is a classic of world literature.
- He did a blunder by dividing his empire among his three brothers-Kamran, Hindal and Askari.
- Built Damanah at Delhi as his second capital.
- Sher Shah Suri gradually gained power during his time.
- He was attacked by Sher Shah at Chausa (Battle of Chausa) in 1539, but escaped.
- But in the Battle of Kannauj (or Bilgrama) in 1540, he was defeated by Sher Shah and had to flee.

**Humayun**

(1530-1556)

- Passed nearly 15 years (1540-1555) in exile.
- Had the chance to return in 1555. Bairam Khan, his most faithful officer, helped him in this.
- Died in 1556. Due to a fall from his library building stairs (Sher Mandal, Delhi) seven months after he captured Delhi.
- Gulbadan Begum, his half-sister, wrote Humayun-nama.
- He was coronated when he was just 14 years old.
- Bairam Khan represented him in the Second Battle of Panipat in 1556 against Hemu Vikramaditya. Hemu was defeated.
- Between 1556-1560, Akbar ruled under Bairam Khan's regency.
- Married Raja Bharmal's daughter, Johdha Bi in 1562 which paved the way for friendship between Rajputs and Mughal (except Mewar).
- Won Gujarat in 1562. It was in order to commemorate his victory of Gujarat that Akbar got the Buland Darwaza constructed at Fatehpur Sikri.
- Fought Battle of Haldighati with Maharana Pratap in which Maharana was defeated.

**Akbar**

(1556-1606)



**Jahangir**  
(1605-1627)

- Built Ibadatkhana (Hall of prayers) at Fatehpur Sikri.
- Formulated an order called Din-i-Ilahi or Tauhind-illahi in 1582. Birbal, Abul Fazal and Faizi joined the order.
- His Land Revenue System was known as Todar mal Bandobast or Zabti System.
- Also introduced the Mansabdary System to organize the nobility as well as the army.
- He executed, the fifth Sikh guru, Guru Arjun Dev, who had helped the revolting prince Khusrau.
- His greatest failure was the loss of Kandahar to Persia in 1622.
- The most important event in Jahangir's life was his marriage to Mehr-un-Nisa, the widow of Sher Afghani in 1611. The title of Nur Jahan was conferred on her.
- Had a chain of justice outside his palace in Agra (called Zanzir-i-Adil).
- Captain Hawkins (1608-11) and Sir Thomas Roe (1615-1619) visited his court.
- Tobacco growing started during his reign. It was brought by the Portuguese.
- Painting reached its zenith during his reign.

**Shahjahan**  
(1628-1658)

- His reign is considered the 'Golden Age' of the Mughal Empire.
- 2 Frenchmen, Bernier and Tavernier, and an Italian adventurer Manucci, visited during his reign.
- Built Tajmahal, Moti masjid at Agra, Jama Masjid and Red Fort at Delhi, etc.
- There was a brutal war of Succession among his four sons (Dara, Shuja, Aurangzeb and Murad) during the last days of his reign. Shahjahan liked Dara, but Aurangzeb came out victorious. Thus, he had to spend last 8 years of his life in prison.

**Aurangzeb Alamgir**  
(1658-1708)

- In his rule, various rebellions took place-jat peasantry at Mathura, Satnami peasantry in Pujab and Bundelas in Bundelkhand.
- He caused serious rift in the Mughal-Rajput alliance by his policy of annexation of Marwar in 1639 after the death of Raja Jaswant Singh.
- In 1675, he ordered the arrest and execution of ninth Sikh guru, Guru Tegh Bahadur.
- The Mughal conquests reached the territorial climax during his reign, as Bijapur (1686) and Golconda (1687) were annexed to the Mughal empire. The Mughal empire stretched from Kashmir in the north to Jinji in the south, from the Hindukush in the west to Chittagong in the east.
- He was called a 'Darvesh' or a 'Zinda Pir'. He also forbade Sati.
- The empire lost power after Aurangzeb's rule. His successors were weak and incapable rulers.

#### NOTE

- Ambitious nobles became direct contenders of power after Aurangzeb. The Sayyid brothers (also known as King makers) put three princes on the throne.
- One of the generals of Nadir Shah (a Persian king). Ahmed Shah Abdali, invaded India repeatedly between 1748-1767. He defeated the Marathas in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761. In this battle, Marathas were led by Sadashiv Rao Bhau, while the Peshwa at that time was Balaji Bajirao.
- A later Mughal emperor, Shah Alam-II joined hands with Mir Qasim of Bengal and Shuja-ud-Daula of Awadh in the Battle of Buxar against the British in 1764. They were defeated.

#### THE SURI DYNASTY

**Sher Shah Suri**  
(1540-1545)

- This short-lived dynasty, founded by Sher Shah Suri, ruled in Delhi (North India) from 1540-1555.
- Real name was Farid. Given the title Sher Khan by Babar Khan Lohani (Governor of Bihar) who appointed him Wakil (deputy).
- Became the master of Delhi after the exit of Humayun.
- Died in 1545 while campaigning against Kalinjar Fort.
- Introduced the silver 'Rupaya' and the copper 'Dam' and abolished all old and mixed metal currency.
- Built his tomb at Sasaram.
- Built a new city on the bank of Yamuna river (present day Purana Qila).
- Malik Mohammad Jaisi composed Padmavat (in Hindi) during his reign.

## PORTUGUESE

- ✓ The Portuguese voyager Vasco da Gama reached Calicut on May 17, 1498. At that time Calicut was ruled by a king named Zamorin. Vasco da Gama's voyage was successful in establishing a sea route from Europe to India that would permit trade with the Far East, without the use of the costly and unsafe Silk Road caravan routes, of the Middle East and Central Asia. In 1502, he established a factory at Cochin.
- ✓ The first Governor of Portuguese in India was Francisco Almeida.
- ✓ He was followed by Alfonso d' Albuquerque in 1503. He gave them new heights. He captured Goa in 1510 from the Bijapur ruler. He also abolished Sati.
- ✓ Nino-da-Cunha transferred the Portuguese capital in India from Cochin to Goa in 1530 and acquired Diu (in 1535) and Daman (in 1559).
- ✓ Portuguese lost Hugly in 1631 during the reign of Shahjahan.
- ✓ In 1661, the Portuguese king gave Bombay to Charles II of England as dowry, for marrying his sister.
- ✓ Gradually, their Indian territories were taken away from them by various sources. The Dutch played an important role to oust them.

## DUTCH

- ✓ Dutch East India Company was formed in 1602.
- ✓ They set-up their first factory at Masulipatnam in 1605. Their other factories were at Pulicat, Chinsura, Patna, Balasore, Nagapattanam, Cochin, Surat, Karlikel, Rasmibazar.

## ENGLISH

- ✓ The English East India Company was formed in 1599, and was given the royal Charter by Queen Elizabeth I in 1600 to trade in the east.
- ✓ Captain William Hawkins stayed in Jahangir's court from 1609-1611. But he failed to get the king's permission to erect a factory at Surat. Captain Middleton succeeded in this effort in 1611.
- ✓ An imperial farman allowed the Company to set up a permanent factory at Surat in 1613. Sir Thomas Roe played an important role in this.
- ✓ The Company got the lease of Madras in 1639 and built Fort St. George in Madras, which acted as its headquarter on the Coromandal coast.
- ✓ Bombay was made the Company's main settlement on the west coast in 1668.

- ✓ Aurangzeb gave the Company the farman in 1687 to trade in Bengal. In 1690, a factory was set up at Sutanuti village. In Sutanati and nearby village of Kalikata and Gobindpur, grew the city of Calcutta (now Kolkata). In 1696, the Company fortified the Calcutta factory into Fort William.
- ✓ In 1717, John Surman obtained a farman from Farrukhsiyar which gave large concessions to the Company. This farman is called the 'Magna Carta' of the Company.

## DANISH

- ✓ The Danish East India Company was formed in 1616.
- ✓ They established settlements at Serampur (Bengal) and Tranquebar (Tamil Nadu).
- ✓ The Danish sold their settlements to the English in 1845.

## FRENCH

- ✓ The French East India Company was set in 1664, at the instance of a minister, Colbert, in the reign of Louis XIV.
- ✓ The French Company was created, financed and controlled by the State and it differed from the English Company which was a private commercial venture.
- ✓ They established their first factory at Surat in 1668 and at Masulipatnam in 1669.
- ✓ The foundation of Pondicherry was laid in 1673 which, afterwards, became its capital. They also developed a factory in Chandernagar.

## THE BRITISH CONQUEST OF BENGAL

- ✓ The Mughal governor of Bengal, Murshid Quli Khan, made Bengal virtually independent of the Mughal Empire during his reign (1717-1727).
- ✓ His son Shuja-ud-daulah succeeded him and ruled for 12 years.
- ✓ After his death, Alivardi Khan ruled till 1756.
- ✓ These three rulers gave Bengal a long reign of peace and orderly administration.
- ✓ They suppressed the East India Company, but never crushed it. On the other hand, the Company constantly increased its power taking advantage of the corrupt officers.
- ✓ The result was the defeat of Siraj-ud-daulah (grandson and successor of Alivardi Khan) in the Battle of Plassey in 1757. In this battle major part of the Nawab's army (led by Mir Jafar and Rai Durlabh) did not take part in the battle. The Nawab was defeated and killed.

- ✓ The Battle of Plassey had great political significance as it laid the foundation of the British Empire in India. It is regarded as the starting point of British Rule in India.
- ✓ A great transformation came about in the position of the English Company in Bengal. Before Plassey, the English Company was just one of the European companies trading in Bengal and suffering various extractions at the hands of Nawab's officials. After Plassey the English Company virtually monopolized the trade and commerce of Bengal.
- ✓ The alleged **Black Hole Tragedy** happened during the reign of Siraj-ud-daulah in 1757.
- ✓ Mir Jafar was made the next Nawab of Bengal. The Company was granted undisputed right to free trade in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. It received the Zamindari of 24 Parganas.
- ✓ Next came Mir Qasim. He revolted against the British as he was angry that the British were misusing the dastaks (free duty passes).
- ✓ The **Battle of Buxar** was fought in 1764 between the British forces (led by Major Munro) on one side, and the triple alliance of Nawab Mir Qasim of Bengal, Nawab Shuja-ud-Daula of Awadh and Mughal emperor Shah Alam, on the other side. But the triple-alliance was defeated. The importance of this battle lay in the fact that not only the Nawab of Bengal but the Emperor of India was also defeated.
- ✓ If the Battle of Plassey had made the English a powerful factor in the politics of Bengal the victory of Buxar made them a great Power of North India and contenders for the supremacy of the whole country. The English now faced the Afghans and the Marathas as serious rivals in the final struggle for the Empire of Hindustan.
- ✓ The Treaty of Allahabad followed (August 1765) in which the English got the Diwani. (or right to collect revenue) of Bengal and thus became the master of the whole of Bengal (i.e. Bengal, Bihar and Orissa). The **Dual Government of Bengal** system followed wherein the Company acquired the real power, while the responsibility of administration rested on the Nawab of Bengal.
- ✓ The Mughal emperor was virtually Company's prisoner at Allahabad.

## GOVERNOR GENERALS

### WARREN HASTINGS (1772-1785)

- ✓ Brought the Dual Govt. of Bengal to an end by the Regulating Act, 1773.
- ✓ The First Anglo-Maratha War (1776-82), which ended with the Treaty of Salbai (1782), and the Second Anglo-Mysore War (1780-84), which ended

with the Treaty of Mangalore (1784), were fought during Hasting's period.

- ✓ As a great patron of oriental learning, he founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal with William Jones in 1784. Introduction to the first English translation of 'The Gita' written by Charles Wilkins.

### LORD CORNWALLIS (1786-1793)

- ✓ Did the Permanent Settlement of Bengal (also called Zamindari System).
- ✓ The civil service was brought into existence.

### SIR JOHN SHORE (1793-1795)

### LORD WELLESLEY (1798-1805)

- ✓ Adopted the policy of Subsidiary Alliance-a system to keep the Indian rulers under control and to make the British the paramount power.
- ✓ He defeated the Mysore force under Tipu Sultan in the Fourth Anglo-Mysore War in 1799.

### GEORGE BARLOW (1805-1807)

### LORD MINTO-I (1807-1813)

- ✓ Concluded the treaty of Amritsar with Maharaja Ranjit Singh (1809).
- ✓ Charter Act of 1813 was passed.

### LORD HASTINGS (1813-1823)

- ✓ The Anglo-Nepal War (1814-16) was fought during his reign which ended with the Treaty of Sagauli (1816)

### LORD WILLIAM BENTICK (1828-1835)

- ✓ Carried out the social reforms like Prohibition of Sati (1829) and elimination of thugs (1830).
- ✓ Made English the medium of higher education in the country (After the recommendations of Macaulay).
- ✓ Suppressed female infanticide and child sacrifice.
- ✓ Charter Act of 1833 was passed; made him the first Governor General of India. Before him, the designation was Governor General of Bengal.

### SIR CHARLES METCALFE (1835-1836)

- ✓ Abolished all restrictions on vernacular press (called Liberator of the Press).

### LORD AUCKLAND (1836-1842)

- ✓ The most important event of his reign was the First Afghan War, which proved to be a disaster for the English.

### LORD ELLENBOROUGH (1842-1844)

### LORD HARDINGE I (1844-1848)

### LORD DALHOUSIE (1848-1856)

- ✓ Opened the first Indian Railway in 1853 (from Bombay to Thane).

- ✓ Laid out the telegraph lines in 1853 (First was from Calcutta to Agra).
- ✓ Introduced the Doctrine of Lapse and captured Satara (1848), Jaipur and Sambhalpur (1849), Udaipur (1852), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854) through it.
- ✓ Established the postal system on the modern lines through the length and breadth of the country, which made communication easier.
- ✓ Started the Public Works Department. Many bridges were constructed and the work on Grand Trunk Road was started. The harbours of Karachi, Bombay and Calcutta were also developed.
- ✓ Made Shimla the summer capital.
- ✓ Started Engineering college at Roorkee.
- ✓ Encouraged science, forestry, commerce, mineralogy and industry.
- ✓ In 1854, 'Wood's Dispatch' was passed, which provided for the properly articulated system of education from the primary school to the university.
- ✓ Due to Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar's efforts, remarriage of widows was legalized by Widow Remarriage Act, 1856

## THE CAUSES OF 1857 REVOLT

### The Beginning

- ✓ The earliest incident being the revolt in the 19<sup>th</sup> Native Infantry in Berhampur.
- ✓ 29<sup>th</sup> March 1857- First spark of revolt at Barrackpore in Bengal where Mangal Pandey killed the British adjutant and was later hanged for firing on senior officers.
- ✓ 10<sup>th</sup> May 1857- Ninety sepoys of 3<sup>rd</sup> Native Regiment at Meerut revolted on the issue of the greased cartridges. After their trial and execution, entire garrison in Meerut revolted and raised the cry of 'Delhi Chalo'.

## Causes of the Revolt

### Political

- ✓ Nana Sahib was refused pension, as he was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II.
- ✓ Lucknow was annexed in 1856, on charges of maladministration and Jhansi was annexed owing to Doctrine of Lapse.

### Military Discrimination

- ✓ Indian soldiers were paid low salaries; they could not rise above the rank of subedar and were racially insulted. The soldiers were also distressed by the fact that their cherished Awadh state had been annexed by the British.

### Religious Discrimination

- ✓ British social reforms (widow remarriage, abolition of Sati, school for girls, Christian missionaries)
- ✓ Rumours that Enfield rifles used greased (by pork or beef) cartridges.

### Economic Grievances

- ✓ Heavy taxation, summary evictions, discriminatory tariff policy against Indian products & destruction of traditional handicrafts that hit peasants, artisans and small zamindars.

Centres of Revolt and Their Leaders	
Delhi	Bahadur Shah II, General Bakht Khan
Kanpur	Nana Sahib, Tantiya Tope, Azimullah Khan
Lucknow	Begum Hazrat Mahal (Awadh), Maulvi Ahmadullah of Faizabad
Jhansi	Rani Laxmi Bai
Bareilly	Khan Bahadur Khan
Arrah (Bihar)	Kunwar Singh of Jagdishpur

## OUTBREAK

- ✓ On March 29, 1857, a soldier named Mangal Pandey attacked and fired at his senior at Barrackpur in Bengal (in 19<sup>th</sup> and 34<sup>th</sup> Native infantry).
- ✓ On May 10, there was a mutiny of sepoys at Meerut (3<sup>rd</sup> native cavalry).



- ✓ Mutiny spread throughout UP along with some other parts of the country.
- ✓ 'March to Delhi' became the battle cry of the rebels. At Delhi, the Mughal emperor Bahadur Shah II was proclaimed the Emperor of India.
- ✓ Where the rulers were loyal to the British, the soldiers revolted as in Gwalior and Indore. In some places, the people revolted before the sepoys did.
- ✓ In the beginning, the rebels were successful. Europeans were killed, law courts and police stations were attacked and revenue records were destroyed. But reverses soon began to occur.

### Important persons

- ✓ Bakht Khan (captured Delhi, was from the Barreilly unit of the army).
- ✓ Nana Sahib alias Dhondhu Pant (from Kanpur, along with Tantia Tope and Azimullah) Begum Hazrat Mahal of Awadh (declared her son as the Nawab of Awadh).
- ✓ Rani Lakshmibai, the widowed queen of Raja Gangadhar Rao of Jhansi (Tantia Tope joined her and they defeated the Scindia of Gwalior, but both were defeated by Sir Hugh Rose. She died on June 17, 1858, while Tantia --- was later captured and executed).
- ✓ Kunwar Singh and Amar Singh (Bihar).
- ✓ Maulavi Ahmedullah (First Awadh and then Rohilkhand).
- ✓ Devi Singh of Mathura.
- ✓ Kadam Singh of Meerut.

### Suppression

- Delhi** : By John Nicholson and Hudson.
- Kanpur** : By Campbell, Havelock.
- Lucknow** : By Havelock, Outram, James Neill and Campbell.
- Jhansi** : Hugh Rose
- Banaras** : James Neill.

- ✓ The revolt was completely suppressed by the end of 1858.

### FATE OF THE LEADERS

- ✓ **Bahadur Shah II** : Deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. His sons were shot dead.
- ✓ **Nana Sahib and Begum Hazrat Mahal**: Escaped to Nepal.
- ✓ **Rani Laxmi Bai** : Died in the battle field.
- ✓ **Tantia Tope**: Was captured and executed in 1859.

### CAUSES OF FAILURE

- ✓ Scindia of Gwalior, the Holkar of Indore, the Nizam of Hyderabad, the Raja of Jodhpur, the Nawab of Bhopal, the rulers of Patiala, Sindh and Kashmir and the Rana of Nepal provided active support to the British.
- ✓ The military equipment of the rebels was inferior.
- ✓ Comparative lack of efficient leadership.
- ✓ The modern intelligent Indians also didn't support the cause.

### IMPACT OF THE REVOLT

- ✓ The revolt was mainly feudal in character carrying with it some nationalist elements.
- ✓ The control of Indian administration was passed on the British crown by the Govt. of India Act, 1858. The army was carefully reorganized to prevent the recurrence of such an event.

### SOCIAL AND CULTURAL UPRISINGS

#### BRAHMO SAMAJ

- ✓ Founded by Raja Ram Mohan Roy in 1828.
- ✓ He earlier started Atmiya Sabha in 1814.

## ARYA SAMAJ

- ✓ Founded by Swami Dayanand (or, Moolshankar) in 1875.
- ✓ His motto was 'Go back to the Vedas' & 'India for the Indians'. He disregarded Puranas, idol worship, casteism and untouchability. He advocated widow remarriage.

## RAMAKRISHNA MISSION

- ✓ Founded by Vivekanand (earlier, Narendranath Dutta) (1863-1902) in 1897, 11 years after the death of his guru Ram Krishna Paramhans.
- ✓ Vivekanand attended the Parliament of Religion at Chicago in 1893.

## YOUNG BENGAL MOVEMENT

- ✓ During the late 1820 and early 1830, there emerged a radical intellectual trend among the youth in Bengal, which came to be known as the 'Young Bengal Movement'.
- ✓ Founded by Henry Louis Vivian Derozio (1809-31). He was a teacher in Hindu College in Calcutta.

## DHARMA SABHA

- ✓ Initiated by Radhakant Deb in 1830.

## LOKAHITAWADI

- ✓ Started by Gopal Hari Deshmukh. Advocated western education and a rational outlook. He advocated female education for the upliftment of women.
- ✓ As he advocated national self-reliance, he attended Delhi durbar in 1876, wearing handspun khadi cloth.

## INDIAN (NATIONAL) SOCIAL CONFERENCE

- ✓ Founded by M.G. Ranade and Raghunath Rao. It held its first session in 1887.

## SERVANTS OF INDIA SOCIETY

- ✓ Formed by Gopal Krishna Gokhale in 1915.

## SEVA SAMITI

- ✓ Hriday Nath Kunzru, a member of the Servants of India Society, organized the Smiti at Allahabad in 1914, to improve the status of the suffering classes, reform criminals and to rescue those suffering in society.

## RADHASWAMI MOVEMENT

- ✓ Founded in 1861 by a banker of Agra, Tulsi Ram, popularly known as Shiv Dayal Saheb or Swami Maharaj.

## DEVA SAMAJ

- ✓ Founded by Shiv Narain Agnihotri in 1887. It

preached high moral and social conduct like, for instance, keeping oneself away from gambling and intoxicants.

## THEOSOPHICAL SOCIETY

- ✓ Founded by Westerners who drew inspiration from Indian thought and culture.
- ✓ Madam H P Blavatsky laid the foundation of the movement in US in 1875. Later, Col. M S Olcott of the US Army joined her.
- ✓ In 1882, it was shifted to India at Adyar (Tamil Nadu).
- ✓ Annie Besant was elected its President in 1907. She founded the Central Hindu College in 1898, which became Banaras Hindu University in 1916.
- ✓ The society accepted Hindu beliefs like re-incarnation, Karma and draws inspiration from Upanishads, Sankhya, Yoga and Vedanta schools.

## THE ALIGARH MOVEMENT

- ✓ Started by Sir Syyed Ahmed Khan. He encouraged Muslims to accept the virtues of western education and urged them to apply the principle of enquiry to religion.

## THE AHMEDIA MOVEMENT

- ✓ Started by Mirza Ghulam Ahmed in 1889.

## THE DEOBAND MOVEMENT

- ✓ In 1866, the Deoband School of Islamic Theology was set up at Deoband by Rashid Ahmed Gangohi and Muhammad Qasim Nanautavi to promote studies in classical Islam and moral and religious regeneration of the Muslims. The school did not support western education and culture.

## SATYA SHODHAK SAMAJ

- ✓ Founded by Jyotiba Phule in 1873 to fight brahmanic domination and to liberate low castes by educating them and teaching them their rights. He advocated against the cause of untouchables.

## THE JUSTICE PARTY MOVEMENT

- ✓ Dr. T.M. Nair, Sir Pitti Theagaraja Chettiar and the Raja of Panagal formed the South Indian Liberal Federation (SILF) in 1916 to protest against the domination of Brahmins in government service, education and in the political field.

## RADICAL MOVEMENT

- ✓ The radical movement was launched by Periyar or E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker in Tamil Nadu in 1925, to awaken non-brahmins for overthrowing brahmanic superiority.

## SELF-RESPECT MOVEMENT

- ✓ Dr. Bhimrao Ramji Ambedkar's movement worked for the upliftment of the untouchables by fighting

for their educational, legal and political rights and encouraging them to throw off the traditional caste duties imposed on them.

- ✓ Ambedkar founded the Depressed Classes Institute (Bahishkrit Hitkarini Sabha) in Bombay in 1924, a Marathi fortnightly Bahishkrit Bharat in 1927 and the Samaj Samata Sangha in 1927. He also founded the Independent Labour Party.
- ✓ The Scheduled Caste Federation, a political party, was formed by him in 1942.

## **VICEROYS OF INDIA (1858–AUG. 14, 1947)**

### **LORD CANNING (1856-1862)**

- ✓ The last Governor General and the first Viceroy.
- ✓ Mutiny took place in his time.
- ✓ On Nov. 1858, the rule passed on to the crown.
- ✓ Withdrew Doctrine of Lapse.
- ✓ The Universities of Calcutta, Bombay and Madras were established in 1857.
- ✓ Indian councils Act was passed in 1861

### **LORD MAYO (1869-1872)**

- ✓ Started the process of financial decentralization in India.
- ✓ Established the Rajkot college at Kathiawar and Mayo college at Ajmer for the Indian princes.
- ✓ For the first time in Indian history, a census was held in 1871.

### **LORD NORTHBROOK (1872-1876)**

### **LORD LYTTON (1876-1880)**

- ✓ Known as the Viceroy of reverse characters.
- ✓ Organized the Grand Delhi Durbar in 1876 to decorate Queen Victoria with the title of 'Kaiser-i-Hind'.
- ✓ Arms Act (1878) made it mandatory for Indians to acquire license for arms.
- ✓ Passed the infamous Vernacular Press Act (1878).

### **LORD RIPON (1880-1884)**

- ✓ Liberal person, who sympathized with Indians.
- ✓ Vernacular Press Act was repealed in 1882.
- ✓ Passed the local self-government Act (1882).
- ✓ Took steps to improve primary & secondary education (on William Hunter Commission's recommendations).
- ✓ The First Factory Act, 1881, aimed at prohibiting child labour was passed.
- ✓ Passed the Ilbert Bill (1883) which enabled Indian district magistrates to try European criminals. But this was withdrawn later.

### **LORD CURZON (1899-1905)**

- ✓ Passed the Indian Universities Act (1904) in which

official control over the Universities was increased. Partitioned Bengal (October 16, 1905) into two provinces

1. Bengal (proper)
2. East Bengal & Assam.

### **LORD MINTO (1905-1910)**

- ✓ There was great political unrest in India. Various acts were passed to curb the revolutionary activities. Extremists like Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh (in May, 1907) and Bal Gangadhar Tilak (in July, 1908) were sent to Mandalay jail in Burma.
- ✓ The Indian Council Act of 1909 or the Morley-Minto Reforms was passed.

### **LORD HARDINGE (1910-1916)**

- ✓ Held a durbar in Dec, 1911 to celebrate the coronation of King George V.
- ✓ Partition of Bengal was cancelled (1911); capital shifted from Calcutta to Delhi (1911).
- ✓ A bomb was thrown at him, but he escaped unhurt (Dec. 23 1912).

### **LORD CHELMSFORD (1916-1921)**

- ✓ August Declaration of 1917, whereby control over the Indian government would be gradually transferred to the Indian people.
- ✓ The government of India Act in 1919 (Montague-Chelmsford reforms) was passed.
- ✓ Rowlatt Act of 1919; Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (April 13, 1919).
- ✓ Non-Cooperation Movement.
- ✓ An Indian Sir S.P. Sinha was appointed the Governor of Bengal.
- ✓ A Women's university was founded at Poona in 1916.
- ✓ Saddler Commission was appointed in 1917 to envisage new educational policy.

### **LORD READING (1921-1926)**

- ✓ Rowlatt Act was repealed along with the Press Act of 1910.
- ✓ Suppressed non-cooperation movement.
- ✓ Prince of Wales visited India in Nov, 1921.
- ✓ Moplah rebellion (1921) took place in Kerala.
- ✓ Ahmedabad session of 1921.
- ✓ Formation of Swaraj Party.
- ✓ Vishwabharati University started functioning in 1922.
- ✓ Communist party was founded in 1921 by M.N. Roy.
- ✓ Kakory Train Robbery on Aug 9, 1925.

- ✓ Communal riots of 1923-25 in Multan, Amritsar, Delhi, etc.
- ✓ Swami Shradhdhanand, a great nationalist and a leader of the Arya Samajists, was murdered in communal orgy.

### LORD IRWIN (1926-1931)

- ✓ Simon Commission visited India in 1928.
- ✓ Congress passed the Indian Resolution in 1929.
- ✓ Dandi March (Mar 12, 1930).
- ✓ Civil Disobedience Movement (1930).
- ✓ First Round Table Conference held in England in 1930.
- ✓ Gandhi - Irwin Pact (Mar 5, 1931) was signed and Civil Disobedience Movement was withdrawn.
- ✓ Martyrdom of Jatin Das after 64 days hunger strike (1929)

### LORD WILLINGDON (1931-1936)

- ✓ Second Round Table Conference in London in 1931.
- ✓ On his return Gandhiji was again arrested and Civil Disobedience Movement was resumed in Jan, 1932.
- ✓ Communal Awards (Aug 16, 1932) assigned seats to different religious communities. Gandhiji went on a epic fast in protest against this division.
- ✓ Third Round Table Conference in 1932.
- ✓ Poona Pact was signed.
- ✓ Government of India Act (1935) was passed.

### LORD LINLITHGOW (1936-1944)

- ✓ Govt. of India Act enforced in the provinces. Congress ministries formed in 8 out of 11 provinces. They remained in power for about 2 years till Oct. 1939, when they gave up offices on the issue of India having been dragged into the II World War. The Muslim League observed the day as 'Deliverance Day'
- ✓ Churchill became British PM in May, 1940. He declared that the Atlantic Charter (issued jointly by the UK and US, stating to give sovereign rights to those who have been forcibly deprived of them) does not apply to India.
- ✓ Outbreak of World War II in 1939.
- ✓ Cripps Mission in 1942.
- ✓ Quit India Movement (August 8, 1942).

### LORD WAVELL (1944-1947)

- ✓ Arranged the Shimla Conference on June 25, 1945 with Indian National Congress and Muslim League; failed.
- ✓ Cabinet Mission Plan (May 16, 1946).
- ✓ Elections to the constituent assembly were held and an Interim Govt. was appointed under Nehru.

- ✓ First meeting of the constituent assembly was held on Dec. 9, 1946.

### Important National Activities.

### PARTITION OF BENGAL

- ✓ By Lord Curzon on Oct. 16, 1905 through a royal Proclamation, reducing the old province of Bengal in size by creating East Bengal and Assam out of rest of Bengal.
- ✓ The government said that it was done to stimulate growth in eastern region.
- ✓ Actually, the objective was to put up a communal gulf between Hindus and Muslims.
- ✓ A mighty upsurge swept the country against the partition. National movement found real expression in the movement against the partition of Bengal in 1905
- ✓ Rebindranath Tagore composed the national song 'Amar sonar Bangla' for the occasion which was sung by people everywhere. This song was adopted as national anthem by Bangladesh in 1971 after liberation from Pakistan.

### MUSLIM LEAGUE (1906)

- ✓ Setup in 1906 under the leadership of Aga Khan, Nawab Salimullah of Dhaka and Nawab Mohsin-ul-Mulk.
- ✓ It was a loyalist, communal and conservative political organization which supported the partition of Bengal, opposed the Swadeshi movement, demanded special safeguards of its community and a separate electorate for Muslims.

### SWARAJ

- ✓ In Dec. 1906 at Calcutta, the INC under Dadabhai Naoroji adopted 'Swaraj' (Self-govt) as the goal of Indian people.

### GHADAR PARTY (1913)

- ✓ Formed by Lal Hardayal, Taraknath Das and Sohan Singh Bhakna.
- ✓ The name was taken from a weekly paper, Ghadar, which had been started on Nov. 1, 1913 to commemorate the 1857 revolt.
- ✓ HQ was at San Francisco.
- ✓ The outbreak of the First World War provided the Ghadarites with an opportunity to free India from a Government which was indifferent to their cause.
- ✓ They began to return to India in thousands for a co-ordinated revolt in collaboration with the Bengal revolutionaries. Their plan was foiled at the last moment due to treachery.

### HOME RULE MOVEMENT (1916)

- ✓ After Tilak's return, having served sentence of six years in Mandalay (in Burma), he tried securing the readmission of himself and other extremists



into the INC. With the need being felt for popular pressure to attain concessions, disillusionment with Minto-Morley reforms and war-time miseries, Tilak and Annie Besant readied to assume leadership.

- ✓ Started by Bal Gangadhar Tilak (April, 1916) at Poona and Annie Besant and S. Subramania Iyer at Adyar, near Madras (Sept, 1916).
- ✓ Tilak's league was to work in Maharashtra, Karnataka, Central Province and Berar and Annie Besant's in the rest in India.
- ✓ Objective: Self-government for India in the British Empire.
- ✓ Tilak linked up the question of Swaraj with the demand for the formation of linguistic states and education in vernacular language. He gave the slogan: Swaraj in my birth right and I will have it.
- ✓ The Mahratta and Kesari of Tilak and Annie Besant's New India, Commonweal and Young India became the organs of the Home Rule movement.
- ✓ Muslim league also supported it.

### LUCKNOW PACT (1916)

- ✓ Happened following a war between Britain and Turkey leading to anti-British feelings among Muslims.
- ✓ Both INC and ML concluded this (Congress accepted the separate electorates and both jointly demanded for a representative government and dominion status for the country).

### AUGUST DECLARATION (1917)

- ✓ After the Lucknow Pact, a British policy was announced which aimed at "increasing association of Indians in every branch of the administration for progressive realization of responsible government in India as an integral part of the British empire". This came to be called the August Declaration.
- ✓ Because of Hindu-Muslim unity exhibited in Lucknow Pact.
- ✓ The Montague-Chelmsford reforms or the Act of 1919 was based on this declaration.

### ROWLATT ACT (MARCH 18, 1919)

- ✓ This gave unbridled powers to the govt. to arrest and imprison suspects without trial for two years maximum. This law enabled the Government to suspend the right of Habeas Corpus, which had been the foundation of civil liberties in Britain.
- ✓ Caused a wave of anger in all sections. It was the first country-wide agitation by Gandhiji and marked the foundation of the Non Cooperation Movement.
- ✓ During March and April 1919, the country witnessed a remarkable political awakening in

India. There were hartals, processions and demonstrations everywhere.

### JALLIANWALA BAGH MASSACRE (APRIL 13, 1919)

- ✓ People were agitated over the arrest of Dr. Kitchlu and Dr. Satyapal on April 10, 1919.
- ✓ General O' Dyer fired at people who assembled in the Jallianwala Bagh, Amritsar.
- ✓ As a result hundreds of men, women and children were killed and thousands injured.
- ✓ Rabindranath Tagore returned his Knighthood in protest. Sir Shankaranand resigned from Viceroy's Executive Council after this.
- ✓ Hunter commission was appointed to enquire into it.
- ✓ On March 13, 1940, Sardar Udham Singh killed O' Dyer when the latter was addressing a meeting in Caxton Hall, London.

### KHILAFAT MOVEMENT (1920)

- ✓ Muslims were agitated by the treatment done with Turkey by the British in the treaty that followed the First World War.
- ✓ Two brothers, Mohd. Ali and Shaukat Ali started this movement, along with Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan and Hasrat Mohani. It was jointly led by the Khilafat leaders and the Congress.
- ✓ Gandhiji viewed the Khilafat agitation as a golden opportunity for bringing the Hindus and Muslims together.
- ✓ On August 31, 1920, the Khilafat Committee launched a non-cooperation movement.
- ✓ Gandhiji now pressed the Congress to adopt a similar plan of action. Although it was initially opposed by C.R. Das, but was later passed unopposed.

### NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT (1920)

- ✓ It was the first mass-based political movement under Gandhiji.
- ✓ Congress passed the resolution in its Calcutta session in September, 1920.
- ✓ The movement envisaged:
  - ☐ Surrender of titles and honorary offices.
  - ☐ Resignation from nominated offices and posts in the local bodies.
  - ☐ Refusal to attend govt. darbars and boycott of British Courts by the lawyers.
  - ☐ Refusal of general public to offer themselves for military and other govt. jobs, and boycott of foreign goods etc.

- ✓ C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru gave up their legal practice and Subhash Chandra Bose resigned from the Civil Service.
- ✓ The Prince of Wales visited India during this period. But he was greeted with empty streets and downed shutters when he came (Nov. 17, 1921).

### CHAURI-CHAURA INCIDENT (1922)

- ✓ The Congress session at Allahabad in Dec. 1921, decided to launch a Civil Disobedience Movement. Gandhiji was appointed its leader.
- ✓ But before it could be launched, a mob of people at Chauri-Chaura (near Gorakhpur) clashed with police and burnt 22 police men on February 5, 1922.
- ✓ This compelled Gandhiji to withdraw the Non Cooperation movement on Feb. 12, 1922.

### SWARAJ PARTY (1923)

- ✓ Motilal Nehru, C.R. Das and N.C. Kelkar (called Pro-changers) demanded that the nationalists should end the boycott of the legislative councils, enter them and expose them. But the no-changers like Rajendra Prasad and Rajgopalachari adhered to the Gandhian programme of boycott of legislatures. The pro-changers formed the Swaraj party on Jan. 1, 1923, contested the elections and embarrassed the government by opposing its measures.
- ✓ In the 1923 elections the Swarajists got a majority in Bengal and Central Province.
- ✓ The two sections were reunited in 1930 after the Lahore session.

### SIMON COMMISSION (1927)

- ✓ Constituted under John Simon, to review the political situation in India and to introduce further reforms and extension of parliamentary democracy.
- ✓ Indian leaders opposed the commission, as there were no Indians in it.
- ✓ Congress turned the boycott into the movement.
- ✓ Simon and his colleagues landed in Bombay on Feb. 3, 1928, and were greeted with hartals and black-flag demonstrations.
- ✓ The Government used brutal repression and police attacks to break the popular opposition. At Lahore, Lala Lajpat Rai was severely beaten in a lathi-charge. He succumbed to his injuries on Nov. 17, 1928.

### THE NEHRU REPORT (1928)

- ✓ After boycotting the Simon commission, all political parties constituted a committee under the chairmanship of Motilal Nehru to evolve and determine the principals of a constitution for India. It remains memorable as the first major Indian effort to draft a constitutional framework for India,

complete with lists of Central and Provincial subjects and fundamental rights. It suggested dominion status for the country.

- ✓ The committee comprised Tej Bahadur Sapru, Ali Imam, M.S. Aney, Mangal Singh, Sohaib Qureshi, G.R. Pradhan and Subhash Chandra Bose.

### LAHORE SESSION (1929)

- ✓ On Dec. 19, 1929, under the Presidentship of J.L. Nehru, the INC, at its Lahore session, declared Poorna Swaraj (Complete Independence) as its ultimate goal.
- ✓ On Dec. 31, 1929, the newly adopted tri-colour flag was unfurled and Jan 26, 1930 was fixed as the First Independence Day, which was to be celebrated every year.

### DANDI MARCH (1930)

- ✓ Also called the salt Satyagraha.
- ✓ Along with 78 followers, Gandhiji started his march from Sabarmati Ashram on March 12, 1930 for the small village Dandi to break the salt law.
- ✓ He reached the sea shore on Apr. 6, 1930.
- ✓ He picked a handful of salt and inaugurated the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- ✓ The salt satyagraha movement was taken up by C. Rajgopalachari in Tamil Nadu and the hero of the Vaikom Satyagraha, K. Kalappan, in Malabar.
- ✓ The salt satyagraha sparked off other forms of defiance. In the north-west, the Pathans under Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan, popularly known as the Frontier Gandhi, organized the society of 'Khudai Khidmadgars' (Servants of God), also known as Red Shirts. This movement even sparked off patriotism among the Indian soldiers in the British Army. The Garhwal soldiers refuse to fire on the people at Peshawar.

### GANDHI IRWIN PACT

- ✓ Moderate statesman, Sapru, Jaikar and Srinivas Shastri initiated efforts to break the ice between Gandhiji and the government.
- ✓ The two (government represented by Irwin) signed a pact on March. 5, 1931.
- ✓ In this the INC called off the civil disobedience movement and agreed to join the second round table conference.
- ✓ The government on its part released the political prisoner and conceded the right to make salt for consumption of villages along the coast.
- ✓ The Karachi session of 1931 endorsed the Gandhi-Irwin Pact. The Karachi session is also memorable for its resolution on Fundamental Rights and the National Economic Programme.

## SECOND ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE (1931)

- ✓ Gandhiji represented the INC and went to London to meet British P.M. Ramsay Macdonald.
- ✓ In the Conference, Gandhiji demanded immediate establishment of a full responsible government at Centre as well as in the Provinces with complete control over defence, external affairs and finance.
- ✓ However, the session was soon deadlocked on the minorities issue and this time separate electorates was demanded not only by Muslims but also by Depressed Classes, Indian Christian and Anglo-Indians.
- ✓ Macdonald ended the session with an address which announced the creation of two new Muslim majority provinces, North west Frontier Province and Sindh, set up a committee on franchise, finance and states and held out the humiliating and the dangerous prospect of a unilateral British Communal Award if the Indians failed to agree among themselves.
- ✓ On Gandhiji's arrival in Bombay, the Congress Working Committee decided to resume the Civil Disobedience Movement. In 1932, INC was declared an illegal organization and all its leaders were arrested. Gandhiji was sent to Yeravada jail in Poona.
- ✓ The Civil Disobedience Movement was finally withdrawn in 1934, because after that Gandhiji decided to make Harijan work the central plan of his new rural constructive program.

## THE COMMUNAL AWARD (AUG 16, 1932)

- ✓ Announced by Ramsay Macdonald. It showed divide and rule policy of the British.
- ✓ Envisaged representation of Muslims, Sikhs, Indian Christians, Anglo Indians, women and even Backward classes.
- ✓ Gandhiji, who was in Yeravada jail (Poona) at that time, started a fast to death against it.

## POONA PACT (SEPTEMBER 25, 1932)

- ✓ After the announcement of communal award and subsequent fast of Gandhiji, mass meeting took place almost everywhere.
- ✓ Political leaders like Madan Mohan Malviya, B.R. Ambedkar and M.C. Rajah became active.
- ✓ Eventually Poona pact was reached and Gandhiji broke his fast on the sixth day (Sept 25, 1932)
- ✓ In this, the idea of separate electorate for the depressed classes was abandoned, but seats reserved to them in the provincial legislature were increased.

✓ Thus, the Poona pact agreed upon a joint electorate for upper and lower castes.

✓ Harijan upliftment now became the principal concern of Gandhiji. An All-India Anti-Untouchability League was started in Sept, 1932, and a weekly Harijan in Jan, 1933. On May 8, 1933, Gandhiji decided to begin a 21 day fast for the purification of himself and his associates for the Harijan cause.

✓ He started the Individual Civil Disobedience on Aug 1, 1933.

## THIRD ROUND TABLE CONFERENCE (1932)

✓ Proved fruitless as most of the national leaders were in prison. The discussions led to the passing of the Government of India Act, 1935.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1935

✓ Based on the Simon commission report. (The recommendations are mentioned separately in the Charter Act at the end).

✓ The Congress rejected the 1935 Act and demanded the convening of a Constituent Assembly elected on the basis of adult franchise to frame a constitution for an independent India. J.L. Nehru described it as "We are provided with a car, all breaks and no engine".

Yet, INC fought the election in 1937, when the constitution was introduced and formed ministries in seven out of eleven provinces. Later, Congress formed coalition governments in two others, only Bengal and Punjab had non-Congress ministries. Punjab was under the Unionist Party and Bengal under the Krishak Praja Party-Muslim League coalition.

## SECOND WORLD WAR AND THE NATIONAL MOVEMENT

✓ The Congress ministries coming to power did wonders to the morale of the people. They continued to function till the coming of the Second World War in 1939. When the war broke out, Lord Linlithgow declared India to be at war without prior assent of the Central Legislature.

✓ The Congress agreed to support Britain only in return of independence being granted. The Viceroy could promise this only after the war. In October-November 1939, the Congress ministries resigned in protest. The Muslim League observed this as the Deliverance Day (Dec. 22, 1939).

✓ INC was willing to help the forces of democracy in their struggle against fascism, but asked how it was possible for an enslaved nation to aid others in their fight of democracy. They declared that India must be declared free or at least effective

power put in Indian hands before it could actively participate in the war.

- ✓ The Viceroy refused to accept preconditions set by the Congress Constituent Assembly for establishment of genuine responsible government at the Centre. The British Government was eager for the INC to support their war efforts. Subsequently, it tried to pacify the Congress and the Indian leaders by a series of offers through August Offer and Cripps Mission.

## DEMAND FOR PAKISTAN

- ✓ In 1930, Iqbal suggested that the Frontier Province, Baluchistan, Sindh and Kashmir be made the Muslims state within the federation.
- ✓ Chaudhary Rehmat Ali gave the term Pakistan in 1933.
- ✓ Mohd. Ali Jinnah of Bombay gave it practicality.
- ✓ Muslim League first passed the proposal of separate Pakistan in its Lahore session in 1940 (called Jinnah's Two-Nation Theory). It was drafted by Sikandar Hayat Khan, moved by Fazlul Haq and seconded by Khaliquzzaman.
- ✓ In December, 1943, the Karachi session of the Muslim League adopted the slogan- 'Divide and Quit'.

## AUGUST OFFER-AUG 8, 1940

- ✓ It offered
  - (i) Dominion status in the unspecified future;
  - (ii) A post-war body to enact the constitution;
  - (iii) To expand the Governor-General's Executive Council to give full weightage to minority opinion.
- ✓ Rejected by the INC because there was no suggestion of the national government and because the demand for the dominion status was already discarded in favour of Poorna Swaraj. It was accepted by the Muslim League.

## THE CRIPPS MISSION - 1942

- ✓ It Dec. 1941 Japan entered the World War - II and advanced towards Indian borders. By March 7, 1942, Pearl Harbor fell and Japan occupied the entire S.E. Asia.
- ✓ The British govt. with a view to get co-operation from Indians sent Sir Stafford Cripps, leader of the House of Commons to settle terms with the India leaders.
- ✓ He offered a draft which contained the following proposals;
  - Dominion status to be granted after the war.
  - Setting up a constitution-making body for India after the war whose members would be elected by

the Provincial assemblies and nominated by the rulers in case of the Princely States.

- The British Govt. undertook to accept and implement the constitution so framed subject to two conditions:

First, Any province(s) not willing to accept the new constitution could form a separate union and a separate constitution.

Second, The new constitution making body and the British Government would negotiate a treaty to sort out matters arising out of transfer of power to Indian hands.

- ✓ Rejected by the Congress as it didn't want to rely upon future promises.

- ✓ Gandhiji termed it as a post dated cheque in a crashing bank.

## THE REVOLT OF 1942 & THE QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT

- ✓ Called the Vardha Proposal and Leaderless Revolt.
- ✓ The resolution was passed on Aug. 8, 1942, at Bombay. Gandhiji gave the slogan 'Do or die'.
- ✓ On Aug. 9, the Congress was banned and its important leaders were arrested. Gandhiji was kept at the Aga Khan Palace, Pune.

The arrests provoked indignation among the masses and, there being no programme of action, the movement became spontaneous and violent. Violence spread throughout the country. Several Govt. offices were destroyed, telegraph wires were cut and communication paralyzed.

- ✓ The trend of underground revolutionary activities also started during the phase. J.P. Narayan, R.M. Lohia and Aruna Asaf Ali started consolidating underground networks. The most daring act of the underground movement was the establishment of Congress Radio with Usha Mehta as its announcer.
- ✓ Parallel govts. were set-up at various places. The first one was in Ballia in eastern UP under the leadership of Chittu Pande. Others were in Satara, Talcher, parts of eastern UP and Bihar.
- ✓ The Muslim League kept aloof and the Hindu Mahasabha condemned the movement. The Communist Party of India also didn't support the movement.

- ✓ The movement was however crushed.

## NAVAL MUTINY (1945)

- ✓ A revolt took place in HMS Talwar on Feb 18, 1945 in Bombay due to racial discrimination, unpalatable food and abuse after the arrest of B C Dutta who had written 'British Quit India' on the wall.



- ✓ Next day, HMS Hindustan in Karachi also revolted.
- ✓ Soon the revolt spread to other places also. In Bombay, the mutineers hoisted the tricolour on their ship masts together with a portrait of S. C. Bose and shouted Jai Hind in the barracks. Their demands included release of all political prisoners including those belonging to the Indian National Army.
- ✓ It was suppressed after persuasion by the Indian leaders.

### RAJAGOPALACHARI FORMULA (1945)

- ✓ He proposed that plebiscite should be held in contiguous districts of North West and East where Muslims were in absolute majority.
- ✓ If the majority decides in favour of forming a separate sovereign state, such decision could be accepted.
- ✓ Jinnah objected as he wanted only Muslims of North West and East of India to vote in the plebiscite.

### WAVELL PLAN (JUNE-JULY 1945)

- ✓ Given by Lord Wavell.
- ✓ The plan was that the viceroy's Executive Council should be so reconstituted that its members, except the Governor General and the Commander-in-Chief, were to be Indians (from various parties). **Simla conference** was convened in this regard, but was rejected by Jinnah.

### THE CABINET MISSION PLAN (1946)

- ✓ The struggle for freedom entered a decisive phase in the year 1945-46. The new Labour Party PM, Lord Attlee, made a declaration on March 15, 1946, that British Cabinet Mission (Comprising of Lord Pethick Lawrence as Chairman, Sir Stafford Cripps and A.V. Alexander) will visit India.
- ✓ The mission held talks with the INC and ML to bring about acceptance of their proposals.
- ✓ On May 16, 1946, the mission put forward its proposals:-
  - ❑ Rejected the demand for separate Pakistan and instead a federal union consisting of British India and the Princely States was suggested. The union would deal with the following subjects: foreign affairs, Defence and Communication and would have the powers to raise the finances required for the above subjects. Full autonomy would be enjoyed by the provinces in respect of all subjects other than the union subjects.
  - ❑ There were to be three groups of Provinces: Group A with six Hindu majority provinces (Bombay, United province, Bihar, Central Province, Orissa, Madras); Group B with three Muslim majority provinces (Sind, NWFP, Punjab) and Group C (Assam and Bengal). After the first general elections, a province could come out of the group and after 10

years a province could call for reconsideration of the group or union constitution

- ❑ The Union would consist of an executive and a legislature would not be directly elected by the people but by the provincial legislatures on the basis of communal electorates. Member of the Princely States would be appointed by the rulers of the Princely State.
- ✓ Both Congress and Muslim League rejected it.
- ✓ The elections of the Constituent Assembly were held in July 1946. The Congress got 205 of the total 273 seats.

### INTERIM GOVERNMENT

- ✓ Based on Cabinet Mission Plan, an interim government consisting of Congress nominees was formed on Sept. 2, 1946. J.L. Nehru was its Vice-president and the Governor-General remained as its President. Muslim League did not join it initially but finally Wavell succeeded in having five members of the League join the government on Oct. 26, 1946.

### JINNAH'S DIRECT ACTION RESOLUTION

- ✓ Jinnah was alarmed at the results of the elections because the Muslim League was in danger of being totally eclipsed in the constituent assembly.
- ✓ Therefore, Muslim League withdrew its acceptance of the Cabinet Mission Plan on July 29, 1946.
- ✓ It passed a 'Direct action' resolution, which condemned both the British Government and the Congress (Aug. 16, 1946).
- ✓ It resulted in heavy communal riots.
- ✓ Jinnah celebrated Pakistan Day on Mar. 27, 1947.

### FORMATION OF CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

- ✓ The constituent assembly met on Dec. 9, 1946 and Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as its president.

### MOUNTBATTEN PLAN

- ✓ On June 3, 1947, Lord Mountbatten put forward his plan which outlined the steps for the solution of India's political problem. The outlines of the plan were:
  - ✓ India to be divided into India and Pakistan.
  - ✓ Bengal and Punjab will be partitioned and a referendum in NEFP and Sylhet district of Assam would be held.
  - ✓ There would be a separate constitutional assembly for Pakistan to frame its Constitution.
  - ✓ The Princely states would enjoy the liberty to join either India or Pakistan or ever remain independent.
  - ✓ Aug. 15, 1947 was the date fixed for handing over

power to India and Pakistan.

- ✓ The British govt. passed the Indian Independence Act of 1947 in July 1947, which contained the major provisions put forward by the Mountbatten plan.

## **PARTITION AND INDEPENDENCE**

- ✓ All political parties accepted the Mountbatten plan.
- ✓ Two Commissions were appointed by the British Government with Sir Cyril Redcliffe as chairman of both to see through the partition and fix the international boundaries of the two nations-to-be.
- ✓ At the time of independence, there were 562 small and big Princely states in India.
- ✓ Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel, the first home minister, used iron hand in this regard. By August 15, 1947, all the States, with a few exceptions like Kashmir, Hyderabad and Junagarh had signed the Instrument of Accession. Goa was with the Portuguese and Pondicherry with the French.

## **CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT REGULATING ACT, 1773**

- ✓ Subjected the Company's actions to the supervision of the British Govt.
- ✓ End of Dual government.
- ✓ Governor of Bengal to be the Governor-General of British territories of India.
- ✓ Establishment of Supreme Court in Calcutta.
- ✓ The servants of the Company were forbidden to engage in private trade, accept presents or bribes, etc.

## **PITTS ACT OF 1784**

- ✓ The commercial and political activities of the Company were now separated. Board of Control of six members (including two cabinet ministers) set-up to guide and supervise the affairs of the Company in India.
- ✓ Three members will sit there in Governor-General's Executive Council.
- ✓ Secret Committee of three Directors were to look into political and military affairs. [Governor General and council were forbidden to declare war and make treaties without the sanction of secret committee].
- ✓ Madras and Bombay Presidencies were subordinated to the Governor-General-in-Council of Bengal in all matters.
- ✓ This act gave the British the British Government a measure of control over the Company's affairs. In fact, the Company became a subordinate department of the State.

## **ACT OF 1786**

- ✓ Governor General given the power to over-ride the council and was made Commander-in-Chief also.

## **CHARTER ACT OF 1793**

- ✓ Company given monopoly of trade for 20 more years.
- ✓ Expenses and salaries of the Board of Control to be charged on Indian revenue.
- ✓ The Governor General and the Governors could now over-ride the decisions of their respective Councils.
- ✓ All laws were to be translated in Indian languages.
- ✓ It laid the foundation of govt. by written laws, interpreted by courts.

## **CHARTER ACT OF 1813**

- ✓ Company deprived of its trade monopoly in India except in tea and trade with China. This made the Company more of an administrative body. All Englishmen could trade with India subject to few restrictions.
- ✓ A sum of Rs. 1 lakh earmarked annually for education of Indians.
- ✓ Further, Christian missionaries were also permitted to come to India and preach their religion.

## **CHARTER ACT OF 1833**

- ✓ End of company's monopoly even in tea and trade with China. Company was asked to close its commercial business at the earliest.
- ✓ All restrictions on European immigration into India and acquisition of land and property in India by them were removed, legalizing European colonization of India.
- ✓ Governor General of Bengal to be Governor General of India; all powers, administrative and financial, were centralized in the hands of the Governor-General-in-Council. (1st Governor General of India- Lord William Bentinck).
- ✓ President of Board of Control became the minister for Indian affairs.
- ✓ A law member (without power to vote) was added to the Executive council of the Governor General. Macaulay was the first Law members. This increased the Council's strength to four. With it began the Indian Legislature.
- ✓ A law commission was constituted for codification of laws.
- ✓ The Act threw open to all, irrespective of religion, place of birth, descent and colour, services under the Company.

## **CHARTER ACT OF 1853**

- ✓ The Act renewed the powers of the company and allowed into to retain the possession of Indian territories in trust for the British Crown but not for any specified period.
- ✓ The number of members of the Court of Directors was reduced from 24 to 18 of which 6 were to be nominated by the Crown.

- ✓ The Law member was made a full member of the Governor General's Executive Council.
- ✓ Legislation was treated for the first time as separate from executive functions.
- ✓ Questions could be asked and the policy of the Executive Council could be discussed, though the Executive Council could veto a bill of the Legislative Council.
- ✓ Recruitment to Civil Services was based on open annual competition examination (excluding Indians).

### GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1858

- ✓ Rule of Company in India ended and that of the Crown began.
- ✓ System of Dual government ended. Court of Directors and Board of control abolished and substituted them with a post of Secretary of State (a member of the British cabinet). He was assisted by a 15-member council (called Indian Council). He was to exercise the powers of the Crown.
- ✓ Secretary of State governed India through the Governor General.
- ✓ Governor General received the title of Viceroy. He represented Secretary of State and was assisted by an Executive Council, which consisted of high officials of the Govt.
- ✓ A unitary and highly centralized administrative structure was created.

### INDIAN COUNCIL ACT, 1861

- ✓ A fifth member, who was to be a jurist, was added to the Viceroy's Executive Council.
- ✓ 6-12 additional members to be added to the Executive Council for legislation purpose. This implied that Viceroy's Executive Council, which was so long composed of officials, would now include certain additional non-official members. Some of non-official seats were offered to natives of high ranks. Thus, a minute element of 'popular' participation was introduced in the legislative process. The additional members, though, had little powers.
- ✓ The Executive council was now to be called Central Legislative Council.
- ✓ Viceroy could issue ordinances in case of emergency.

### INDIAN COUNCIL ACT, 1892

- ✓ Two improvements in both the Central and the Provincial Legislative Councils were suggested:
- ✓ Though the majority of the official members was retained, the non-official members were to be nominated by the Bengal Chamber of Commerce and Provincial Legislative Councils. (The non-official members of the Provincial Councils were to be nominated by certain local bodies such as

universities, district boards, municipalities). Indian leaders like G. K. Gokhale, Ashutosh Mukherjee, Ras Bihari Ghosh and S. N. Banerjee found their way in the Legislative Council.

The Councils were to have the powers to discuss the annual statement of revenue and expenditure (i.e. the budget) and of addressing questions to the Executive. They could also put questions, within certain limits, to the Government on matters of public interest after giving six days' notice.

### INDIAN COUNCIL ACT, 1909 OR MORLEY-MINTO ACT

- ✓ Morley was the Secretary of State, while Minto was the Indian Viceroy.
- ✓ Legislative Councils both at the Centre and in the Provinces, were expanded.
- ✓ With regard to Central Government, an Indian member was taken in the Executive Council of the Governor General.
- ✓ The size of the Provincial Legislative Councils were enlarged by including elected non-official members so that the official majority was gone. Their functions were also increased. Now, they could move resolutions on Budget and on some matters of public matters.
- ✓ An element of election was also introduced in the Central Legislative Council, but the official majority was maintained.
- ✓ The most notable and retrograde change introduced was that Muslims were given separate representation. Thus, communal representation was introduced.

### GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1919 OR MONTAGUE-CHELMSFORD REFORMS

- ✓ Dyarchy system introduced in the provinces. It was considered to be a substantial step towards transfer of power to the Indians. The Provincial subjects of administration were to be divided into two categories: Transferred and Reserved. The Transferred subjects were to be administered by the Governor with the aid of ministers responsible to the Legislative Council. The Governor and the Executive Council were to administer the reserved subjects without any responsibility to the legislature.
- ✓ Devolution Rules: Subjects of administration were divided into two categories: Central and Provincial. Subjects of all India importance (like railways and finance) were brought under the category of Central, while matters relating to the administration of the provinces were classified as Provincial.
- ✓ The Provincial Legislature was to consist of one House only (Legislative Council).

- ✓ The Centre was now to have a Bicameral Legislature for the first time. It actually happened after 1935 Act.
- ✓ Communal representation extended to Sikhs, Christians, Anglo-Indians, etc.
- ✓ Secretary of State to be henceforth paid salary out of the British revenue.

## GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1935

- ✓ Provided for the establishment of All-India Federation consisting of the British provinces and the Princely States. The joining of Princely States was voluntary and as a result the federation did not come into existence.
- ✓ Dyarchy was introduced at the Centre (e.g., Department of Foreign Affairs and Defence were reserved for the Governor General). The other Federal subjects were to be administered by the Governor General with the assistance and advice of a Council of Ministers to be chosen by him (but to include representatives of Princely States and minorities, and to be responsible to the Central Legislature). Residuary powers were to be with the Governor General only.
- ✓ The Federal Legislature (Central Legislature) was to have two chambers (bicameral)-the Council of State and the Federal Assembly. The Council of State was to be a permanent body with one-third of its membership being vacated and renewed triennially. The Federal Assembly's duration was fixed for five years.
- ✓ It made a 3-fold division of powers: Federal (Central) Legislative List, Provincial Legislative List and the Concurrent Legislative List. Residuary Legislative powers were subject to the discretion of the Governor General. Even if a bill was passed by the Federal Legislature, the Governor General could veto it, while even Acts assented to by the Governor General could be disallowed by the King-in-Council.
- ✓ Provincial autonomy replaced Dyarchy in Provinces i.e., the distinction between Reserved and Transferred subjects was abolished and full responsible government was established, subject to certain safeguards. They were granted separate legal identity.
- ✓ The Governor was the head of the Provincial Executive and was expected to be guided by the advice of the popular ministries. However, the Act gave arbitrary powers to the Governors to act in their 'discretion' in certain matters.
- ✓ The Act also provided for a Federal Court (which was established in 1937), with original and appellate powers) to interpret the Constitution. A Federal Bank (the Reserve Bank of India) was also established. The Indian Council of Secretary of State

was abolished.

- ✓ Principle of separate electorate was extended to include Anglo-Indians, Indian Christians and Europeans.
- ✓ Burma (now Myanmar) was separated from India and two new provinces - Orissa and Sind- were created.

## BRITISH EDUCATIONAL POLICY AND GROWTH OF MODERN EDUCATION

### FIRST PHASE(1758-1812)

- ✓ The British East India Company showed very little interest in the education of its subjects during this period, the 2 minor exceptions being:
  - (a) The Calcutta Madras set up by Warren Hastings in 1781 for the study and teaching of Muslim law and subjects.
  - (b) The Sanskrit college at Varanasi by Jonathan Duncan in 1792 for the study of Hindu Law and Philosophy.
- ✓ Both were designed to provide a regular supply of qualified Indians to help the administration of law in the courts of Company.

### SECOND PHASE (1813-1853)

- ✓ Due to the strong pressure exerted on the Company by the Christian missionaries and many humanitarians, including some Indians, to encourage and promote modern education in India, The Charter Act of 1813 required the Company to spend rupees 1 lakh annually for encouraging learned Indians and promoting the knowledge of modern sciences in India.
- ✓ Two controversies about the nature of education arose during the first part of this phase. They were:
  - Whether to lay emphasis on the promotion of modern western studies or on the expansion of traditional Indian learning?
  - Whether to adopt Indian languages or English as the medium of instruction in modern schools and colleges to spread western learning.
- ✓ These 2 controversies were settled in 1835 when Lord William Bentinck (with the support of R.M. Roy) applied English medium.
- ✓ In 1844, Lord Hardinge decided to give govt. employment to Indians educated in English Schools. The success was thus assured (of English education). It made good progress in the 3 presidencies of Bengals Bombay and Madras where the number of schools and colleges increased.
- ✓ Three other developments were:
  - (a) A great upsurge in the activities of the missionaries who did pioneer work in quite a few fields of modern education.



- ✓ (b) Establishment of medical engineering and law colleges which marked a beginning in professional education.
- ✓ (c) Official sanction accorded to education of girls (Lord Dalhousie, in fact, offered the open support of govt.).
- ✓ The Govt. policy of opening a few English schools and colleges instead of a large number of elementary schools led to the neglect of education of masses.
- ✓ To cover up this defect in their policy, the British took recourse to the so-called 'Downward Filtration Theory' which meant that education and modern ideas were supposed to filter or radiate downward from the upper classes.
- ✓ This policy continued till the very end of British rule, although it was officially abandoned in 1854.

### THIRD PHASE (1854-1900)

- ✓ The Educational Dispatch of 1854 was also called Wood's Dispatch (after Sir Charles Wood, the then President of Board of Control, who became the first Secretary of State for India).
- ✓ It is considered as the Magna Carta of English Education in India (forms a landmark in the history of modern education in India).
- ✓ It rejected the 'Filtration theory' and laid stress on mass education, female education and improvement of vernaculars, favoured secularism in Education.
- ✓ Creation of Education Department in the provinces of Bombay, Madras, Bengal, N.W. provinces and Punjab in 1855; Organizations of Indian Education Service in 1897 to cover the senior most posts.
- ✓ Establishment of universities of Calcutta (Jan. 1857) Bombay (July 1857), Madras (Sept. 1857), Punjab (1882) and Allahabad (1887).
- ✓ Lord Ripon appointed Hunter Commission (under Sir W.W. Hunter):
- It recommended that local bodies (distt. boards and municipalities) should be entrusted with the management of primary schools.
- Also said that govt. should maintain only a few schools and colleges; others to be left to private hands.

### FOURTH PHASE (1901-1920)

- ✓ Lord Curzon appointed a Universities Commission under Thomas Raleigh (Law member of the Viceroy's Executive Council) in 1902, and based on his recommendations Indian Universities Act of 1904 was passed.
- ✓ It enabled the universities to assume teaching functions (hitherto they were mainly examining bodies), periodic inspection of institutions, speedier transaction of business, strict conditions for affiliation etc.

- ✓ Criticized by nationalists for its tightening govt. control over universities.
- ✓ In 1910, a separate deptt. of Education was established at the Centre.
- ✓ The Saddler Commission was appointed by Lord Chelmsford to review the working of Calcutta University (2 Indians: Sir Ashutosh Mukherji and Dr. Ziauddin Ahmed.). Main recommendations were:
  - Secondary Education by a Board of Secondary education and duration of degree course by 3 yrs.
  - 7 new universities were opened (Total 12 now). They were: Banaras, Mysore, Patna, Aligarh, Dhaka, Lucknow and Osmanna.
  - ✓ Kashi Vidyapeeth and Ujania Millia Islamia were established.
  - ✓ University course divided into pass course and Honours.

### FIFTH PHASE (1921-1947)

- ✓ Came under Indian control officially, as it became a provincial subject administered by provincial legislature. Thus, expansions started everywhere.
- ✓ Increase in number of universities (20 in 1947); improvement in the quality of higher education (on recommendations of Saddler Commission); establishment of an inter-University Board (1924) and beginning of inter collegiate and inter-university activities.
- ✓ Achievement in women's education and education of backward classes.

### HARTOG COMMITTEE (1929)

- ✓ Recommended the policy of consolidation and improvement of Primary education.
- ✓ Recommended a selective system of admission to universities and diversified courses leading to industrial and commercial careers.
- ✓ Universities should be improved.
- ✓ Wardha scheme of Basic Education (1937), worked out by the Zakir Hussain Committee after Gandhiji published a series of articles in the Harijan.

### SERGEANT PLAN OF EDUCATION (1944)

- ✓ It envisaged:
  - Establishment of elementary schools and high school.
  - Universal and compulsory education for all children between the ages of 6-11.
  - High schools of 2 types:
    - (a) Academic, (b) Technical and Vocational
  - ✓ Intermediate courses were to be abolished.

1905	Partition of Bengal announced; to come in force from Oct. 16, 1905.	1918	Beginning of trade union movement in India.
1906, Dec. 31	Muslim League founded at Dacca.	1918, April	Rowlatt (Sedition) Committee submits its report. Rowlatt Bill introduced on February 16, 1919.
1908, April 30	Khudiram Bose executed.	1919, April 6	All India hartal over Rowlatt Bill.
1908, July 22	Tilak sentenced to six years on charges of sedition.	1919, April 13	Jallianwala Bagh tragedy
1909, May 11	Minto-Morley Reforms or Indian Councils Act, 1909.	1919, Dec. 5	The House of Commons passes the Montague Chelmsford Reforms or the Government of India Act, 1919. The new reforms under this Act came into operation in 1921.
1911	The coronation or Delhi durbar held at Delhi in which the Partition of Bengal was cancelled.	1920	First meeting of the All India Trade Union Congress. (Narain Malhar Joshi).
1912	Delhi becomes the new capital of India.	1920, Dec.	The Indian National Congress (INC) adopts the Non-Co-operation Resolution.
1912, Dec. 23	Bomb thrown on Lord Hardinge on his state entry into Delhi.	1920-22	Non-Co-operation Movement, suspended on February 12, 1922 after the violent incidents at Chauri Chaura on February 5, 1922
1913, Nov. 1	Ghadar Party formed at San Francisco.	1922, August	Moplah rebellion on the Malabar coast.
1914, June 16	B.G. Tilak released from Jail.	1923, Jan 1	Swarajist Party formed by Motilal Nehru and others.
1914, August 4	Outbreak of the 1st World War.	1924	The Communist Party of India starts its activities at Kanpur.
1914, Sept. 19	Romagatama ship reaches Budge Budge (Calcutta Port)	1925, August	Kakori Train Conspiracy case.
1915, Jan. 9	Gandhi arrives in India.	1927, Nov. 8	The British Prime Minister announces the appointment of the Simon Commission to suggest future constitutional reforms in India.
1915, Feb. 19	Death of Gopal Krishna Gokhale.	1928	Simon Commission arrives in Bombay on February 3, 1928 and all-India hartal. Lala Lajpat Rai assaulted by police at Lahore.
1916, April 28	B.G. Tilak founds Indian Home Rule League with its headquarters at Poona.		Nehru Report recommends
1916, Sept. 25	Another Home Rule League started by Annie Besant.		
1917, April	Mahatma Gandhi launches the Champaran campaign in Bihar to focus attention on the grievances of indigo planters.		
1917, August 20	The Secretary of State for India, Montague, declares that the goal of the British government in India is the introduction of Responsible Government.		

	principles for the new Constitution of India. All-Parties Conference considers the Nehru Report, August 28-31, 1928.	1931, Dec. 28	Gandhiji returns from London after the deadlock in 2nd Round Table Conference. Launches Civil Disobedience Movement. The INC declared illegal.
1928, Nov. 17	Death of Lala Lajpat Rai.	1932, Jan. 4	Gandhiji arrested and imprisoned without trial.
1929	Sarda Act passed prohibiting marriage of girls below 14 and boys below 18 years of age with effect from 1930.	1932, Aug. 16	British Prime Minister Ramsay MacDonald announces the infamous "Communal Award".
1929, March 9	All-Parties Muslim Conference formulates the Fourteen Point's under the leadership of Jinnah.	1932, Sept. 20	Gandhiji in jail, begins his epic "fast unto death" against the Communal Award and ends the fast on Sept. 26 after the Poona pact.
1929, April 8	Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutt throw bomb in the Central Legislative Assembly.	1932, Nov. 17	The third Round Table Conference begins in London (Nov. 17 to Dec. 24).
1929, Dec. 31	The Lahore session of the INC adopts the goal of complete independence-poorna swarajya for India.	1933, May 3	Gandhiji released from prison as he begins fast for self-purification. INC suspends Civil Disobedience movement but authorizes Stayagraha by individuals.
1930, Jan. 1	Jawaharlal Nehru hoists the tricolor of Indian Independence on the banks of the Ravi at Lahore.	1934	Gandhiji withdraws from active politics and devotes himself to "constructive programmes" (1934-39).
1930, Jan. 26	First Independence Day observed.		
1930, Feb. 14	The Working Committee of the INC meets at Saranmati and passes the Civil Disobedience resolution.	1935, Aug. 4	The Government of India Act of 1935 passed.
1930, March 12	Mahatma Gandhi launches the Civil Disobedience movement with his epic Dandi March (March 12 to April 5) First phase of the Civil Disobedience movement: March 12, 1930 to March 5, 1931.	1938, Feb. 19-20	Haripura session of INC. Subhash Chandra Bose elected congress president.
1930, Nov. 30	First Round Table Conference begins in London to consider the report of the Simon Commission.	1939, March 10-12	Tripura session of the INC.
1931, March 5	Gandhi-Irwin pact signed. Civil Disobedience movement suspended.	1939, April	Subhash Chandra Bose resigns as the president of the INC.
1931, March 23	Bhagat Singh, Sukh Dev and Rajguru executed.	1939, Sept. 3	Second World War: Great Britain declares war on Germany, the Viceroy declares that India too is at war.
1931, Sept. 7	Second Round Table Conference.	1939, Oct. 27-Nov. 5	The Congress ministries in the provinces resign in protest against the war policy of the British government.
		1939, Dec. 22	The Muslim League observes the resignation of the Congress ministries as Deliverance Day.
		1940, March	Lahore session of the Muslim

	League passes the Pakistan Resolution.	1946, March 15	British Prime Minister Attlee announces Cabinet Mission to propose new solution to the Indian deadlock; Cabinet Mission arrives in New Delhi (March 14); issues proposal (May 16).
1940, August 10	Viceroy Linlithgow announces -August Offer.		
1940, Aug. 18-22	Congress Working Committee rejects the 'August Offer'.		
1940, Oct. 17	Congress launches Individual Satyagraha movement.	1946, July 6	Jawaharlal Nehru takes over as Congress president.
1941, Jan. 17	Subhash Chandra Bose escapes from India; arrives in Berlin (March 28).	1946, August 6	Wavell invites Nehru to form an interim government; Interim Government takes office (Sept. 2).
1942, March 11	Churchill announces the Cripps Mission.		
1942, August 7-8	The INC meets in Bombay; adopts 'Quit India' resolution.	1946, Dec. 9	First session of the Constituent Assembly of India starts. Muslim League boycotts it.
1942, August 9	Gandhiji and other Congress leaders arrested.	1947, Feb. 20	British Prime Minister Attlee declares that the British government would leave India not later than June 1948.
1942, August 11	Quit India movement begins; the Great August Uprising.		
1942, Sept. 1	Subhash Chandra Bose establish the Indian National Army 'Azad Hind Fauj'.	1947, March 24	Lord Mountbatten, the last British Viceroy and Governor-General of India, sworn in (March 24, 1947 to June 21, 1948).
1943, Dec.	Karachi session of the Muslim League adopts the slogan 'Divide and Quit'.		
1944, Jan 25	Wavell calls Simla Conference in a bid to form the executive Council of Indian political leaders.	1947, June 3	Mountbatten Plan for the partition of India and the announcement (June 4) that transfer to power will take place on August 15.
1946, Feb. 18	Mutiny of the Indian naval ratings in Bombay.	1947, August 15	India wins freedom.



# **GEOGRAPHY**

# Our Solar System

## SOLAR SYSTEM: SOME FACTS

• Biggest Planet	Jupiter
• Smallest Planet	Mercury
• Nearest Planet to Sun	Mercury
• Farthest Planet from Sun	Neptune
• Nearest Planet to Earth	Venus
• Brightest Planet	Venus
• Brightest star after Sun	Sirius
• Planet with maximum satellites	Jupiter
• Coldest Planet	Neptune
• Hottest Planet	Venus
• Heaviest Planet	Jupiter
• Red Planet	Mars
• Biggest Satellite	Gannymede
• Smallest Satellite	Deimos
• Blue Planet	Earth
• Morning/Evening Star	Venus
• Earth's Twin	Venus
• Green Planet	Neptune
• Planet with a big red spot	Jupiter
• Lord of the Heavens	Jupiter
• Greatest Diurnal Temperature	Mercury
• Ratio of Gravitational Pull of Moon and Earth	1: 6
• Part of Moon not visible From Earth	41%
• Revolution period of Moon around Earth	27 days, 7 hrs, 43 min and 11.47sec
• Rotation period of Moon around Earth	27 days, 7 hrs, 43 min and 11.47 sec
• Highest mountain of Moon	35,000 ft (Leibniz Mts.)
• Time taken by moonlight to reach Earth	1.3 sec

## MERCURY

- Rotation: 58.65 days.
- Revolution: 88 days (Fastest revolution in Solar System).
- Maximum diurnal range of temperature. Its days are scorching hot and nights are frigid.
- It has no atmosphere and no satellite.

## VENUS

- Also called Earth's Twin, because it is slightly smaller than earth (500 km less in diameter).
- Popularly known as Evening star and Morning star.
- Brightest object after sun and moon (because of 70% albedo, the reflecting power).
- Closest planet to earth.
- It is the hottest planet in Solar System. It is because of the green house effect as its atmosphere contains 90-95% carbon dioxide. The night and day temperatures are also almost same. Rotates backward (clockwise) unlike others.
- It has no satellite.
- Slowest rotation in Solar System (257 days.) Almost equal rotation and revolution (224.7 days).

## EARTH

- Also called Blue Planet. It is the densest of all planets.
- Circumference: 40,232 km. Area: 510 million sq. km.
- Average distance from sun: 149 million-km.
- Spins on its imaginary axis from west to east in 23 hrs, 56 min and 40.91 sec.
- Takes 365 days, 5 hrs, 48 min and 45.51 sec in annual movement around the sun. Its results in one extra days every fourth year.

## MARS

- Also called Red planet.
- Revolution: 687 days
- Rotation: 24.6 hrs (almost equal to Earth)
- It has a thin atmosphere comprising of nitrogen and argon.
- It is marked with dormant volcanoes and deep chasms where once water flowed. Recent explorations have thrown light on the possibilities of existence of life here.
- The highest mountain here is named 'Nix Olympia' which is three times higher than Mount Everest.
- It has 2 satellites-Phobos and Deimos.

## JUPITER

- Largest of all planets (71% of the total mass of all planets). Called Lord the Heavens.
- Jupiter appears to have stopped halfway to becoming a star. It was too massive to solidify as a planet but not massive enough to develop 'nuclear fusion' and become a star.

- Its atmosphere contains hydrogen, helium, methane and ammonia. A great red spot is detected on it. It represents a huge storm—a super hurricane, existing for hundreds of years, without abating. This storm is probably powered by Jupiter's internal heat.
- It has the fastest rotation time (9.8 hr) in the Solar System.
- Revolution-12 years.
- It has 63 satellites (prominent are Europe, Gannymede & Callisto). Gannymede is the largest satellite of Solar System.

## SATURN

- Second in size after Jupiter.
- Revolution: 29 yrs. Rotation: 10.3 hrs
- Least density of all (30 times less dense than earth).
- Unique feature is its system of rings (3 well defined).
- These are separate particles that move independently in circular orbits.
- 60 satellites (Prominent is Titan).
- The space probe, Cassini, is on Saturn these days.

## URANUS

- Identified as a planet in 1781 by William Herschel.
- Seems to rotate from north to south as it is inclined at an angle of  $98^\circ$  to its orbit.
- Revolution: 84 yrs. Rotation: 10.8 hrs.
- Surrounded by a system of 9 faint rings.
- Has 27 satellites (Prominent are Miranda, Ariel, etc).

## NEPTUNE

- Appears as 'Greenish Star'.
- Revolution: 165 yrs. Rotation: 15.7 days.
- Has 5 faint rings.
- Discovered by J.G Galle of Berlin in 1846.
- 13 satellites.

## PLUTO

- Pluto is much smaller than any of the official planets and now classified as a 'dwarf planet'.
- A heavenly body must fulfill certain conditions and then only it can be called a planet.
- There are three requirements defined by IAU.
  1. It needs to be in an orbit around the Sun.
  2. It needs to have enough gravity to pull itself into a spherical shape.
  3. It needs to have clear and separate orbit away from the orbits of its neighbours.
- Pluto satisfied conditions (1), (2) but not (3). Its orbit cuts through the orbit of Neptune and it is so small that the satellites of many other planets are bigger than Pluto. Hence it was declared a 'Dwarf Planet' in 2006.

## ASTEROIDS

- Asteroids are a series of very small planets or fragments of planets lying between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. Also called 'Planetoids or small planets'. They are thought to be the debris left over from the formation of inner planets.

## COMETS

- It has a head and a tail. Its tail originates only when it gets closer to the sun. The tail can be 20-30 million km long. It always points away from the sun because of the force exerted by solar wind and radiation on the comet material.

## METEORS (Shooting Stars)

- The meteors are probably the remains of comets which are scattered in the inter-planetary space of the Solar System. On contact with the earth's atmosphere, they burn due to friction.

## Moon

- Circumference: 11,000 km. Diameter: 3475 km. Gravitational pull: 1/6th of Earth.
- Its orbit around earth is elliptical. The maximum distance (Apogee) of the moon from the earth is 406,000 km. and the minimum distance (Perigee) is 364,000 km. the average distance is 3,82,200 km. All other satellites (except Charon) have sizes below 1/8th the size of mother planets. But moon is about 1/4th the size of earth.
- Takes 27 days, 7 hrs, 43 min and 11.47 sec to complete one revolution around earth.
- Rotates on its axis in exactly the same time as it takes to complete one revolution. That is why we see only one side of the moon (only 59% of its surface).

## PLANETS AND THEIR SATELLITES

Planet	No. of satellites
Mercury	0
Venus	0
Earth	1
Mars	2
Jupiter	63
Saturn	60
Uranus	27
Neptune	13

## EARTH

- Also called **Blue Planet**. It is the densest of all planets.
- Circumference: 40, 232 km. Area: 510 million sq. km. Average distance from sun: 149 million-km.
- **Perihelion**: Nearest position of earth to sun. The earth reaches its perihelion on January 3, every year at a distance of about 147 million km.
- **Aphelion**: Farthest position of earth from sun. The earth reaches its aphelion on July 4, when the earth is at a distance of 152 million km.
- The shape of the earth is oblate spheroid or oblate ellipsoid (i.e. almost spherical, flattened a little at the poles with a slight bulge at the centre).

### EARTH MOVEMENTS

- There are two types of movements:
  - (i) Rotation or daily movement.
  - (ii) Revolution or annual movement.

#### ROTATION

- The earth spins on its imaginary axis from west to east in 23 hrs, 56 min and 40.91 sec.
- Rotational velocity at equator is 1667 km/h and it decreases towards the poles, where it is zero.
- Earth's rotation results in
  - (i) causation of days and-nights;
  - (ii) a difference of one hour between two meridians which are  $15^\circ$  apart;
  - (iii) change in the direction of wind and ocean currents;
  - (iv) rise and fall of tides every day.
- The longest day in North Hemisphere is June 21, while shortest day is on Dec 22 (Vice-versa in Southern Hemisphere).
- Days and nights are almost equal at the equator.

#### REVOLUTION

- It is earth's motion in elliptical orbit around the sun. Earth's average orbital velocity is 29.79 km/s.
- The earth takes 365 days, 5 hrs, 48 min and 45.51 seconds to complete revolution. It results in one extra day every fourth year.
- Revolution of the earth results in
  - (i) change of seasons;
  - (ii) variation in the lengths of days and nights at different times of the year;
  - (iii) shifting of wind belts;
  - (iv) determination of latitudes.

- **Inclined Axis**: The axis is an imaginary line running from north to south and passing through the centre of the earth. It always remains inclined at an angle of  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  to the plane of the earth's orbit, and is tilted  $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  from a line perpendicular to this plane. The two facts, i.e., a fixed angle of the earth's axis to the plane of the orbit and the axis always pointing in the same direction, when combined with the earth's movements, results in varying lengths of days and nights, seasonality and changes in the altitude of sun at different times of the year.

- **Seasons** are periods into which the year can be divided as a result of the climatic conditions, largely due to the changes in the duration and intensity of solar radiation. The 4 seasons are:

1. **Spring**: On March 21, the sun is directly overhead the equator. This is the season of spring in the northern hemisphere.
  2. **Summer**: On June 21, the sun is directly overhead the Tropic of Cancer. Thus, the northern hemisphere experiences summer.
  3. **Autumn**: On September 23, the sun returns to the equator, and the northern hemisphere experiences autumn.
- Winter**: On December 22, the sun is at the Tropic of Capricorn, and the northern hemisphere experiences winter.

#### EQUINOXES

- These are dates when days and nights are equal. During these days the sun shines directly over the equator.
- March 21: Vernal equinox.
- Sept 23: Autumnal equinox.

#### SOLSTICE

- The time of the year when the difference between the length of days and the length of nights is the largest.
- During these days the sun shines directly over the tropics.
- June 21: Summer Solstice.
- Dec 22: Winter Solstice.

#### MIDNIGHT SUN

- It is a phenomenon, seen in the latitudes  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  North and South (or the Arctic and Antarctic Circles) where the sun does not sink below the horizon during summer. This results due to the tilt of the earth's axis, each hemisphere being inclined towards the sun during its summer. The duration of the phenomenon increases towards the poles, where it may be observed for six months of each year.
- North Pole experiences day from 21<sup>st</sup> march to 23<sup>rd</sup> September.
- South Pole experiences day from 23<sup>rd</sup> September to 21<sup>st</sup> March.



## LATITUDE

- Imaginary lines drawn parallel to the equator. Measured as an angle whose apex is at the centre of the earth.
- The equator represents  $0^\circ$  latitude, while the North pole is  $90^\circ$  N and the South Pole is  $90^\circ$  S.
- $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  N represent Tropic of Cancer while  $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  S represents Tropic of Capricorn.
- $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  N represents Arctic Circle while  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  S represents Antarctic Circle.
- There are total 181 latitude including the equator. Each Parallel of latitude is a circle, but they are not equal. The circle becomes smaller towards the poles. Equator is the 'Greatest Circle' that can be drawn on the earth's surface.
- The distance between any two Parallels of latitude is always equal.

## LONGITUDE

- It is the angular distance measured from Prime meridian. On the globe the lines of longitude are drawn as a series of semicircles that extend from the North Pole to the South Pole through the equator. They are also called meridians.
- The distance between any two meridians is not equal. At the equator, 1 degree = 111 km. At  $30^\circ$  N or S, it is 96.5 km. It goes on decreasing in this way until it is zero at the poles.
- There are 360 meridians of longitude. The prime meridian is a longitude of  $0^\circ$ , passing through the Royal Observatory at Greenwich near London. This meridian is taken by geographers to divide the earth into the eastern and the western hemispheres.
- Each meridian of longitude is a semi-circle.  $180^\circ$  meridian (international Date Line) lies exactly opposite to  $0^\circ$  meridian. Such points are called **Antipodal Points**.
- The earth is divided into 24 longitudinal zones, each being  $15^\circ$  or 1 hour apart in time (4 minutes/degree).

## LONGITUDE AND TIME

- Places that are on the same meridian have the same local (Sun) time. Since the earth makes one complete revolution of  $360^\circ$  in 24 hours, it passes through  $15^\circ$  in one hour or  $1^\circ$  in 4 minutes.
- The earth rotates from west to east; hence places east of Greenwich see the sun later and lose time.
- A suitable memory acronym can be East-Gain-Add (E.G.A.) and West- Lose- subtract (W.L.S). So, if it is noon in London ((near  $0^\circ$ ),  $15^\circ$  east will be one hour ahead of London. This means here the time will be 1p.m. and Chennai of  $80^\circ$  E will be 5 hours 20 minutes ahead. This means here the time will be 5:20 pm.

- To avoid confusion about having many local times within one country, a particular meridian is chosen for the whole country whose time is known as 'standard time'.
- Generally, the standard meridians are chosen to differ from the Greenwich meridian by the multiples of fifteen degree or seven and a half degree, i.e., by exact number of hours or half hours. The world is thus divided into a number of time zones. Larger countries like Russia, Canada, USA etc., have greater east-west extension, so they adopt several time zones. Russia has 11 time zones while USA and Canada have 5 time zones.
- India, whose longitudinal extent is approx.  $30^\circ$ , has adopted only one time zone, selecting the  $82.5^\circ$  E for the standard time which is 5 hours and 30 minutes ahead of GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).

## INTERNATIONAL DATE LINE

- It is the  $180^\circ$  meridian running over the Pacific Ocean, deviating at Aleutian Islands, Fiji, Samoa and Gilbert Islands.
- Travellers crossing the Date Line from west to east (i.e., from Japan to USA) repeat a day. Travellers crossing it from east to west (i.e., from USA to Japan) lose a day.

## ECLIPSES

### Lunar Eclipse

- Lunar Eclipse occur when earth comes between the sun and the moon.
- Occurs only on a full moon day. However, it does not occur on every full moon day because the moon is so small and the plane of its orbit is tilted about  $5^\circ$  with respect to the plane of the earth's orbit. It is for this reason that eclipses do not occur every month.
- An eclipse can last up to one hour 40 minutes. The moon does not become completely dark during most lunar eclipses. In many cases, it becomes reddish. The earth's atmosphere bends part of the Sun's light around the earth and towards the moon. This light is red because the atmosphere scatters the other colors present in the sunlight in greater amounts than it does red.

## Solar Eclipse

- Solar Eclipse is caused when moon comes between sun and earth.
- Can be partial or total.
- Occurs only on a new moon day when the moon is in line with the sun. However, due to the inclination of the moon's orbit, a solar eclipse doesn't occur on every new moon day.

## TIDES

- Tides refer to the phenomenon of regular rise and fall of the sea water. Though both sun and moon exert gravitational force on earth, resulting in the production of tides, the moon, by nature of its closeness to the earth, has greater control over the timings of the tidal rises and falls.
- The interval between low tides is 12 hrs and 26 minutes.

### Spring tide

- When the sun, moon and the earth are in a straight line, the gravitational force is at its greatest because tide producing forces of both sun and moon complement each other and they pull together. This produces tides of unusually great range, called the spring tide. These occur about twice a month: at new moon when the sun and the moon are in conjunction and at full moon when they are in opposition.

### Neap tide

- Lowest magnitude as the tide producing forces of sun and moon act opposite to each other, as they form a triangle. This happens during phases of first and third quarter, i.e. at half moon, the sun's tide producing force tends to balance the tide producing force of the moon, resulting in tides of unusually small range known as neap tides.

## INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF EARTH

### THE CRUST

- It is the outermost and thinnest layer of the earth's surface, about 8 to 40 km thick. The crust varies greatly in thickness and composition-as small as 5 km thick at some places beneath the oceans, while under some mountain ranges it extends up to 70 km in depth.
- The crust is made up of two layers-an upper lighter layer called the Sial (Silicate + Aluminum) and a less denser layer called Sima (Silicate Magnesium).
- The average density of this layer is 3 gm/cc.

### THE MANTLE

- This layer extends up to a depth of 2900 km.
- Mantle is made up of two parts: Upper mantle or Asthenosphere (up to about 500 km) and Lower Mantle. Asthenosphere is in a semi-molten plastic state, and it is thought that this enables the lithosphere to move about it. Within the asthenosphere the velocity of seismic waves is considerably reduced (Called 'Low Velocity Zone').
- The line of separation between the mantle and the crust is known as **Mohorovicic Discontinuity**.

### THE CORE

- Beyond a depth of 2900 km lies the core of the earth.
- The outer core is 2100 km thick and is in molten form due to excessive heat out there. Inner core is 1370 km thick and is in plastic form due to the combined factors of excessive heat and pressure. It is made up of **iron and nickel (Nife)** and is responsible for earth's magnetism. This layer has the maximum specific gravity.
- The temperatures in the earth's core lie between 2200°C and 2750°C.
- The line of separation between the mantle and the core is called **Gutenberg-Wiechert Discontinuity**.

### Temperature inside the Earth

In the first 100 km, there is 12° increase per km. In the next 300 km, there is 2° increase in temperature per km. After that it is 1° increases per km.

### COMPOSITION OF EARTH

- The Earth is made up of over 100 elements.
- The following 8 are important:

Element	Per cent
Oxygen	46.5%
Silicon	27.72%
Aluminums	8.13%
Iron	5.01%
Calcium	3.63%
Sodium	2.85%
Potassium	2.62%
Magnesium	2.09%

## LITHOSPHERE

- It is the topmost crust of the earth.
- Thickness varies from 35-50 km in continents and 6-12 km at the ocean beds.

## THE ROCKS

- Any aggregate of material particles that forms part of the earth's crust is called a rock.
- There are 3 major types of rock types:

### IGNEOUS ROCKS

- Formed by the solidification of molten magma from the interior of the earth.
- Most abundant of the three types of rocks (95%).
- They do not occur in layers. Most of them are crystalline and do not contain fossils.
- All other types of rocks originate from these rocks. So Igneous rocks are called **primary rocks**.

### SEDIMENTARY ROCKS

- Made up of weathered remains of igneous rocks. Also contains fossils of plants and animals.
- Comprise only about 5% of the earth's crust but cover about 75% of the total land surface.
- The layers of sedimentary rocks hold all reserve of coal, oil and natural gas.

### METAMORPHIC ROCKS

- Sometimes igneous or sedimentary rocks metamorphize or change due to great pressure, intense temperature or the action of water and chemical activity.
- Examples of metamorphic rocks formed from different rocks are:

Metamorphic Rock	Made From
Slate	shale and mudstone
Quartzite	sandstone
Gneiss	granite
Marble	limestone, chalk
Schist	shale
Anthracite	coal

## EARTHQUAKES

- Tremors or vibrations of earth's surface produced by internal forces.
- The point of origin of earthquake is called **seismic focus**. Most of the earthquakes originate at the depth of 50-100 km inside the earth.
- The point on the earth's surface vertically above the earth's surface is called **Epicentre**.
- The passage of earthquake waves is recorded by **Seismograph**.
- The magnitude of waves is measured on **Richter's scale**. For measurement of the intensity of the earthquake (damage caused), the **Modified Mercalli Intensity Scale** is used.

## TYPES OF WAVES

1. **Primary Waves (P-Waves)** : Travel from the point of happening by the displacement of surrounding particles. They are transmitted through solids, liquids and gases. Travels fastest.
2. **Secondary Waves (S-Waves)** : Travels through solids only. Thus they cannot pass through core.
3. **Surface Waves or Long Waves (L-Waves)** : Travels on earth's surface and causes maximum destruction. They are recorded after the P and S waves.

### Distribution of Earthquakes

- 68 per cent of the volcanoes are experienced in the region around the Pacific Ocean along a belt of volcanoes which is known as the Ring of Fire.
- From the middle of Asia (Himalayas, Caspian Sea) through the Mediterranean Sea to West Indies experience 21 Per cent of the earthquakes.
- Mid-Atlantic ridge belt accounts for 11 per cent of the earthquakes.

## VOLCANOES

- A volcano is a vent or opening usually circular in form through which heated materials consisting of gases, water, liquid lava and fragments of rocks are ejected from the highly heated interiors to the surface of the earth.

### TYPES OF VOLCANOES

There are three types of volcano.

- a. **Active Volcano**: Volcano which erupt periodically. E.g., Mauna Loa in Hawaii, Etna in Sicily, Stromboli in Mediterranean Sea, etc.
- b. **Dormant Volcano**: Volcano which has been inactive for a long time but in which there is a possibility of eruption. E.g., Fujiyama in Japan, Krakatora in Indonesia, Barren island volcano in Andamans, etc.
- c. **Extinct Volcano** : Volcano which has not erupted during the whole historic time but retain the features of volcano. E.g, Popa (Myanmar) Deovand (Iran), etc.

### Distribution of Volcanoes

- About 15% of world's active volcanoes are found along the constructive or divergent 'plate margins, whereas 80% volcanoes are associated with the 'destructive or convergent' plate boundaries.
- a. **The Circum-Pacific belt or the 'Ring of Fire'**  
It extends across the Kamchatka Peninsula, Kurile Islands, the Islands of Japan, Philippines, New Guinea, New Zealand and the Solomon Islands. It also passes through the Antarctica and the western coast of America.
- b. **The Mid-Continent belt** includes volcanoes of Alpine mountain chain, the Mediterranean Sea and the fault zone of eastern Africa. E.g., Stromboli, Vesuvius, Etna, Kilimanjaro, etc.

- c. **The Mid-Atlantic belt** in which the volcanoes are fissure eruption type. E.g., Iceland, Canary Islands, Cape Verde, Azores, etc.

## TPES OF MOUNTAINS

### FOLD MOUNTAINS

- They were formed when the rocks of the crust of the earth folded under stress, mainly by forces of compression (as a result of series of earthquakes).
- E.g.- All big mountain systems : Himalayas, Alps, Andes, Rockies, Atlas, etc.
- On the basis of age, Fold Mountains are grouped into

#### Young/ New Fold Mountains

- Came into existence after the continental drift. E.g., Himalayas, Andes, Rockies, Alps. Himalayas are regarded the youngest mountains in the world.

### BLOCK MOUNTAINS

- These are formed when great blocks of earth's crust are raised or lowered. During the uplift of structural mountains, sometimes magma flows upwards into the crust. On its cooling and hardening beneath the surface, it contracts and the overlying rock may crack into large blocks moving up or down. An intense folding of rocks is generally followed by faulting of strata due to horizontal forces of tension. The land between the two parallel faults either rises forming **Block mountains or Horsts**, or subsides into a depression termed as **Rift Valley or Graben**.
- E.g.: Narmada, Tapi and Damodar valley in India, the Vosges in France and Black forest in Germany (through which Rhine river flows).

### VOLCANIC MOUNTAINS

- Formed as a result of volcanic eruption and the outflow of lava (through crater, the opening). Also called **Mountains of Accumulation**. Have a gentle slope.
- E.g.: Cotopaxi in Andes, Vesuvius and Etna in Italy, Fujiyama in Japan, Mauna Loa and Kilauea (Most active volcano) in Hawaii, Ojos del Salado in Argentina/Chile (**Highest active volcano**), Popocatepetl in Mexico, Rainier of Washington, Stromboli in Mediterranean (called **Light house of the Mediterranean**), Merapi and Krakatau in Indonesia, etc.

### RELICT MOUNTAINS

- Sometimes, the mountains are carved out as a result of erosion of plateaus and high planes by various agents of erosion. E.g., Highlands of Scotland, Sierras of Spain, Catskill mountains of New York and Nilgiri, Parasnath, Girnar, Rajmahal of India.

## ATMOSPHERE

- The atmosphere is a mixture of a layer of gases enveloping the earth, held to it by gravitational force. Almost all the atmosphere (97 per cent) lies within 29 km of the earth's surface.

- Beyond approximately 100 km, recent data from satellites suggest that the lightest gases separate out, forming several concentric layers around the earth. The innermost of the atmosphere is the nitrogen layer (100-200 km); then comes oxygen (200-1100 km); helium (1100-3500) and then hydrogen only, to which there is really no clearly defined upper limit.

- Up to about 50 km the atmosphere is composed of:

Nitrogen	78.9%
Oxygen	20.95%
Argon	0.93%
Carbon dioxide	0.03%

(Others are Neon, Helium, Ozone, Hydrogen, etc.)

- Water vapors, besides being the immediate cause of condensation and precipitation, absorb the insulation coming from the sun, reducing the amount reaching the earth's surface.
- Carbon dioxide is important for absorption of heat from the sun as well as from the earth. A high concentration of carbon dioxide leads to **Greenhouse Effect**.
- Dust particles scatter and diffuse insulation and also act as hygroscopic nuclei for condensation (for the formation of clouds).

## TROPOSPHERE

- Layer nearest to earth's surface. Thickness varies from 8 km at the poles to 16 km at the equator.
- All weather phenomena's occur here.
- Densest of all. It contains water vapour, moisture and dust.
- Dust particles present in this layer hold the water vapour and contribute to the occurrence of twilight and the red colors of sunlight and sunset.
- In this with every 165 m of ascent there is a drop of 1°C (or 6.4° C per km). This is called **Normal Lapse Rate of Temperature**.
- **Tropopause** separates troposphere from stratosphere.



## STRATOSPHERE

- Extends from 16 km to 50 km of height. The temperature ceases to fall with the increase of height in this layer.
- Little weather is generated here as there is very little water vapour and virtually no dust present.
- Stratosphere provides ideal conditions for flying large airplanes.
- Contains ozone at a height of 25-30 km from earth's surface. This region is called Ozonosphere. It absorbs the ultra- violet rays from the sun. This layer has a comparatively higher temperature due to the absorption of ultra-violet radiation from the sun (temperature increases as we go up).

## MESOSPHERE

- Up to a height of about 80 km.
- In this, the temperature decreases with height and falls to about  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$  at a height of 80 km.

## IONOSPHERE

- Extends up to about 500-600 km.
- It is called Ionosphere because it contains electrically charged particles (ions) that reflect the radio waves back to the earth thus making radio communication possible.
- Also protects earth from harmful radiation. This causes increase in temperature with height in this layer.
- It also protects earth from falling meteorites, as most of them burn out in this region.

## EXOSPHERE

- Here the earth's gravity is extremely weak.
- Upper limit quite uncertain.
- The outer part is called Magnetosphere.
- The ionized particles increase in frequency with increasing height. There are two belts in the upper atmosphere having a high concentration of ionized particles. They are known as Van Allen's Radiation Belts. The inner belt lies about 2600 km from the earth's surface, while the outer lies at about 13,000 to 19,000 kms from it. These belts represent concentrations of highly charged particles, protons and electrons from the sun, trapped within lines of force of the earth's external magnetic field-the Magnetosphere.
- The final boundary between the earth and the outer space is called 'Magnetopause'.

## PRESSURE AND WINDS

- Air moving in a particular direction is called wind. The principal cause of winds is difference in pressure. Air always moves from areas of high pressure to those with low pressure. The slope of the pressure from high to low is known as **Pressure Gradient** and pressure decides the direction of winds.
- Wind velocity is directly related to the steepness of the pressure gradient.
- In addition, the direction of wind are affected by the **Coriolis force**, which is caused by the rotation of the earth. Under the influence of this effect, winds are deflected to their right in the Northern Hemisphere and to their left in the Southern Hemisphere. This is referred to as **Farrel's Law**. Coriolis force is absent at the equator and increases toward the poles. Due to this, the winds, which would blow at right angles to the isobars under the pressure gradient, blow obliquely to them.

## GLOBAL PRESSURE BELTS

### *Equatorial Low-Pressure Belt (or Doldrums)*

- From  $5^{\circ}\text{N}$  to  $5^{\circ}\text{S}$ .
- Tremendous heat, thus warm air rises creating low pressure. Also, the centrifugal force is very high at the equator, where the velocity of rotation is high. Hence, the air masses tend to be thrown out, resulting in low pressure.
- Here wind speed is low That's why this area is called **DOLDRUMS** (Belt of Calm).

### *Tropical High Pressure Belt (or Horse Latitudes)*

- From  $30^{\circ}$  to  $35^{\circ}$  N and S.
- Apart from 2 months, usually high temperature is experienced here.
- Here the pressure is high, although there is high temperature, because here pressure depends on the rotation and movement of air (as winds from Doldrums belt rises up and accumulate here. Also winds from Sub-Polar Low Pressure Belt accumulate here).

### *Sub-Polar Low Pressure Belt*

- From  $60^{\circ}$  to  $65^{\circ}$  N and S.
- Here the low pressure is created because of intense high pressure at the poles.

## WINDS AND THEIR TYPES

- Winds are classified into three broad categories are:
  - **Regular Winds/ Prevailing Winds/ Planetary Winds:** (E.g.: Trade winds, Westerlies and Polar Easterlies).

- **Periodical Wind (which blow seasonally):** •  
Monsoons.
- **Variable Winds:** Cyclones and other local winds

### TRADE WINDS

- Trade in German means Track. 'To blow trade' means to 'blow steadily' in the same direction and in a constant course.
- These are steady currents of air blowing from the sub-tropical high pressure belts towards the equatorial low pressure areas (doldrums). Under the influence of the Coriolis force they blow from the north-east in the northern hemisphere and from the south-east in the southern hemisphere.

### WESTERLIES

- Blows from subtropical high pressure to sub-polar low pressure belt.
- In the northern hemisphere, land masses cause considerable disruption in the westerly wind belt. But between 40° and 60° S lies the almost unbroken ocean belt. Westerlies are strong and persistent here, giving rise to mariner's expressions 'Roaring Forties', 'Furious Fifties' and 'Shrieking Sixties'.

### POLAR EASTERLIES

- Move from high pressure poles to sub-polar low pressure areas.
- These are deflected by the Earth's rotation to become east winds, or the polar easterlies.

### CYCLONES

- It is a system of very low pressure at the center surrounded by increasing high pressure outwards. In this, the winds blow in a circular manner in-  
 1. Anticlockwise direction in Northern Hemisphere.  
 2. Clockwise direction in Southern Hemisphere.
- In the temperate region, they occur due to the coming close and imperfect mixing of two masses of air of contrasting temperature and humidity conditions. Cycles of this type are also known as **Wave Cyclones or Temperate Cyclones**.
- On the other hand, in the tropical regions, they occur due to intense heating up of air in some regions causing very low pressure in these locations. Tropical seas and oceans are most conducive to the development of tropical cyclones.

These are known as:

Cyclones	-	in the Indian Ocean.
Hurricanes	-	in the Caribbean Islands
Typhoons	-	in the China Sea.
Willy-Willies	-	in the North-West Australia.
Tornadoes	-	in coastal US.
Twisters	-	in Mississippi Valley, USA.

- Tornadoes are very strong tropical cyclones of a smaller size. They are especially named in the Mississippi Valley in US and here they are called Twisters. They differ from cyclones in the way that they generally develop over land. They are more destructive than cyclones. The speed of winds is very high, exceeding 320 km per hour.

### ANTICYCLONES

- They are opposite to cyclones in all respects. They are the centers of high pressure with gentle outward flow of air.
- The air circulation is clockwise in the northern hemisphere and anticlockwise in the southern hemisphere.
- Weather associated with an anticyclone is fair weather.

### HUMIDITY

- Humidity refers to the amount of water vapour actually present in the air.
- The ratio between the amount of water vapour actually present in the air mass and the maximum amount that the air mass can hold at that temperature is called **relative humidity**. It is expressed in percentage. It varies inversely with temperature, given a fixed amount of water vapour.
- **Absolute humidity** denotes the actual quantity of water vapour present in the air and it is defined as the weight of water vapour (grams) in a given volume of air (cubic meter).
- The term **specific humidity** is applied to express the ratio of weight of water vapour to the weight of moist air (including water vapour). It is stated as grams of water vapour per kilogram of moist air.
- Humidity is measured by an instrument called **hygrometer**. Another instrument used for the same purpose is **sling psychrometer**.

### CONDENSATION, DEW POINT AND RELATED TERMS:

- The physical process of transformation from the vapour to the liquid state is **condensation**. This is the basis of all types of **precipitation**. Precipitation is the fall of water from the atmosphere to the ground in any form.

- **Dew Point** is the temperature at which the air is fully saturated and below which condensation normally occurs.
- **Dew** is the deposition of water droplets on the ground. It occurs when the temperature of the ground surface falls and the air in contact with it is cooled below its dew point. Dew is likely to occur on clear and calm nights.
- **Frost** is a weather condition that occurs when the air temperature is at or below 0°C. Moisture on the ground surface and objects freezes to form an icy deposit.
- **Fog** is made of the droplets of water suspended in the lower layers of the atmosphere, resulting from the condensation of water vapour around nuclei of floating dust or smoke particles. A visibility of less than 1 km is the internationally recognized definition of fog. Fog is not considered as a form of precipitation.
- **Smog (Smoke + Fog)** is a form of fog that occurs in areas where the air contains a large amount of smoke.
- **Mist** is the term for reduction of visibility between 1-2 km, caused by condensation producing water droplets within the lower layers of atmosphere.
- **Haze** is formed by water particles that have condensed in the atmosphere and the visibility in this case is more than 1 km but less than 2 km. Haze may also be produced by presence of dust and smoke, which reduce visibility.

## CLOUD

- Clouds are masses of minute water droplets and/or ice crystals formed by the condensation of water vapour and held in suspension in the atmosphere. Condensation, which results from cooling, usually takes place around nuclei such as dust, smoke particles and salt. Such particles are called condensation nuclei.
- Clouds are different types and they can be classified on the basis of their form and altitude. On the basis of form, there are two major groups:
  - (i) Strati-form or layered types, and
  - (ii) Cumuli-form or massive types.

### Stratiform Clouds

- These clouds, which are fairly thin and blanket like, are sub-divided into three main categories on the basis of altitude.

### High Clouds (mean height 5-13 km)

1. **Cirrus:** Indicates fair weather.
2. **Cirrocumulus:** Forms the mackerel sky.
3. **Cirrostratus:** Produces a halo around sun and moon.

### Middle Clouds (mean height 2-7 km)

1. **Alto-cumulus:** Indicate fine weather.
2. **Alto-stratus:** Associated with development of bad weather.

### Low (mean height up to 2 km)

1. **Stratus:** Brings dull weather, usually accompanied with a drizzle.
2. **Nimbostratus:** If rain or snow is falling from a stratus cloud, it is called nimbostratus.
3. **Stratocumulus:** Indicators of fair or clear weather.

### Cumulus Clouds

- They are massive clouds having a vertical extent from 1,500 to 9,000 m. They resemble the head of a cauliflower. When these clouds are sunlit, they are brilliantly white and are called 'wool-clouds'. They occur mainly in summer and are produced by convection.
- **Cumulonimbus:** Under different weather conditions, a cumulus cloud may develop into cumulonimbus, the thunderstorm cloud mass of enormous size which brings heavy rainfall, thunder and lightning and gusty winds.

## PRECIPITATION

- It refers to falling of water, snow or hail from the clouds and results when condensation is occurring rapidly within a cloud.
- The most common form of precipitation is rain and it is formed when many cloud droplets coalesce into drops too large to remain suspended in the air. Rainfall occurs when the dew point of air is above the freezing point.
- Sometimes the raindrops freeze before reaching the ground and precipitation occurs in the form of ice pellets, called sleet.
- Snow is produced when condensation takes place at a temperature below freezing point, so that the minute crystals (spicules) of ice are formed directly from the water vapour.

- **Hail** consists of masses of ice with a layered structure. It occurs when there are very strong updrafts in the clouds carrying raindrops up to a high altitude, causing them to freeze. Hail stone is a rounded lump of ice having concentric layers.

#### Conditions for Precipitation

- There are three possible ways by which precipitation takes place-

#### CONVECTIONAL PRECIPITATION

- It is caused by heating of moist air in the lower layers of atmosphere which rises, expands, and is cooled adiabatically to its dew point. Convection rain is often accompanied by lightning and thunder. It occurs in regions near the equator in the afternoon as a result of the constant high temperature and high humidity.

#### OROGRAPHIC PRECIPITATION

- In this, precipitation is caused by moisture-laden air which is forced to rise over a relief barrier (mountain ranges). As the air rises in the windward side, it is cooled at adiabatic rate. If sufficiently cooled, precipitation results; when the air descends on the leeward side, it gets warmed and dry as it has no source from which it can draw up moisture. A belt of dry climate, often called a rain shadow, may exist on the leeward side.

#### CYCLONIC OR FRONTAL PRECIPITATION

- When the air is caused to rise upward due to cyclonic circulation, the resulting precipitation is said to be of the cyclonic type.

#### CLIMATE

- The average weather conditions over a large area is called the climate of a place. Weather conditions over a specific length of time, usually a period of 31 years, are taken into consideration.
- On a large scale, the climate of a particular region is determined by:
  - (i) Latitude and tilt of the earth's axis, which determines the amount of solar radiation received by the area;
  - (ii) The distribution of land and sea and proximity of ocean currents;
  - (iii) The altitude and topography of the area;
  - (iv) The location of the area in relation to the main circulation belts of the earth.

Climate can be classified on the basis of temperature, rainfall, evaporation, evapotranspiration and water balance.

#### IMPORTANT GRASSLANDS

Prairies	-	North America
Pampas	-	South America
Veldt	-	South Africa
Downs	-	Australia
Steppes	-	Eurasia
Canterbury	-	New Zealand
Postaz	-	Hungary
Manchurian	-	Russia

#### IMPORTANT DESERTS

1. **Sahara** North Africa (Includes the Libyan and the Nubian Desert)
2. **Australian** Australia (Includes Gibson, Simpson, Victorian, Great Sandy)
3. **Arabian** Arab Countries (Includes Rub' al Khali & An-Nafad of South Arabia and Dost-e-Lut & Dast-e Kavir of Iran)
4. **Kalahari** Africa (mainly in Botswana)
5. **Gobi** Mongolia
6. **Atacama** Central Chile
7. **Patagonian** Argentina
8. **Nabib** Namibia
9. **Takla Makan** Sinkiang, China
10. **Karakum** Turkmenistan
11. **Sonoron** Arizona and California (USA)
12. **Thar** India

#### THE HYDROSPHERE

- Hydrosphere is the name given to the mass of water that covers about 71% of the earth's surface.
- The average depth of oceans is about 4 km.

#### OCEAN FLOOR

- It is very irregular as the surface of the continents.
- Four major units of ocean floor are:

##### Continental Shelf

- It is the coastal part of the ocean which is not very deep and the slope of the bottom is very gentle.
- Extends to a depth of 100 fathoms (1 fathom = 1.8m).
- In regions where the mountains extend along the coast, the shelf is narrower.
- About 20% petrol and gas is found here. They also provide the richest fishing ground in the world. Marine life exists entirely here.
- They occupy about 7% of the total ocean area.



### Continental slope

- Extends seawards from the continental Shelf. The continent blocks are supposed to end at the site of continental slope.
- The boundary between shelf and slope is known as Andesine Line, named after the andesine rock.
- Depth is up to 2000 fathoms.
- They cover about 8.5% of the total ocean area.

### Continental Rise

- At the foot of slope is found an area slightly rising due to the accumulation of debris transported over the slope.
- Oil deposits occur here.

### Abyssal or the Deep Sea Plains

- It is the deepest and the most extensive part of the ocean floor and accounts for about 40% of the total ocean floor.
- Parts of the abyssal plains are occupied by raised ridges or submarine mountains and by very deep trenches or canyons.
- Ridges are the raised areas in sea. E.g., Mid-Atlantic ridge (s-shaped), Indian Ocean ridge (inverted y-shaped).
- A ridge rising more than 1000m above the ocean floor is called Seamount. Flat topped seamounts are called Guyots (maximum in Pacific Ocean).
- Some parts of the ridge or volcanic peaks reach the surface of the oceans and form islands (E.g. Hawaii Islands).
- Trenches are narrow and have steep sided depressions. They occur where two plates of the earth's crust are moving together and one is being pushed down below the other. Deepest is Challenger Deep, a part of Mariana Trench in Pacific Ocean, near Philippines. It is more than 11km deep.
- Submarine canyons are the deep gorges on the ocean floor and are restricted to the continental shelves, slopes and rises.

### SALINITY

- The proportion of dissolved salts to pure water is called salinity. The average salinity in the oceans and seas is 35%. i.e., 35 grams of salt in one liter of water.
- Salinity in decreasing order is: NaCl, MgCl, MgSO<sub>4</sub>, CaSO<sub>4</sub>, KSO<sub>4</sub>, etc. Chlorine is the most abundant element.
- Maximum salinity: lake Van (Turkey)- 330%. Then Dead Sea-240%. Most saline sea is Red Sea.
- The main source of salinity is dissolution of the rocks of oceanic crust, which contains salts.

- It is maximum at the tropics, because here temperature is high. Equatorial regions come second because although they have high temperatures, they have high rainfall also. Poles have minimum salinity because of addition of fresh water in the form of icebergs and excessive snowfall.
- It causes vertical circulation of water.

### WAVES

- They are caused due to the friction with the winds.
- There is no forward movement of water in a wave. When a wave enters shallow water, it breaks. The top of it is thrown forward and this is when water moves forward. Water from the breaking wave runs up the shore as swash and go back from the shore as backwash.
- The maximum height of waves in most oceans is about 12m but they may be as high as 15m. Seismic waves or tsunamis are the waves caused by earthquake in volcanic eruptions in the sea bottom. The tsunamis which hit the coasts in the S.E. Asia on Dec 26, 2004 caused havoc in that region.

### OCEAN CURRENTS

- Actual transportation of water from one part of ocean to another.
- Ocean currents occur because of differences in density, salinity, temperature of ocean waters, rotation of earth, shape of coastline and the prevailing winds.
- Currents circulate in clockwise direction in Northern Hemisphere and in anti-clockwise direction in Southern Hemisphere.

### ISOPLETH

- Lines drawn on map along which the value of a particular phenomenon is uniform. Some important isopleths are:

Isopleths	Phenomenon
Isobars	Equal pressure
Isobaths	Equal depth in sea
Isohaline	Equal salinity
Isohyets	Rainfall
Isohypse	Equal elevation above sea-level
Isotherms	Equal temperature
Isoneph	Cloudiness
Isocline	Equal slope

### CURRENTS IN PACIFIC OCEAN

- (a) North-Equatorial Current (Warm) : Flows across from east to west, i.e., from North America it reaches the Philippines.

- (b) **Kuroshio Current (Warm)**: North Equatorial current along the Philippines, Taiwan & Japan coast form this current.

From the S.E. Japan the current under the influence of prevailing westerlies, flows right across the ocean. After reaching the west coast of North America, it bifurcates into 2 branches:

- (i) **Alaska Current (Warm)**: It flows along the coast of British Columbia and Alaska.
- (ii) **California Current (Cold)**: It moves southward along the coast of California.
- (c) **Oyashio Current (Cold)**: Flows along the east coast of Kamchatka Peninsula.
- (d) **Okhotsk Current (Cold)**: Comes from the N. Pole and merges with the Oyashio current.
- (e) **East Australian Current (Warm)**: It flows from east to west in South Pacific Ocean.
- (f) **Peru Current (Cold)**: This is a cold current near the west coast of South America.

#### CURRENTS OF ATLANTIC OCEAN

- (a) **Guinea Current (Warm)**: Flows off the West African coast.
  - (b) **Florida Current (Warm)**: Along the coast of US up to Cape Hatterus.
  - (c) **Gulf Stream (Warm)**: Beyond the Cape Hatterus up to the Grand Banks of New Found Land, Florida current is known as Gulf Stream. From the Grand Banks the Gulf stream moves eastward across the Atlantic as the Atlantic Drift.
  - (d) Atlantic Drift is divided into 2 branches:
    - (i) **Norwegian Current**: The main current passes along the Norway coast and enters the Arctic Ocean.
    - (ii) **Canary Current**: The south branch of North Atlantic drift flows near Spain by this name.
  - (e) **2 Cold Currents**: The East Greenland Current & the Labrador Current flows from the Arctic Ocean into the Atlantic Ocean.
- The Labrador Current meets the Gulf Stream. The influence of these 2 currents produces the famous fogs around New Found Land. [Most busy fishing ground of the world].

- (f) **Brazil Current (Warm)**: Flows along the South American coast from North to South.

- (g) **Benguela Current (Cold)**: Cold current from South to North near the 'Cape of Good Hope'.

- (h) **Falkland Current (Cold)**: Cold flowing along the S.E. coast of South America from South to North (meets the Brazil current).

#### CURRENTS OF THE INDIAN OCEAN

- The currents in the North Indian Ocean differ entirely from the general pattern of circulation. They change their direction from season to season in response to the seasonal rhythm of the monsoons.
- In winters the North Equatorial current & the South Equatorial current flows from East to West.
- **Mozambique Current**: Warm current flowing through the Mozambique Channel.
- **Agulhas Current**: Warm current at the south-east coast of Africa.

#### MAJOR SHIPPING CANALS

- **KIEL CANAL**: Between London and Baltic ports. 98 km long links North Sea with the Baltic Sea.
- **PANAMA CANAL**: Links the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean. 58 km long, opened in 1914.
- **SUEZ CANAL**: Connects the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Built in 1869 by the French engineer, Ferdinand de Lesseps. 169 km long, one of the greatest canals of the world and was nationalized by Col. Nasser (Egypt) on July 26, 1956.

#### MAJOR SEAS

- In decreasing order: I South China Sea II. Caribbean Sea III. Mediterranean Sea.

#### MAJOR RIVERS

- Largest river is Amazon, although it is 222 km shorter than Nile (the longest river of the world). It is considered so because it is navigable by deep sea steamers and has the greatest flow of water.
- III is Mississippi Missouri in USA.

#### ISLANDS

Guinea, Borneo, Madagascar, Baffin, etc.

- Largest river island is Majuli (Assam).
- Most populated island is Java (Indonesia).
- Largest island of India is Middle Andaman.

### MAJOR RIVERS OF THE WORLD

River	Origin	Falls in	Length (Km.)
		Mediterranean Sea	6,650
Amazon	Andes (Peru)	Atlantic Ocean	6,428
Mississippi Missouri	Itaska lake (USA)	Gulf of Mexico (USA)	6,020
Yangtze	Tibetan Kiang Plateau	China Sea	5,494
Ob	Altai Mts., Russia	Gulf of Ob	5,410
Huang Ho	Kunlun Mts.	Gulf of Chibli	4,344
Yenisei	Tannu-Ola Mts.	Arctic Ocean	3,804
Congo	Lualaba & Luapual rivers	Atlantic Ocean	3,700
Niger	Guinea	Gulf of Guinea	4,180
Mekong	Tibetan high-lands	South China sea	4,180
Volga	Voldai Plateau, Russia	Caspian Sea	3,690
St. Lawrence	Lake Ontario	Gulf of St. Lawrence	3,058

### IMPORATNT LAKES OF THE WORLD

Lake	Location	Area (Sq. Km.)
Caspian	Russia and CIS	371000
Superior	Canada and USA	82414
Victoria	Tanzania (Africa)	69485
Huron	Canada and USA	59596
Michigan	USA	58016
Tanganyika	Africa	32892
Baikal	Russia (CIS)	31502
Great Bear	Canada	31080
	Russia (CIS)	30700
Great Slave	Canada	28438

### MAJOR GULFS OF THE WORLD

Name	Area (Sq. Km.)	Names	Area (Sq. Km.)
Gulf of Mexico	15,44,000	Gulf of St. Lawrence	2,37,000
Gulf of Hudson	12,50,000	Gulf of California	,62,000
Arabian Gulf	12,50,000	English Channel	89,900

### MAJOR PENINSULAS OF THE WORLD

Peninsulas	Areas (Sq. Km.)	Peninsulas	Areas (Sq. Km.)
Arabia	32,50,000	Labrador	13,00,000
South India	20,72,000	Scandinavia	8,00,000
Alaska	15,00,000	Iberian	58,000

### OCEANS OF THE WORLD

Name	Area (Sq. Km.)	Greatest Depth
Pacific	166,240000	Mariana Trench
Atlantic	86,560000	Puerto Rico Trench
Indian	73430000	Java Trench
Arctic	13230000	-

### IMPORTANT STRAITS OF THE WORLD

Straits	Water Bodies joined	Area
Bab-al- Mandeb	Red Sea & Arabian Sea	Arabia & Africa
Bering	Arctic Ocean & Bering Sea	Alaska & Asia
Bosphorus	Black Sea & Marmara Sea	Turkey
Dover	North Sea & Atlantic Ocean	England & Europe
Florida	Gulf of Mexico & Atlantic Ocean	Florida & Bahamas Islands
Gibraltar	Mediterranean Sea & Atlantic Ocean	Spain & Africa
Malacca	Java Sea & Bay of Bengal	India & Indonesia
Palk	Bay of Bengal & Indian Ocean	India & Sri Lanka
Magellan	South Pacific & South Atlantic Ocean	Chile
Sunda	Java Sea & Indian Ocean	Indonesia

### MAJOR LAKES OF THE WORLD

Largest Lake	- Caspian Sea	Highest lake	- Lake Titicaca
Largest saline water lake	- Caspian Sea	Deepest lake	- Lake Baikal
Largest fresh water lake	- Lake Superior	India's largest lake	- Chilka lake

### SMALLEST AND BIGGEST COUNTRIES

Biggest Nations (Area- Wise)	Biggest Nations (Population-wise)	Smallest Nations (Area- Wise)	Smallest Nations (Population-Wise)
Russia	China	Vatican City	Vatican City
Canada	India	Monaco	Tuvalu
China	USA	Nauru	Nauru
USA	Indonesia	Tuvalu	Palau
Brazil	Brazil	San Marino	San Marino
Australia	Pakistan	Liechtenstein	Monaco
India	Russia	Marshall islands	Liechtenstein
Argentina	Bangladesh	Saint Kitts and Nevis	Saint Kitts and Nevis
Kazakhstan	Japan	Maldives	Antigua and Barbados
Sudan	Nigeria	Malta	Dorminica



City	Country	River
Adelaide	Australia	Torrens
Amsterdam	Netherlands	Amsel
Alexandria	Egypt	Nile
Ankara	Turkey	Kazil
Bangkok	Thailand	Chao Praya
Basra	Iraq	Euphrates and Tigris
Baghdad	Iraq	Tigris
Berlin	Germany	Spree
Bonn	Germany	Rhine
Budapest	Hungary	Danube
Bristol	UK	Avon
Buenos Aires	Argentina	Laplata
Chittagong	Bangladesh	Majyani
Canton	China	Si Kiang
Cairo	Egypt	Nile
Chung King	China	Yang-tse-king
Cologne	Germany	Rhine
Dandzing	Germany	Vistula
Dresden	Germany	Elba
Dublin	Ireland	Liffy
Hamburg	Germany	Elbe
Kabul	Afghanistan	Kabul
Karachi	Pakistan	Indus
Khartoum	Sudan	Confluence of Blue & White Nile
Lahore	Pakistan	Ravi
Leningrad	Russia	Neva
Lisbon	Portugal	Tagus
Liverpool	England	Messey
London	England	Thames
Moscow	Russia	Moskva
Montreal	Canada	St. Lawrence
Nanking	China	Yang-tse-kiang
New Orleans	U.S.A	Mississippi
New York	U.S.A	Hudson
Ottawa	Canada	Ottawa
Paris	France	Seine
Philadelphia	U.S.A.	Delaware
Perth	Australia	Swan
Prague	Czech Republic	Vitava
Quebec	Canada	St. Lawrence
Rome	Italy	Tiber
Rotterdam	The Netherlands	New Mass
Salingrad	Russia	Volga
Shanghai	China	Yang-tse-kiang
Sydney	Australia	Darling
Saint Louis	U.S.A	Mississippi
Tokyo	Japan	Arakava
Vienna	Austria	Danube
Warsaw	Poland	Vistula
Washington D. C	U.S.A.	Potomac
Yangoon	Myanmar	Irrawaddy

## AFRICA

- Africa is the world's second-largest and second most-populous continent, after Asia. At about 30,221,532 sq. km including adjacent islands, it covers 6% of the Earth's total surface area, and 20.4% of the total land area. With more than 900 million people (as of 2005) in 61 territories, it account for about 14% of the world's human population.
- Africa is surrounded by the Mediterranean Sea to the north, the Suez Canal and the Red Sea to the north-east, the Indian Ocean to the south-east, and the Atlantic Ocean to the west.
- There are 46 countries including Madagascar, and 53 including all the island groups.
- Its northernmost point is Cape Blanc (in Tunisia) and the southernmost point is Cape Agulhas (in South Africa).
- Africa is referred as **Dark Continent**, not because of the dark skin of the locals but because little was known of its history prior to colonization.
- Its **highest point** is Mount Kilimanjaro (5,895m) in Tanzania and the lowest point is Lake Assal (153 m below sea level) in Djibouti.
- **Important mountain ranges** are Ahaggar, Atlas, Drakensberg, Tibesti, etc.
- **Important deserts** are the Sahara, the Kalahari and the Namib desert. Sahara is the largest desert of the world.
- **Important rivers** are the Nile, the Zaire, the Niger and the Zambezi. the Nile is the longest river in the World.
- **Important dams** are the Aswan dam on Nile and the Kariba dam on Zambezi river.
- **Important waterfalls** are the Victoria Falls on Zambezi and Boyoma falls on Zaire River.
- Climate is predominantly equatorial type and tropical grassland type, as almost the entire Africa lies in the Torrid Zone.
- Many languages are spoken in Africa. Arabic is spoken by the maximum along with Swahili, Bantu, Zulu, English, etc.
- Largest lakes are Lake Victoria, Lake Tanganyika and Lake Nyasa. From Victoria originates the river Nile.
- Four largest countries in the decreasing order of areas are Sudan, Algeria, Zaire and Libya.
- Four most populous countries in descending order are Nigeria, Egypt, Ethiopia and Zaire.
- The three points where Africa almost touches Eurasia are Gibraltar, Suez and Bab-el-Mandeb.
- The country having highest death rate and least life expectancy in the world is Sierra Leone, which is in Africa only.
- **Suez Canal** is a 196 km long manmade canal which cuts through the isthmus between Egypt and Sinai Peninsula. At the northern end is port Said, on the Mediterranean; and at the southern is Suez, on the Gulf of Suez. The canal was built by a French engineer, Ferdinand De Lesseps. It was completed in 1869. It has significantly reduced the distance and time of travel between Europe and Asia. The Suez Canal is one of the busiest sea routes in the world.
- Important tribes are Bantus, Berbers, Hausas, Masais, Pygmies, Hottentots, Bushmen, Tuaregs, Kikuyus, etc.
- **Madagascar** is the world's 4th largest island and is actually a huge block of Africa that separated from the mainland about 80 million years ago. The first settlers on this island were not from Africa but SE Asia. They were mostly Malays. The former name 'Malagasy' is attributable to Malays.
- **Harmattan** is a hot, dry dust laden wind blowing from the Sahara to the Guinea coast. Also called the Guinea Doctor, it provides a welcome relief from the damp air of the Guinea lands by increasing the rate of evaporation with resultant cooling effects. But it is such a dry dusty wind that, besides ruining the crops, it also stirs up a thick dusty haze and impedes inland river navigation.
- South Africa encloses two countries- Lesotho and Swaziland.
- One of the striking physical features of Africa is its Great Rift Valley running from the south of Lake Malawi, northward to the Red Sea and then through the Gulf of Aquba to the Dead Sea. The East African rift valley represents the initial state in the breakup of continent. Extensive volcanic activity believed to accompany continental rifting is exemplified by the large volcanic mountains such as Kilimanjaro and Mount Kenya. If the rift valley in Africa remains active, East Africa will eventually split from the mainland in much the same way the Arabian Peninsula did just a few million years ago.
- Kalahari Desert is not actually a desert. It is rather a bushy scrub land situated between the Orange and the Zambezi rivers. The area is an inland basin with annual rainfall averaging less than 50 cm. Aborigines, called Bushmen, living in the region have perfected unique methods to survive in desert like conditions. They collect water in ostrich eggshell and in dried bucks' stomachs.

- **Gibraltar** is the gateway between the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea and forms an important strategic point of control from the west Mediterranean, especially with the extension of British interests in the east and the opening of the Suez Canal. The stretch between the steep Rock of Gibraltar and Cape Ceuta is called the Pillars of Hercules.
- **Lake Victoria**, the largest lake in Africa, is the source of White Nile, while Lake Tana in Ethiopia is the sources of Blue Nile. Both White and Blue Nile meet at Khartoum, the capital of Sudan from where the combined stream is called Nile.
- **Lake Chad** is region of inland drainage. The area is actually a deflation hollow formed due to wind erosion.

#### IMPORTANT AFRICAN TRIBES

Tribes	Regions
Bantus	Central Southern Africa
Berbers	Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia
Hausas	Western Africa
Ibos	Nigeria
Yorubas	Nigeria
Masais	Eastern Africa
Pygmies	Congo Basin
Hottentots	Kalahari
Bushmen	Kalahari
Fulanis	Western Africa
Tuaregs	Sahara desert
Kikuyuns	Kenya

#### NORTH AMERICA

- It is the third largest continent of the world, following Asia and Africa. It covers an area of about 24,490,000 sq. km, about 4.8% of the planet's surface or about 16.4% of its land area. It has 23 countries in its territory.
- It is bounded by the Pacific Ocean on the West, Atlantic Ocean on the East, Arctic Ocean on the North and Caribbean Sea and Panama Canal in the South.
- As of Oct 2000, its population was estimated at over 514,600,000. It is fourth in population after Asia, Africa and Europe.
- Important mountain ranges are Alaska, Aleutian, Appalachians, Brooks, Cascade, Coast, Rockies, Sierra Nevada, Sierra Madre, etc.
- Highest peak is Mt. McKinley (6194 m.). Lowest Point is the Death Valley (86 m. below sea level).
- Largest lakes arranged from West to East are Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie and Ontario. Out of these, only Michigan lies entirely in USA. Others are shared by USA with Canada.

- Important rivers are Colorado, Columbia, Mackenzie, Mississippi, Missouri, St. Lawrence, etc.
- Important dam is the Hoover dam on Colorado River. It is the highest dam of the world.

#### UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

- It is the fourth largest country in area and third largest country in population in the world.
- Its capital is Washington DC. DC stands for District of Columbia. It is located on the bank of river Potomac.
- USA is divided into 50 States. The States in descending order of area are Alaska, Texas, California, Montana, etc.
- The smallest State is the Rhode Island.
- The most populous state is California.
- The 49th and 50th States of USA are Alaska and Hawaii.
- Smallest administrative unit of USA is District of Columbia.
- USA is the largest importer and consumer of oil.
- The most famous Aircraft manufacturing Centre of the USA is Seattle.
- Death valley is situated along the river Colorado.
- The rocket launching centre of USA is Cape Kennedy, Florida.
- Damodar Valley Corporation of India is on the lines of Tennessee Valley corp. of USA.
- The 'Old Faithful' Geyser is in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming.
- The busiest airport of the USA is J.K Kennedy Airport, New York.
- The driest and the hottest place in USA is Death Valley.
- The busiest inland waterway of N. America is St. Lawrence.
- Chicago is located on Lake Michigan.
- Niagara Falls lie between lakes Erie and Ontario.
- The canal joining lakes Superior and Huron is Soo Canal.
- The 'Big Apple' describes the city of New York.
- North America's largest urban agglomeration is New York.
- Longest river of USA is Mississippi-Missouri. St. Louis lies at the confluence of Mississippi and Missouri.
- The river forming a boundary between USA and Mexico is Rio Grande.
- Hollywood is in the State of California.
- The first President of the US was George Washington.

- The head office of the software giant Microsoft is in Seattle.
- Pittsburgh in USA is the Iron and Steel capital of the world.
- Detroit in USA is the Automobile capital of the world.
- The Strait of Florida separates USA and Cuba.
- The most famous industrial centre of USA having specialization in Automobile tyres is Akron.
- San Francisco is called the city of Golden Gate.
- **Grand Canyon:** The Colorado river and its tributaries have cut deep gorges with wall-like sides called canyons in the soft rocks of the Colorado plateau. The Grand Canyon of Colorado is the largest of its kind and is famous for its stark natural beauty. According to the latest survey, Grand Canyon is the most visited place by the tourists in the world.

#### CANADA

- It is the second largest country in area in the world.
- 49th parallel forms the boundary between Canada and USA. It is the longest boundary between any two countries.
- Canada has ten states and three federal territories.
- The capital of Canada is Ottawa.
- English and French are the official languages of Canada.
- Winnipeg, Great Bear, Great Slave and Reindeer are the important lakes of Canada.
- The largest province of Canada is Quebec, while the most populated one is Ontario.
- Toronto is the largest city of Canada.
- Canada is the largest producer of paper and pulp.
- New Found Land was the last province to join Canada in 1949. It was the oldest British Colony.
- The Canadian National Railway connects Halifax Prince Rupert in British Columbia.
- Canada generates the largest amount of hydroelectric power as percentage of total power produced.
- The smallest province of Canada is Prince Edward Island.
- Highest tidal range is experienced in Bay of Fundy near Newfoundland.
- Windsor is called the 'Detroit of Canada'.
- Hamilton is called the 'Birmingham of Canada'.
- The Sudbury mines in Canada are famous for Lead, Zinc and Silver.
- The Strait separating North America from Greenland is Davis Strait.

- The Canadian Pacific Railway runs between St. John's in New Brunswick and Vancouver.
- The two provinces of Canada from where 75% of mineral oil comes are Alberta and Saskatchewan.
- The Magnetic North Pole located on Prince of Wales Island (70°N 100°W) in Canada.
- Mackenzie, the longest river of Canada drains into Beaufort Sea.
- The major part of Canada has Taiga and Tundra types of climate. Wheat is the most important crop here.

#### SOUTH AMERICA

- It has an area of 17,780,000 sq. km, or almost 3.5% of the Earth's surface. As of 2005, its population was estimated at more than 371,090,000. South America ranks fourth in area (after Asia, Africa, and North America) and fifth in population (after Asia, Africa, Europe and North America).
- It is situated West of Atlantic Ocean, East of Pacific Ocean, South of North America and North of Antarctica.
- The longest mountain range of the world, Andes, is located on the western coast of South America.
- Amazon, which flows through South America, is the largest river in the world and second longest too. The river drains a basin of approximately 70 lakh km<sup>2</sup>, has more than 1100 tributaries and carries 1/5th of world's running water. Amazon Rainforests are an environmentalist's greatest concern today due to their rapid deforestation. The forests are estimated to contain 1/3rd of our planet's trees and supply about half of earth's oxygen.
- The highest waterfall of the world, Angel Falls, are in Venezuela in South America. They are on Orinoco river.
- The highest freshwater lake of the world, Titicaca, is in Bolivia in South America.
- South America's major deserts are Atacama in Chile and Patagonia in Argentina.
- Llanos and Campos are the Savanna grasslands in South America.
- Selvas are the equatorial rainforests of Amazon basin.
- Cinchona trees are found in South America which are used to make quinine, the medicine used to cure Malaria.
- Latin was the language of the ancient Romans from which Italian, French, Spanish and Portuguese have been derived. The language itself though is no longer commonly spoken. Because the countries of Central and South America were formerly under Spanish and Portuguese occupation, the continent is referred to as 'Latin America'.



- Though the official language in most of the countries is Spanish, the official language of Brazil is Portuguese.
- Countries in descending order of size are Brazil, Argentina, Peru, Colombia, etc.
- Countries in descending order of population are Brazil, Colombia, Argentina, Peru, etc.
- The highest peak of South America is Mt. Aconcagua (6959 m.).
- Trans-Andean railways connect Buenos Aires and Valparaiso.
- Kourou, the French satellite launching station, is in French Guyana in South America.
- Driest place on earth is Iquique in Atacama Desert, Chile. Atacama is an arid desert in northern Chile and extends 960 km south from Peru border. The desert has almost no vegetation and is considered the world's driest desert.
- The town of Calama recorded a 400 year drought up to 1971. Atacama is rich in nitrates (Caliche), iodine and borax.
- Though Africa today leads world's production in cocoa, the tree is indigenous to tropical America and was first found growing wild in lowlands of Central America and in the river basins of Amazon and Orinoco.
- South America is the largest producer of Cocaine, a narcotic which has created havoc among the younger generations. Today 75% of world's cocaine is grown in Bolivia, Peru and Colombia.
- Alfa-alfa is a leguminous plant which is highly nutritious and helps in maintaining soil fertility. It is also used as a cattle feed.

#### **Forests and Grasslands**

- Selvas are the equatorial rain forests of Amazon basin.
- Gran Chaco is the warm temperate forest south of Selvas.
- Llanos are the savanna grasslands in the northwest South America.
- Campos are the savanna grasslands in east South America.
- Pampas are the temperate grasslands of Argentina.
- Matorra is the forests along the eastern slopes of the Andes which yield valuable softwood.

#### **BRAZIL**

- It is the 5th largest country in the world in terms of population and also in terms of area. It is about 2.5 times the size of India. Its population is greater than that of all other South American countries combined and occupies a little less than half the area of South America.

Brasilia is its capital while Rio-de-Janeiro is the largest city.

- Brazil derives its name from a redwood tree, Brasil.
- Brazil is also known as the 'Coffee Pot of the World', because it is the largest producer of coffee.
- Brazil is the only country through which both equator and one of the tropics (Tropic of Capricorn) passes.
- Rubber tree is indigenous to the Amazon rain forest. This explains its scientific name, *Hevea Brasiliensis*.
- With the establishment of rubber plantations in Southeast Asia, Amazon region lost its pre-eminent position.

Samba is dance form of Brazil. It is supposed to have been influenced by the American dances.

Sao Paulo is the third largest urban agglomeration in the world after Tokyo and Mexico city. It is the largest urban agglomeration in the southern hemisphere. Sao Paulo province accounts for 22% of Brazil's GDP. It is also the leading industrial region of South America.

#### **COUNTRIES IN SOUTH AMERICA**

Name of Country	Pop. Density	Capital
Argentina	14.3	Buenos Aires
Bolivia	8.1	La Paz, Sucre
Brazil	22.0	Brasilia
Chile	21.1	Santiago
Colombia	37.37	Bogota
Ecuador	47.1	Quito
Guyana	3.6	Georgetown
Paraguay	15.6	Asuncion
Peru	21.7	Lima
Suriname	2.7	Paramaribo
Uruguay	19.4	Montevideo
Venezuela	27.8	Caracas

#### **ARGENTINA**

- It is the second largest country of South America.
- Buenos Aires is its capital.
- Christianity and Judaism are the major religions while Spanish is the major language.

#### **CENTRAL AMERICA**

Central America is a central geographic region of the Americas. It is variably defined either as the southern portion of North America, which connects with South America on the southeast.

Physiographically, Central America is very narrow isthmus of southern North America extending from the Isthmus of Tehuantepec in Mexico Southeastward to the Isthmus of Panama where it connects to the Colombian Pacific Lowlands in northwestern South America.

- Central America has an area of 592,000 sq. km. The Pacific Ocean lies to the southwest, the Caribbean Sea lies to the northeast, and the Gulf of Mexico lies to the north.
- Panama Cannel connects the Atlantic with Pacific ocean through the Isthmus of Panama. The canal came into operation in 1913. Under a treaty of 1903 USA had unilateral control of the canal operation and was directly involved in the administration of Panama Canal Zone. However, in 2000, USA transferred the canal administration to Panamanian sovereignty. The canal measures 64.8 kms from Colon on the Atlantic till Panama City on the Pacific and has three locks; Gatun Lock, Pedro Miguel Lock and Mira Flores Lock.

## AUSTRALIA

- It is the smallest continent of the world. It lies entirely in the Southern Hemisphere. The Tropic of Capricorn runs almost through the middle of this continent.
- The neighbouring countries of Commonwealth of Australia are Indonesia, East Timor and Papua New Guinea to the north, the Solomon Islands, Vanuatu and New Caledonia to the north-east, and New Zealand to the south-east, and New Zealand to the south-east.
- Australia was discovered by Captain James Cook, an English seaman, in 1770.
- How Canberra became the Australian capital over such heavyweights like Sydney and Melbourne is a story in itself. Located on the Molonglo river. Canberra was built as a compromise capital in order to stop squabbling between Melbourne and Sydney.

### COUNTRIES IN AUSTRALIA CONTINENT

Name of region, followed by countries	Population density (per km <sup>2</sup> )	Capital
<b>Australasia</b>		
Australia	2.5	Canberra
New Zealand	14.5	Wellington
<b>Melanesia</b>		
Fiji		46.9 Suva
Papua New Guinea	11.2	Port Moresby
Solomon Islands	17.4	Honiara
Vanuatu	16.1	Port Vila
<b>Micronesia</b>		
Federated States of Micronesia	193.5	Palikir
Kiribati	118.8	South Tarawa
Marshall Islands	406.8	Majuro
Nauru	587.1	Yaren
Palau	42.4	Melekeok
<b>Polynesia</b>		
Samoa	60.7	Apia
Tonga	141.9	Nuku'alofa
Tyralh	428.7	Funafuti

- As Australia lies in the southern Hemisphere, the seasons of Australia are opposite to those of the Northern Hemisphere.
- Most of the Australia is dry. The Eastern, North-Eastern and South-Western Parts of the country come in the way of winds from sea and thus receive heavy rainfall.
- The Gibson, the Simpson, the Great Victorian and the Great Sandy deserts constitute the Great Australian Desert.
- The highest peak of Australia is Mt. Koscuisko.
- Australia is mainly an agricultural country. Wheat is the most important food crop. A variety of fruits-both temperate and tropical, are also grown.

- Australia has considerable mineral wealth. It has large reserves of coal, iron ore, bauxite, manganese and tin. Some petroleum and natural gas is also found.
  - Australia makes several products from its agriculture and animal raw materials. They are cotton and woolen textiles, sugar, condensed and powdered milk, butter cheese and meat.
  - **B.Sc M.A. Ph.D** : It is an interesting acronym Coastal for the clockwise arrangement of the Australian Coastal cities. The cities are Brisbane, Sydney, Canberra, Melbourne, Adelaide, Perth and Darwin.
  - Australia has the largest number of sheep in the world. Merino is the most important breed of wool producing sheep.
  - **Great Barrier Reef**: It is the world's longest coral reef. It is located in the N. E. of Australia.
  - The Australian States in decreasing order of population is New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, and Western Australia.
  - The largest State of Australia is Western Australia.
  - Australasia stands for Australia and New Zealand.
  - The Australian cities in decreasing order of Population is Sydney, Melbourne, Brisbane.
  - Largest lake of Australia is Lake Eyre.
  - Sydney is the oldest and largest city in Australia. Its harbour, Port Jackson, is now Australia's biggest port and an export centre for wheat and wool.
  - Many of the animals here are Marsupials which include the kangaroo, koala and wombat. Platypus is a unique egg laying mammal while the emu, kookaburra and lyrebird are some of the peculiar avian species found here.
  - There are more road miles per person in Australia than in the USA.
  - Artesian Basin is a structural basin of sedimentary rocks which produces a constant supply of water that rises to the ground surface by means of an artesian well from a subterranean aquifer which holds water under a pressure head and is sandwiched between two layers of impermeable strata. Australia and New Zealand have some of the largest Artesian Basins of the world.
  - Every year, India adds one Australia to its population.
  - Niue, a self-governing overseas territory of New Zealand, was first sighted by Captain James Cook in 1774 who called it the Savage Island. New Zealand has the responsibility of looking after external affairs and defense of this island which is the world's largest uplifted coral island.
  - The biggest city of New Zealand is Auckland, while the capital is Wellington.
  - The first European to discover New Zealand was Abel Tasman.
  - The highest peak of New Zealand is Mt. Cook.
  - The chief farming region in New Zealand is Canterbury Plain.
- ### ASIA
- Asia is the world's largest and most populous continent. It covers 8.6% of the Earth's total surface area (or 29.4% of its land area) and with almost 4 billion people, it contains more than 60% of the world's current human population.
  - It is bounded to the east by the Pacific Ocean, to the south by the Indian Ocean, and to the north by the Arctic Ocean. Russia is considered a transcontinental country.
  - It is separated from Europe by Ural Mountains in the West. The continent is bounded by the Arctic Ocean in the North, the Indian Ocean in the South, the Pacific Ocean in the East and the Mediterranean Sea in the south-West.
  - The highest point is Mt. Everest (8848 m.) and the lowest point is Dead Sea (395 m. below sea level).
  - Important Mountain ranges are Himalayas, Karakoram, Hindukush, Elburz, Caucasus, Pamirs, Kunlun, Urals, etc.
  - Highest peaks are Everest (8848m), Godwin Austin K2 (8,611 m.) Kanchenjunga (8,598 m.), etc.
  - Largest lakes are Aral Sea, Baikal, Balkhash, Caspian Sea, Dead Sea etc.
  - Major rivers are Amur, Brahmaputra, Euphrates, Ganges, Hwang Ho, Indus, Irrawaddy, Lena, Mekong, Ob, Salween, Tigris, Yangtze, etc.
  - The Plateau of Tibet is the largest and highest in the world and is known as the Roof of the world.
  - Asia is the birth place of major religions of the world - Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Judaism, etc.
  - The population of Asia constitutes 62% of the world's population.
- ### CHINA
- It is the most populous country of the world, while in area it is at the third place.
  - Capital is Beijing, currency is Yuan and the official language is Mandarin. Mandarin is the largest spoken language of the world.

- Yangtze, Hwang Ho and Xi Jiang are the principal rivers.
- Shanghai, Beijing, Tianjin and Nanjing are the major cities.
- Qinling mountains divide China into North and South China.
- China is the leading producer of rice and wheat in the world.
- Amur river forms the boundary between Russia and China.
- Grand Canal is the world's longest artificial water way from Beijing to Nanjing.

#### **JAPAN**

- Japan consists of a group of islands. The 4 major islands in the descending order of size are Honshu, Hokkaido, Kyushu and Shikoku.
- Tokyo is the capital which is located on Honshu Island.
- The currency is Yen.
- Tokyo, Osaka, Kobe, Kawasaki, Kyoto Yokohama, Fukuoka are major cities of Japan.
- Mount Fujiyama is the highest Peak of Japan.
- The tropical cyclones hitting the southern coast of Japan frequently are called Typhoons.
- Japan is the world's leading producer of ships, cars, steel, electronic equipments and machine tools.

#### **INDONESIA**

- It is the largest archipelago of the world (group of more than 3,000 islands). The main islands are Java, Sumatra, Bali, etc.
- Java is the most populated island of the world. Indonesian capital, Jakarta is located on it.
- Rupiah is the currency.
- Islam, Christianity and Hinduism are the major religions. In fact, Indonesia has the maximum number of Muslims in the world.
- The climate is tropical with heavy rainfall.

#### **MALAYSIA**

- Malaysia is situated at the southern end of the Malay Peninsula in South-East Asia.
- Its capital is Kuala Lumpur and the currency is Malaysian dollar or Ringgit.

#### **EAST TIMOR**

- East Timor got independence after 425 years of colonial rule—400 years under Portugal and 25 years under Indonesia.
- It became independent on Aug. 30, 1999.
- It is an island situated between Indonesia and Australia in the Timor Sea.
- The capital is Dili and the currency is Rupia.

#### **PAKISTAN**

- The capital of Pakistan is Islamabad and the currency is Rupee.
- Indus, Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi and Sutlej are the major rivers.
- The four main geographic regions of Pakistan are: arid plateau in the west, alluvial plains in the east, hills and semiarid valley in the North West and the high mountain ranges (Himalayas, Hindukush and Karakoram) in the North.

#### **EUROPE**

- Europe is the world's second-smallest continent in terms of area after Australia, covering about 10,180,000 sq. km or 2% of the Earth's surface.
- Of Europe's 48 countries, Russia is the largest by both area and population, while the Vatican is the smallest.
- Europe is the third most populous continent after Asia and Africa, with a population of 710,000,000 or about 11% of the world's Population.
- It is surrounded by Arctic Ocean in the North, Black Sea and Mediterranean Sea in the South, Atlantic Ocean in the West and Ural Mountains in the East. It is separated from Africa by the Strait of Gibraltar.
- Important mountains are Alps, Apennines, Balkans, Carpathian, Caucasus, Pyrenees, Ural, etc. Highest peak is Mt. El'brus (5,633 m.).
- Major rivers are Danube, Dnieper, Don, Elbe, Po, Rhine, Rhone, Seine, Thames, Tiber, Volga, etc.
- The climate is mild and generally humid in the West and North-West, Mediterranean type in the south and cool Humid with cool summers in the east.
- Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, Greece, Romania and Albania are collectively called Balkan states.
- Iceland, Norway, Sweden and Denmark are collectively known as Scandinavia.
- The world's most northerly capital is Reykjavik of Iceland.

#### **UNITED KINGDOM**

- United Kingdom is the name given to the combination of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. Great Britain consists of England, Scotland and Wales.
- The capital is London and the currency is Pound sterling.
- The climate is cool temperate oceanic, with mild conditions and rainfall evenly distributed over the year.
- Major language and religion are English and Christianity respectively.
- London, Glasgow, Liverpool, Bradford, Manchester, Birmingham are the major cities.
- The most important fishing ground is Dogger Bank.
- United Kingdom is one of the most industrialized nations of the world, though it lacks the raw material. It is self-sufficient in petroleum.



## FRANCE

- It is the third largest country in Europe.
- Paris is the capital and Euro is the currency.
- The major language is French.
- It is one of the leading producers of wine in the world.
- Paris, which is on Seine River, is the house of Fashion industry.

## GERMANY

- Capital is Berlin and currency is Euro.
- Rhine, Danube and Elbe are the major river.
- Berlin, Munich, Frankfurt, Hamburg are the major cities.
- The economy is industry oriented. Industries include steel, ships, vehicles, machinery, electronic products, coal and chemical.
- Forestry, fisheries and mineral resources (coal, iron, copper and potash) are the other sources of the country's economy.
- Hamburg is the busiest port of Germany.
- Lufthansa is the national airline.

## RUSSIAN FEDERATION

- It is the largest country of the world the highest populated country of Europe.
- Capital is Moscow and Rouble is the currency.
- Leading natural resources are iron ore, gold (second largest in the world), oil, platinum, copper, zinc, tin, etc.
- Forests and fisheries lend support to the economic base.

## VATICAN CITY

- Vatican city is in Rome, Italy. It is the smallest country of the world both in terms of area and population.
- It is the seat of the Central government of the Roman Catholic Church, and the pope is the absolute ruler.
- Vatican city has its own currency, postage stamps, citizenship rights, flag, diplomatic corps, newspaper, railway station and broadcasting facilities.

## ANTARCTICA

- The name Antarctica is a Romanized version of a Greek compound word, meaning 'Opposite of the Arctic'. The first confirmed sighting of the continent is commonly accepted to have occurred in 1820 by the Russian expedition of Mikhail Lazarev and Fabian Gottlieb von Bellingshausen. However, the continent remained largely neglected for the rest of the 19th century because of its hostile environment, lack of resources, and isolation. Later, Amundson became the first person to conquer South Pole on Dec 4, 1911. India launched its first expedition in 1981 under the leadership of Dr. S.Z. Qazim.

- It is Earth's southernmost continent, overlying the South Pole. It is situated in the southern hemisphere, almost entirely south of the Antarctic Circle, and is surrounded by the Southern Ocean.
- At 14.4 million sq. km, it is the fifth-largest continent in area after Asia, Africa, North America and South America. Some 98% of Antarctica is covered by ice, which averages at least 1.6 km in thickness.
- Antarctica has about 90% of the world's ice (and thereby about 70% of the world's fresh water). If all on this ice were melted, sea levels would rise about 60 meters (200 ft).

## Physiography

- Antarctica is divided in two by the Transantarctic Mountains close to the neck between the Ross Sea and the Weddell Sea. The portion west of the Weddell Sea and east of the Ross Sea is called Western Antarctica and the remainder Eastern Antarctica, because they roughly correspond to the Western and Eastern Hemispheres relative to the Greenwich meridian.
- Vinson Massif, the highest peak in Antarctica at 4,892 meters (16,050 ft), is located in the Ellsworth Mountains. Although Antarctica is home to many volcanoes, only Mount Erebus is known to be active. Located on Ross Island, Erebus is the southernmost active volcano.

## Climate

- Antarctica is the coldest place on Earth. At the 3-km high Vostok Station in Antarctica, scientists recorded the world's lowest temperature:  $-89^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-129^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).
- Antarctica is a frozen desert with little precipitation; the South Pole itself receives less than 10 cm per year, on average. Temperatures reach a minimum of between  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $-90^{\circ}\text{C}$  in the interior in winter and reach a maximum of between  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $15^{\circ}\text{C}$  near the coast in summer.
- Sunburn is often a health issue as the snow surface reflects almost all of the ultraviolet light falling on it. Eastern Antarctica is colder than its western counterpart because of its higher elevation.
- During summer, more solar radiation reaches the surface during clear days at the South Pole than at the equator because of the 24 hours of sunlight each day at the Pole.
- Antarctica is colder than the Arctic for two reasons. First, much of the continent is more than 3 km above sea level, and temperature decreases with elevation. Second, the Arctic Ocean covers the north polar zone: the ocean's relative warmth is transferred through the icepack and prevents temperatures in the Arctic regions from reaching the extremes typical of the land surface of Antarctica.

## THINGS TO REMEMBER

- The south African town where Mahatma Gandhi, on being thrown out of the train, vowed to fight racism. - Pietermaritzburg
- The Kalahari desert is situated between these rivers - Orange and Zambezi
- The country having highest death rate and least life expectancy in world - Sierra Leone
- Most of Kalahari lies in - Botswana
- Farmers of Egypt are also called - Fellahin
- Three points where Africa almost touches Eurasia - Gibraltar, Suez and Bab-el Mandeb
- The highest peak in Africa - Mt Kilimanjaro
- City at the confluence of Blue and White Nile - Khartoum
- The hottest place in the world - Al-Azizhiya (Libya)
- The Little and the Great Bitter lakes are along - Suez Canal
- A large geographically disadvantages State - Zaire
- The lowest point in Africa - Lake Assal, Djibouti
- The nomadic, herders of Sahara - Tuaregs
- A large lake in East Africa not lying in the Great Rift Valley - Lake Victoria
- A region of inland drainage - Lake Chad
- Judicial capital of South Africa - Bloemfontein
- Clove Bowl of the World - Zanzibar and Pemba
- Largest Waterfall in the world - Victoria Falls
- Victoria falls are on - River Zambezi
- Kimberly is famous for - Diamonds
- Witwatersrand is famous for - Gold
- Pastoral tribe of Kenya - Masai
- A new country carved out of Ethiopia during 1990s - Eritrea
- Countries bordering Lake Victoria - Tanzania, Kenya, Uganda
- Gate of Tears - Bab-el-Mandeb
- Most tropical of all continents - Africa
- Place of origin of Coffee - Ethiopia
- A flightless bird of Kalahari Desert - Ostrich
- Country with maximum Hydro Electric Potential in Africa - Democratic Republic of Congo
- Gold, Ivory Slave and Grain coasts, arranged west to east - Grain, Ivory, Gold, Slave coast
- The only river to cross the tropic of Capricorn twice - Limpopo
- The tribes who are the forests dweller of the Congo basin - Pygmies
- The leading producer of mineral oils on Africa - Nigeria
- South American country which is a member of OPEC - Venezuela
- Legal capital of Bolivia - Sucre
- Administrative capital of Bolivia - La Paz
- Southern most inhabited city in the world - Punta Arenas, Chile
- World's largest exploitable reserves of copper - Chile
- Strait between south America and Antarctica - Drake Passage
- People of mixed European and American Indian ancestry who work on cattle farms - Gauchos
- Coffee plantations of Brazil are called - Fazendas
- Land locked countries of South America - Bolivia and Paraguay
- Countries in descending order of population - Brazil, Colombia, Argentina and Peru.
- Temperate Grasslands of Argentina - Pampas
- Lake Maracaibo, famous for crude oil is in - Venezuela
- Largest city of South America - Sao Paulo
- Highest navigable lake in the world - Titicaca
- Country with the largest reserves of hardwood - Brazil
- Copper capital of the world - Chuquibambilla
- Official language of Brazil - Portuguese
- Countries in descending order of size - Brazil, Argentina, Peru and Colombia
- Brazil share its boundary with all South American countries except - Chile and Ecuador
- The highest active volcano in the world - Mt. Ojos Del Salado
- The flightless bird of South America - Emu
- The most densely populated country of the Americas - Barbados
- The only capital city of a Central American country having a coastal location - Panama city
- Panama was once a province of - Colombia
- The largest urban agglomeration in the world - Mexico city
- The only Middle American country where Olympics were held - Mexico (1968)
- One of the largest silver mines in the world - Chihuahua, Mexico
- The largest of the Middle American countries - Mexico
- The country known for producing sugarcane, cigars and boxers - Cuba

- An island of the Greater Antilles which was a French colony - **Haiti**
- The largest export of most of the Caribbean island - **Sugarcane**
- The Switzerland of Central America - **Costa Rica**
- Four largest Caribbean Islands forming the Greater Antilles - **Cuba, Puerto Rico, Haiti and Jamaica**
- Two most important countries included in the Lesser Antilles - **Trinidad & Tobago and Barbados**
- The city known as "The key to the Baltic" - **Copenhagen**
- The only fibre crop of Europe which is used for making linen - **Flax**
- The mountain forming the boundary between France and Spain - **Pyrenees**
- The mountain lying in the eastern France which separates it from Switzerland - **Jura**
- The mountain forming the boundary between France and Germany - **Vosges**
- The mountain which separates France from Italy - **Alps**
- The city of Germany which is the centre for art and culture - **Munich**
- The Manchester of Italy - **Milan**
- The Detroit of Italy - **Turin**
- The world's largest cutlery town - **Sheffield**
- The most important fishing ground of UK - **Dogger Bank**
- The longest river of Europe - **Volga**
- Countries with below sea level altitude - **Belgium, Netherlands, Luxemburg**
- The three CIS countries which are known as Baltic States - **Estonia, Lithuania, Latvia**
- The land which is reclaimed from the sea by making dykes - **Polders**
- The city of five ports - **Moscow**
- The second largest country in Europe, next only to Russia - **France**
- More than 90% of iron ore of France comes from - **Lorraine field**
- The canal which joins Baltic Sea with North Sea - **Kiel Canal**
- The Bay of Biscay separates - **France and Spain**
- The key to the Mediterranean - **Strait of Gibraltar**
- The Bosphorus Strait separates - **Istanbul and Anatolia Peninsula**
- The coldest place in the Northern Hemisphere - **Verkhoyansk (Russia)**
- The strait that separates Hokkaido and Honshu islands of Japan - **Tsugaru strait**
- The Manchester of Japan - **Osaka**
- The island on which the cities of Tokyo and Yokohama are located - **Honshu**
- The deepest fresh water lake of the world - **Lake Baikal**
- The sick Man of Europe - **Turkey (Asia Minor)**
- The Switzerland of Middle East - **Lebanon**
- The land of Seven Hills - **Jordan**
- The Country of Cannas - **Pakistan**
- World's largest non-capital city - **Shanghai**
- The steel capital of China - **Anshan**
- The Detroit of Japan - **Nagoya**
- The life line of Myanmar - **Irrawaddy**
- The island which is known as the Rice Bowl of Philippines - **Luzon**
- "The land of thunder dragon" - **Bhutan**
- The largest dam of Pakistan which is located on the Indus river - **Mangla Dam**
- The longest river of Sri Lanka - **Mahaweli Ganga**
- The twin ancient towns of Pakistan where river of the Indus Valley civilization have been excavated - **Harappa and Mohenjodaro**
- The only hydroelectric project of Bhutan with the help of India - **Chukha Project**
- The land of Golden Pagoda - **Myanmar**
- The largest Peninsula of the world - **Arabian Peninsula**
- The two countries of Asia which are also partly in Europe - **Turkey and Russia**
- The key to black Sea - **Strait of Bosphorus**
- The Paris of East - **Beirut**
- The Island of Pearl - **Bahrain**
- Countries having control over the strait of Bab-el Mandeb - **Yemen and Djibouti**
- The largest continuous sand desert in the southern part of Saudi Arabia which is also termed as Empty Quarter - **Rub-al-Khali**
- The lowest point of the world - **Dead Sea (420 m below sea level)**
- The saltiest lake in the world - **Lake Van (Turkey)**
- The river which forms the boundary between Russia and China - **Amur**
- World's longest artificial waterway from Beijing to Nanjing - **Grand Canal**

- The channel which separates Andaman Nicobar islands from Sumatra - **Great channel**
- The land of white elephant - **Thailand**
- The largest Buddhist Temple - **Borobudo (Java)**
- The largest city of Australia - **Sydney**
- Flightless bird of Australia - **Emu**
- The New Zealander who was the first to scale Mt. Everest - **Edmund Hillary**
- Region of inland drainage in Australia - **Lake Eyre**
- Natural fountains in Australia - **Great Artesian Wells**
- Highest mountain peak in Australia - **Mt. Kosciusko**
- Strait between Australia and Tasmania - **Bass Strait**
- Great Barrier reef lies off the coast of - **Queensland**
- Kalgoorlie is famous for - **Gold Mining**
- Mt. Tom Price is famous for - **Iron**
- Lead, Zinc and silver are mined at - **Mt. Isa and Broken Hills**
- Australian Temperate Grasslands are called - **Downs**
- Strait between Australia and New Guinea - **Torres Strait**
- Trans-Australian railway runs between - **Perth and Sydney**
- Major roads in Australia are called - **Commonwealth Highway**
- Aborigines of Australia are called - **Abindibis**
- The most populated of the Australian states - **New South Wales**
- Capital of Tasmania - **Hobart**
- Sheep rearing farms in Australia are called - **Stations**
- The southernmost capital city of the world - **Wellington**
- The strait between North and South Island of New Zealand - **Cook Strait**
- The biggest city of New Zealand - **Auckland**
- The first European to discover New Zealand - **Abel Tasman**
- The most populous urban centre in New Zealand - **Auckland**
- The chief farming region in New Zealand - **Canterbury Plains**
- Centre of lignite and sub bituminous coal mining in Australia - **Ipswich**
- Besides kangaroo, the other two famous marsupial of Australia - **Koala and Wallaby**
- The wild dog of Australia - **Dingo**
- The Australian cities in decreasing order of population - **Sydney, Melbourne, Brisbane**

## INDIA : LOCATION

- Lying between latitude 8°4' N to 37°6' N and from longitude 68°7' E to 97°25' E, the country is divided into almost equal parts by the Tropic of Cancer (passes from Jabalpur in MP).
- The southernmost point in Indian territory, - (in Great Nicobar Island) is the India Point (6°45'), while Kanyakumari, also known as Cape Comorin is the southernmost point of Indian mainland. The country thus lies wholly in the northern and eastern hemisphere.
- The 82° 30' E longitude is taken as the Standard Time Meridian of India, as it passes through the middle of India (from Naini, near Allahabad).

## AREA & BOUNDARIES

- India stretches 3,214 km from North to South & 2,933 km from East to West.
- Area: 32, 87, 263 sq. km. Accounts for 2.4% of the total world area and roughly 16% of the world population.
- Mainland India has a coastline of 6,100 km. Including the Lakshadweep and Andaman and Nicobar Islands, the coastline measures about 7516.6 km.
- In India, of the total land mass:
 

• Plains	: 43.3%,
• Plateaus	: 27.7%,
• Hills	: 18.6%,
• Mountains	: 10.7%

- In the South, on the eastern side, the Gulf of Manner & the Palk Strait separate India from Sri Lanka.
- Total land neighbours: 7 (Pakistan, Afghanistan, China Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar).
- India's Islands include the Andaman & Nicobar Islands in Bay of Bengal & Lakshadweep, Minicoy & Amindive Islands in the Arabian Sea.

## PHYSIOGRAPHY

- Physiographical, India can be divided into 3 units:

- Mountains in the North.
- Plains in the Northern India & the Coast.
- Plateau region of the South.

To these can be added the fourth, namely, the coasts and islands.

## MOUNTAINS OF INDIA

### THE HIMALAYAS

- Means 'Abode of Snow'. They are one of the youngest fold mountain ranges in the world and comprise mainly sedimentary rocks.
- They stretch from the Indus River in the west to the Brahmaputra River in the east. Total length is about 2400 km. The width of the Himalayas varies from 500 km in Kashmir to 200 km in Arunachal Pradesh. Their average height is 2000m.

- The Eastern Himalayas-made up of Patkai Hills, Naga Hills, Mizo Hills.
- The Pamir, popularly known as the Roof of the World, is the connecting link between the Himalayas and the high ranges of Central Asia.
- Can be divided into 3 parallel or longitudinal zones, each with separate features-

#### The Great Himalayas or the Himadri

- Average elevation extends upto 6000m & some of the world's highest peaks are here-

Mt Everest (or Sagarmatha or Chomo Langma)	8848 (in Nepal)
Mt Kanchenjunga	8598 m (in India)
Mt Makalu	8481 m (in Nepal)
Mt Dhaulagiri	8172 m (in Nepal)
Mt Cho Oyo	8153 m (in India)
Mt Nanga Parbat	8126 m (in India)
Mt Annapurna	8078 m (in Nepal)
Mt Nanda Devi	7817 m (in India)

- There are few passes and almost all of them have a height above 4,500 m. They include Shipki La and Bara Lapcha a in Himachal Pradesh, Brazil and Zazi La in Kashmir, Niti, Lipulekh and Thag La in Uttaranchal, and Jelep La and Nathu La in Sikkim.

#### Lesser Himalayas or The Himachal

- Average height of mountains is 3700-4500 m.
- Mountains and valleys are disposed in all direction (mountains rising to 5000 m and the valleys touching 1000m).
- Its important ranges are Dhauladhar, Pir Panjal, Nag Tibba, Mussoorie.
- Important hill resorts are: Shimla, Dharmash, Rankihet, Chakrata, Mussoorie, Nainital, Almora, Darjeeling.

#### Outer Himalayas or The Shiwaliks

- Lowest range (average elevation is 900-1200m).
- Forms the foothills & lies between the lesser Himalayas & the plains. It is the newest range.

#### TRANS-HIMALAYAN ZONE

- This range lies at the north of the Geat Himalayas. It has some important ranges like Karakoram, Ladakh, Zaskar, etc. The highest peak in this region is K2 or Godwin Austin (8611m, in Pak occupied Kashmir). Other high peaks are Hidden Peak (8068 m), Broad Peak (8047 m) and Gasherbrum II (8035 m).
- The longest glacier is Siachin in the Nubra valley, which is more than 72 km long (biggest glacier in the world). Biafo, Baltaro, Batura, Batura, Hispar are the other important glaciers in this region.

- This area is the largest snow-field outside the Polar Regions.

#### PENINSULAR MOUNTAINS

- While the Himalayas are Fold Mountains, they are not.

- The Aravalli mountains (Rajasthan): World's oldest. Gru Shikhar is the highest peak on which Mount Abu (1,722 m) is situated.

- The Vindhya mountains

- The Satpura mountains (Highest point at Dhupgarh (1,350 m) near Pachmarhi)

#### FACTS ABOUT POSITION OF STATES

- Up borders the maximum number of States-8 (Uttaranchal, Himachal Pradesh, Haryana, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhatisgarh, Jharkhand, Bihar). After U.P is Assam, which touches the border of 7 States.

- Tropic of Cancer passes through 8 States: Gujarat, Rajasthan, MP, Chhatisgarh, Jharkhand, WB, Tripura, Mizoram.

- Indian Standard Meridian passes through 5 States: U.P, M.P, Chhatisgarh, Orissa, A.P.

- 9 States form the coat of India. They are: Gujarat, Maharashtra, Geo, Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa, and West Bengal.

- 2 Union Territories, viz. Daman & Diu and Pondicherry are also on the coast.

- The Union Territories of Andaman and Nicobar Islands and Lakshadweep are made up of islands only.

#### The Iranian States on international boundaries are:

- Bordering Pakistan Jammu and Kashmir, Punjab, Rajasthan Gujarat
- Bordering China Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttaranchal, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Bihar, Uttaranchal, UP, Sikkim, West Bengal, West Bengal, Mizoram, Meghalaya Tripura, Assam
- Bordering Nepal West Bengal, Sikkim, West Bengal, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Assam
- Bordering Bangladesh Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur, Mizoram
- Bordering Bhutan Jammu and Kashmir (Pakistan- occupied area).
- Bordering Myanmar Jammu and Kashmir
- Bordering Afghanistan Jammu and Kashmir

- The Western Ghats or Sahyadris: Average height 1200 m, 1600 km long. Its southern part is separated from the main Sahyadri range by Palghat Gap (link between Tamil Nadu & Kerala). Other passes are Thalghat (connects Nasik to Mumbai) and Bhorghat (connects Pune to Mumbai).



- **The Eastern Ghats** (Highest Peak: Mahendra Giri (1501m)).
- **The Nilgiris or The Blue Mountains:** Meeting place of the Western and the Eastern Ghats. Two highest peaks are Dodda Betta and Makurti.
- The highest peak of Peninsular India is **Anaimudi** (2695m) in **Anaimalai Hills**.
- **Cardamom hill or Ealaimalai** is the southernmost mountain range of India.

### THE PLAINS

- To the south of the Himalayas and to the north of the Peninsula lies the great plains of North India. They are formed by the depositional works of three major river systems, Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra. The vast plains of north India are alluvial in nature and the westernmost portion is occupied by the Thar Desert.
- The thickness of the alluvium is maximum in the Ganga plains and minimum in the Western Plains.
- In the Kerala plains are the backwaters or '**Kayals**', which are the shallow lagoons or inlets of the sea, lying parallel to the coastline. The largest among these is the **Vembanad Lake**.
- The plains consist of four divisions:
  - **Bhabar:** Along the foothills of Shiwaliks. Highly porous.
  - **Tarai:** Re-emergence of streams. Zone of excessive dampness.
  - **Bhangar:** Older alluvium of the plains. Studded with calcareous formations called 'kankar'.
  - **Khadar:** New alluvium and forms the flood plains along the river banks.

### PENINSULAR PLATEAU

- Spreads south of the Indo-Gangetic plains flanked by sea on three sides. The plateau is shaped like a triangle with its base in the north. The Eastern Ghats and the Western Ghats constitute its eastern and western boundaries, respectively.
- Narmada, which flows through a rift valley, divides the region into two parts: The **Malwa Plateau** in the north and the **Deccan Plateau** in the south.
- Most of the rocks are of the igneous type.
- Vindhya Plateau is situated south of Malwa plateau.
- **The Deccan Plateau** is the largest plateau in India. It is made up of lava that flowed in the *Cretaceous Eocene* era through the fissure eruptions.

### ISLANDS OF INDIA

- Total coastline of India : 7516 km. Longest coastline: Gujarat (Second longest is of Andhra Pradesh).
- Indian territorial limits include 248 islands.

### THE ANDAMAN AND NICOBAR GROUP

- Andamans is a group of 204 islands of which the largest is Middle Andaman.
- The Andamans are believed to be extensions of mountains system in the N.E part of the country.
- Saddle Peak (737m) in N. Andaman is the highest peak.
- The Nicobars is group of 19 islands of which the largest is Great Nicobar. Most of them are volcanic in nature.
- Great Nicobar is the southernmost island and is only 147 km away from Sumatra island of Indonesia.
- **Volcanic Islands:** Barren and Nancowder Islands. Barren is in the process of eruption these days after lying dormant for 200 years.

### THE ARABIAN SEA GROUP

- All the islands in the Arabian Sea (Total 25) are coral islands and are surrounded by Fringing Reefs (North: Lakshadweep, south: Minicoy).

### NOTE

- **Ten Degree Channel** separates Andamans from Nicobar (Little Andaman from Car Nicobar).
- **Duncan Passage** lies between South Andaman and Little Andaman.
- **Nine Degree Channel** separates Kavaratti from Minicoy Island.
- **Eight Degree Channel** separates Minicoy Island (India) from Maldives.
- In this three major river systems are there:

### THE INDUS SYSTEM

- It has a total length of 2880km (709 km in India). Rises in Tibet (China) near Mansarovar Lake.
- In Jammu and Kashmir, its Himalayan tributaries are: Zaskar, Dras, Gartang, Shyok, Shigar, Nubra, Gilgit, etc.
- Its most important tributaries, which join Indus at various places, are: Jhelum (725km), Chenab (1800km), Ravi (720km), Beas (470km) & Satluj (1050km).
- **Sources:** Jhelum from Verinag (S.E Kashmir), Chenab from Barn Lacha Pass (Lahaul- Spiti, H.P.), Ravi from Kullu Hill near Rohtang Pass in H. P., Beas from a place near Rohtang Pass in H.P. and Satluj from RAKAS (Rakas) Rakash lakes in W. Tibet.
- In Nari Kherson province of Tibet, Satluj has created an extraordinary canyon, comparable to the Grand's Canyon of Colorado (US).
- According to the Indus Water Treaty signed between India and Pakistan in 1960, India can utilize only 20% of the total discharge of Indus, Jhelum and Chenab.

## THE GANGA SYSTEM

- It is 2525 km long of which 1450 km is in Uttaranchal and UP, 445 km in Bihar and 520 km in West Bengal.
- The Ganga, the head stream is constituted of two main rivers-Bhagirathi and Alaknanda, which combine at Devprayag, to form Ganga.
- Before Alaknanda meets Bhagirathi at Devprayag, Mandakini meets Alaknanda at Rudraprayag.
- Sources: Bhagirathi from Gaumukh, Alaknanda from Badrinath, Mandakini from Kedarnath (all from Uttaranchal).
- Yamuna (1375km) is its most important tributary (on right bank). It rises at the Yamunotri glacier in Uttaranchal. It runs parallel to Ganga for 800km and joins it at Allahabad. Important tributaries of Yamuna are Chambal (1050km), Sind, Betwa (480 km) and Ken (all from south).
- Apart from Yamuna, other tributaries of Ganga are Ghaghra (1080 km), Son (780 km), Gandak (425 km), Kosi (730 km), Gomti (805 km), Damodar (541km). Kosi is infamous as 'Sorrow of Bihar', while Damodar gets the name 'Sorrow of Bengal' as these rivers cause floods in these regions.
- Hooghli is a distributary of Ganga flowing through Kolkata.

## THE BRAHMAPUTRA SYSTEM

- It has a total length of 2900 km. It rises in Tibet (from Chemayungdung glacier), where it is called Tsangpo, and enters the Indian territory (in Arunachal Pradesh) under the name Dihang.
- Important Tributaries: Subansiri, Kameng, Dhansiri, Manas, Teesta.
- In Bangladesh, Brahmaputra is known by the name of Jamuna while Ganga gets the name Padma. Their combined stream is known as Padma only. Meghna is the most important distributary before it enters the Bay of Bengal.
- The combined stream of Ganga and Brahmaputra forms the **biggest delta in the world**, the **Sundarbans**, covering an area of 58,752 sq. km. Its major port is in Bangladesh.
- Brahmaputra is the river island Majuli in Assam, the **biggest river island in the world**.
- Brahmaputra, or the Red River, is navigable for a distance of 1384 km up to Dibrugarh and serves as an excellent inland water transport route.

## RIVERS OF THE PENINSULA

- Different from the Himalayan rivers because they are seasonal in their flow (while Himalayan rivers are perennial).
- They can be divided into two groups:

### A. EAST FLOWING RIVERS (or Delta forming rivers)

- **Mahanadi** (858 km): Rises in Raipur district in Chhattisgarh. Main tributaries: Ib, Seonath, Hasdo, Mand, Jonk, Tel, etc.
- **Godavari** (1465 km): Also called Vriddha Ganga or Dakshina Ganga. It is the longest peninsular river. Rises in Nasik. main tributaries: Mangira, Penganga, Wardha, Indravati, Wainganga, Sabani, etc.
- **Krishna** (1327 km): Rises in Western Ghats near Mahabaleshwar. Main tributaries: Koyna, Dudhganga, Panchganga, Malprabha, Ghatprabha, Bhima, Tungabhadra, Musi, etc.
- **Cauvery** (805 km): It is the largest peninsular river (maximum amount of water). In fact, it is the only peninsular river which flows almost throughout the year. It is known as the 'Ganga of the South'. It rises from the Brahmagir range of Western Ghats. Main tributaries: Hemavati, Lokpawni, Shimsa. It is less seasonal than others as its upper catchment area receives rainfall during summer by the S.W. monsoon and the lower catchment area during winter season by the retreating N.E. monsoon. Its 90%-95% irrigation and power production potential is already being harnessed.
- **Swarnarekha** (395 km) and **Brahmani** (705 km): Rises from Ranchi Plateau.

### B. WEST FLOWING RIVERS

- **Narmada** (1057 km) has only 1/10<sup>th</sup> part in Gujarat. Rises in Amarkantak Plateau and flows into Gulf of Khambat. It forms the famous Dhuandhar Falls near Jabalpur. Main tributaries: Hiran, Burhanpur, Banjar, Shar, Shalkar, Tawa, etc.
- **Tapti** (724 km): Rises from Betul district in MP. Also known as twin or handmaid of Narmada. Main tributaries: Purna, Betul, Arunavati, Ganjal etc.
- **Sabarmati** (416 km): Rises from Aravalli in Rajasthan.
- **Mahi** (560 km): Rises from Vindhya in MP.
- **Luni** (450 km): Rises from Aravalli. Also called Salt River. It is finally lost in the marshy grounds at the head of the Rann of Kutch.
- **Sharavati** is a west flowing river of the Sahyadris. It forms the famous Jog or Gersoppa or Mahatma Gandhi Falls (289 m), which is the highest waterfall in India.

### INLAND DRAINAGE

- Some rivers of India are not able to reach the sea and constitute inland drainage. Ghaggar (494km) is the most important of such drainage. It is a seasonal stream which rises on the lower slopes of the Himalayas and gets lost in the dry sands of Rajasthan near Hanumangarh. It is considered the old Saraswati of the Vedic times.

## NOTE

- The largest manmade lake in India is Indira Sagar Lake, which is the reservoir of Sardar Sarovar Project, Onkareshwar Project and Maheshwar Project in Gujarat-M.P.
- Chilka Lake (Orissa) is the largest brackish water lake of India. Otherwise also, it is the largest lake of India.
- Wular Lake (J&K) is the largest fresh water lake of India. Dal Lake is also there in J&K.
- From Sambhar and Didwana Lake (Rajasthan), salt is produced.
- Other important lakes are Vembanad in Kerala and Kolleru & Pulicat in A.P.
- The three important Gulfs in the Indian territory are:
  - Gulf of Kutch (west of Gujarat): Region with highest potential of tidal energy generation.
  - Gulf of Cambay or Gulf of Khambat (Gujarat): Narmada, Tapti, Mahi and Sabarmati drain into it.
  - Gulf of Mannar (south east of Tamil Nadu): Asia's first marine biosphere reserve.

## THE CLIMATE OF INDIA

- India has tropical monsoon type of climate. It is greatly influenced by the presence of the Himalayas in the north as they block the cold air masses from Central Asia. It is because of them only that the monsoons have a watershed in India.
- The Tropic of Cancer divides India into two almost equal climatic zones, namely, the northern zone and the southern zone. The warm temperate or the subtropical climate of the northern zone gives it cold winter seasons and the hot summer seasons. The southern tropical climatic zone is warmer than the north and does not have a clear-cut winter season.
- The northern zone does not have the midday sun vertically overhead during any part of the year; the southern zone has the midday sun almost vertically overhead at least twice every year.

## SEASONS IN INDIA

- In India, the year can be divided into four seasons, resulting from the monsoons which occur mainly due to the differential heating of land and movement of the sun's vertical rays.
- The vertical rays of the sun advance towards Tropic of Cancer from mid-March, due to which hot and dry weather arrives. As temperature rise over most of northern and Central India, a vast trough of low pressure is created. The highest temperature experienced in South is in April while in North it is in May and June.

- This part of the year is marked by a dry spell and the north-western parts of the country experience hot, dry winds, called loo. In this period, the country also experience storms/dust storms at various places.
- Tornado like dust 'storms' in Punjab and Haryana, called 'Andhis' in UP and 'Kalbaisakhis' in West Bengal. They involve strong convectional movements causing some precipitation.
- The 'Norwesters' originate over the Chota Nagpur Plateau and blow in the north-east direction which brings about 50 cm of rainfall in Assam and about 10 cm rainfall in West Bengal and Orissa. This rainfall is very useful for Assam tea and spring rice crops of West Bengal.
- Similarly, 'Cherry Blossoms' are there in Karnataka, beneficial to coffee plantation and 'Mango showers' in elsewhere South India, which are beneficial to mango crops.
- This weather is followed by hot, wet weather from June to September. In May, the South-west monsoon sets in. The normal dates of onset of the monsoon are May 20 in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, June 3 in the Konkan, June 15 in Kolkata and June 29 in Delhi.
- The south-west monsoon enters the country in two currents, one blowing over the Bay of Bengal and other over the Arabian Sea. This monsoon causes rainfall over most of the country (except Tamil Nadu and Thar Desert area). The S.W. monsoon entering from Western Ghats causes heavy rainfall over Kerala coast, but Tamil Nadu falls on the leeward side. In the thar area, the winds blow parallel to the Aravalli and do not cause rain. The Bay of Bengal current causes heavy rainfall in the north east parts of the country and a part of it turns west along the Himalayas over the Indo-Gangetic plains causing rainfall in this region. But the Bay of Bengal current, by the time it reaches W. Rajasthan runs out of moisture.
- The Bay of Bengal branch after crossing the deltaic region enters the Khasi valley in Meghalaya and gets entrapped in it due to funnel shape of the region. It strikes Cherrapunji in a perpendicular direction causing heaviest rainfall in Mansinram (Approx. 1400 cm).
- From mid-Sept to mid-Dec, the monsoon retreats. As the sun's vertical rays start shifting towards the Tropic of Capricorn, the low pressure area starts moving south and winds finally start blowing from land to sea. This is called north-east monsoon. The withdrawal of monsoon is a much more gradual process than its onset. It causes rainfall in Tamil Nadu as the winds pick some moisture from Bay of Bengal. This explains the phenomenon why Tamil Nadu remains dry when the entire country receives rain and why it gets rain when practically the entire country is dry.

- The cold and dry weather starts in early December. In this, the average temperature in south is  $24^{\circ}$ - $25^{\circ}\text{C}$ , while in the north is  $10^{\circ}$ - $15^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In the latter part of December and in January, the dry spell is broken by the westerly depressions (temperate cyclones) from Mediterranean Sea, which causes some rain in north-west India.
- Almost all the precipitation in India is caused by the monsoons and it is primarily orographic in nature. Cyclonic storms provide only a little rain, mainly in the north.

### SOILS IN INDIA

- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) has divided Indian soils into eight major groups:

#### ALLUVIAL SOIL

- They are by far the largest and the most important soil group of India. They are composed of sediments deposited by rivers and the waves. Their chemical composition makes them one of the most fertile in the world. Usually deficient in nitrogen and humus (thus fertilizers are needed).
- Occupy the plains (from Punjab to Assam) and also occur in the valleys of Narmada and Tapi in M.P. & Gujarat, Mahanadi in the MP and Orissa, Godavari in A.P and Cauvery in T.N.
- Can be divided into Khadar (new) and Bhangar (older, more clayey and kankary) alluvium.

#### BLACK SOIL

- Also called Regur and is ideal for cotton crop. These soils have been formed due to the solidification of lava spread over large areas during volcanic activity in the Deccan Plateau, thousands of years ago.
- They are black due to compounds of iron and aluminum (also because of titaniferous magnetite).
- Mainly found in Deccan Plateau Maharashtra, Gujarat, M.P., Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, and Tamil Nadu.
- Apart from cotton cultivation, these fertile soil are suitable for growing cereals, oilseeds, citrus fruits and vegetables, tobacco and sugarcane.
- They have high moisture retention level.
- Lack in phosphorus, nitrogen and organic matter.

#### RED SOIL

- They are mainly formed due to the decomposition of ancient crystalline rock like granites and gneisses and from rock types rich in minerals such as iron and magnesium. The term 'red soil' is due to the wide diffusion of iron oxides through the materials of the soil.
- Covers almost the whole of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, S.E. Maharashtra, Chhattisgarh, parts of Orissa, Jharkhand and Bundelkhand.
- Generally deficient in nitrogen, humus and phosphorus, but rich in potash.
- Suitable for rice, millets, tobacco and vegetables (also groundnuts and potatoes at higher elevations).

#### LATERITE SOIL

- Found in typical monsoon conditions-under conditions of high temperature and heavy rainfall with alternate wet and dry periods. The alterations of wet and dry season leads to the leaching away of siliceous matter and lime of the rocks and a soil rich in oxides of iron and aluminum compounds is left behind.
- Found in parts of Western Ghats, Eastern Ghats, Rajmahal hill, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Kerala, Orissa, West Bengal, Assam, Tamil Nadu, etc.
- Poor in nitrogen and minerals.
- Best for tea, coffee rubber, cinchona, coconut and suitable for rice and millet cultivation if manured.

#### FOREST AND MOUNTAIN SOILS

- Such soils are mainly found on the hill slopes covered by forests. The formation of these soils is mainly governed by the characteristic deposition of organic matter derived from forest growth.
- In the Himalayan region, such soils are mainly found in valley basins, depressions and less steeply inclined slopes. Apart from the Himalayan region, the forest soils occur in higher hills in south and the peninsular region.
- Suitable for plantation of tea, coffee, spices and tropical fruits.

#### ARID AND DESERT SOILS

- A large part of the arid and semi-arid region in Rajasthan and adjoining areas of Punjab and Haryana lying between the Indus and the Aravalli receiving less than 50 cm of annual rainfall is affected by desert conditions.
- This area is covered by a mantle of sand which inhibits soil growth.
- The phosphate content of these soils is as high as in normal alluvial soils. Nitrogen is originally low but its deficiency is made up to some extent by the availability of nitrogen in the form of nitrates. Thus the presence of phosphates and nitrates make them fertile soils wherever moisture is available.
- The changes in the cropping pattern in the Indira Gandhi Canal Command Area are a living example of the utility of the desert soils.

#### SALINE AND ALKALINE SOILS

- In the drier parts of Bihar, UP, Haryana, Punjab, Rajasthan and Maharashtra, are the salt-impregnated or alkaline soils. Known by different names: Reh, kallar, usar, etc.
- Some of the salts are transported in solution by the rivers and canals, which percolates in the sub-soils of the plains.
- The accumulation of salts makes the soil infertile and renders it unfit for agriculture.



## PEATY AND MARSHY SOILS

- Originate in the humid regions as a result of accumulation of large amounts of organic matter in the soil. They contain considerable amounts of soluble salts and 10-40% of organic matter.
- Peaty soils are found in Kottayam and Alappuzha districts of Kerala, where it is called Kari.
- Marshy soils, high in vegetable matter, are found in northern Bihar, coastal parts of Orissa, Tamil Nadu and West Bengal and parts of UP.

## SOIL EROSION

- Acute in hilly and dry regions.
- Causes-depletion of forests, wrong use of lands such as cultivation on very steep slopes, cattle rearing. It ultimately leads to Badland Topography.
- Remedy- Afforestation, contour cultivation etc.

## NATURAL VEGETATION IN INDIA :

### TROPICAL WET EVERGREEN FORESTS

- In areas over 250cm rainfall. In Western Ghats, hilly areas in N.E. India and Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
- Trees are Rosewood, Shisham, Ebony, Ironwood, etc.

### TROPICAL MOIST DECIDUOUS FORESTS

- In areas having rainfall between 100-200cm. In peninsular region and along the foothills of Himalayas in Shivaliks, Bharbhar and Tarai.
- The trees of these forests drop their leaves for about 6-8 weeks during the spring and early summer when sufficient moisture isn't available.
- Trees are Teak, Sal, Bamboo, Sandalwood, etc.

### THORN FORESTS

- In areas having rainfall between 25 and 80cm. In arid regions of Rajasthan, Punjab, Haryana and Gujarat.
- Trees are Palm, Acacia, etc.

### HILL FORESTS

- In hills of South India and the Himalayas.
- The type of trees depends upon the height of the mountain: Sal and Damboo below 1000 m; Oaks, Chestnuts and other fruit trees, and Chir forests between 1000 and 2000m; Pine, Deodar, Silver firs and spruce between 1600 and 3300 m; above 3600 m alpine forests with trees like silver firs, pines, birches, etc, Alpine forests given way to Alpine grasslands and scrubs as we move up further.

### TIDAL OR MANGROVE FORESTS

- Also known as Littoral or Swamps Forests.
- Occur along the sea coast and in the estuaries of rivers, especially in Sunderbans and the Andamans.
- Most important tree is Sundari. It provides hard and durable timber which is used for construction and building purposes as well as for making boats.

## NOTE

- According to the National Forest Policy, the minimum desired area which is considered safe for a tropical country like India is about 33%.
  - Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under forests followed by Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa and Arunachal Pradesh.
  - As per percentage of forest area to total area, first is Andaman and Nicobar Islands, followed by Mizoram, Manipur, Himachal Pradesh, Arunachal Pradesh, Tripura and Nagaland. They are in a very comfortable position as more than half of their area is under forests.
  - Arunachal Pradesh has the highest per capita forest area.
  - In Mangrove forests, West Bengal holds the first position, followed by Gujarat and Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
  - The lowest forest percentage is in Haryana and Punjab, because of the extensive agriculture.
- ### NATIONAL PARKS AND WILD LIFE SANCTUARIES
- There are 92 National Parks and 492 Wildlife Sanctuaries in India.
  - Madhya Pradesh and Andaman and Nicobar Islands have the maximum number of National Parks (9 each) while Andaman and Nicobar Islands has 96 and Maharashtra has 36 wildlife Sanctuaries (maximum in India).

Gir Forests	Home of Asiatic lion. In Gujarat
Kaziranga Sanctuary	One horned rhino. In Assam
Manas Sanctuary	One horned rhino. In Assam
Chandraprabha Sanctuary	II home of Asiatic lion. In UP
Ghana or Keoladeo Bird Sanctuary	In Bharatpura, Rajasthan
Dachigam Sanctuary	For Hangul. In Kashmir
Corbett National Park	In Uttaranchal. Home of tiger
Kanha National Park	In MP
Shiv Puri National Park	In MP
Hazaribagh National Park	In Jharkhand
Periyar Game Sanctuary	In Kerala. For elephants
Dudhwa National Park	In UP
Vedanthangal Bird Sanctuary	In Tamil Nadu
Nokrek National Park	In Meghalaya
Sariska Sanctuary	In Rajasthan



<b>Ranthambhor National Park</b>	In Rajasthan
<b>Namdapha National Park</b>	In Arunachal Pradesh
<b>Keibul Lamjo Floating National Park</b>	In Arunachal Pradesh
<b>Palamau Tiger Project</b>	In Bihar
<b>Simlipal National Park</b>	In Orissa
<b>Ranganthitoo Bird Sanctuary</b>	In Mysore, Karnataka
<b>Nagarhole National Park</b>	In Karnataka
<b>Mudumalai Sanctuary</b>	In Tamil Nadu
<b>Balpakram Sanctuary</b>	In Meghalaya
<b>Bandipur Sanctuary</b>	Along the Karnataka-Tamil Nadu border
<b>Jaldapara Sanctuary</b>	In West Bengal. For rhinos
<b>Wild Ass Sanctuary</b>	In Rann of Kutch, Gujarat. For wild ass

### BIOSPHERE RESERVES IN INDIA

- The biosphere reserve programme was launched by the UNESCO in 1971 under the aegis of its Man and Biosphere (MAB) Programme, to provide a global network of protected areas for conserving natural communities.
- In India, the first biosphere reserve-Nilgiri biosphere reserve came into being in 1968. So far, 15 biosphere reserve have been set up in the country.

Nilgiri (Western Ghats)	Similipal (Orissa)
Nanda Devi (Uttaranchal)	Dibru-Daikhowa (Assam)
Nokrek (Meghalaya)	Dehong Dabang (Arunachal Pradesh)
Manas (Assam)	Panchmarhi (MP)
Sunderbans (West Bengal)	Kanchenjunga (Sikkim)
Gulf of Mannar (Tamil Nadu)	Agasthyamali (Kerala)
Great Nicobar (Andaman)	Achanak maar, Amar
And Nicobar Islands	kantak (Madhya Pradesh)

### NOTE

Out of these 15, Nilgiri, Sunderbans, Manas and Gulf of Mannar have been recognized on World Network of Biosphere Reserves by UNESCO.

### PROJECT TIGER

- It was launched on April 1, 1973 to ensure maintenance of viable population of the tigers in India.
- There are 27 tiger reserves in the country.

Name of Tiger Reserve	State
Bandipur	Karnataka
Corbett	Uttaranchal
Kanha	Madhya Pradesh
Manas	Assam
Melghat	Maharashtra
Palamau	Jharkhand
Ranthambhore	Rajasthan

Similipal	Orissa
Sunderbans	West Bengal
Periyar	Kerala
Sariska	Rajasthan
Buxa	West Bengal
Indravati	Chhattisgarh
Nagarjunsagar	Andhra Pradesh
Namdapha	Arunachal Pradesh
Dudhwa	Uttar Pradesh
Kalakad-Mundanthurai	Tamil Nadu
Valmiki	Bihar
Pench	Madhya Pradesh
Tadoba-Andhari	Maharashtra
Bandhavgarh	Madhya Pradesh
Panna	Madhya Pradesh
Dampha	Mizoram
Bhadra	Karnataka
Pench	Maharashtra
Pakhui-Nameri	Arunachal Pradesh
Bori, Satpura, Pachmari	Assam
	Madhya Pradesh

### NOTE

Nagarjuna Sagar Tiger Reserve in AP is the largest while Pench in Maharashtra is the smallest. Jim Corbett National Park Tiger Project was the first (1973).

### PROJECT ELEPHANT

- It was launched in February 1992, to assist States having wild elephants to ensure long term survival of identified viable populations of elephants in their natural habitat.
- There are 14 Elephant Reserves in India.

### AGRICULTURE IN INDIA :

#### CROPPING SEASONS IN INDIA

##### KHARIF CROPS

- Sown in summers between May and July, and harvested after the rains, in Sept. and Oct.
- E.g.: Rice, jowar, bajra, maize, cotton, jute, sugarcane, tobacco, groundnut, pulses etc.

##### RABI CROPS

- Sown at the beginning of winter and harvested before the onset of the summer season, between Feb and April.
- E.g.: Wheat, barley, oilseeds, gram, potatoes, etc.

##### ZAYAD CROPS

- They are raised between April and June.
- E.g.: Melon, watermelon, cucumber, Toris, leafy and other vegetables.

##### CASH CROPS (COMMERCIAL CROPS)

- Grown mainly for the market, only a small portion of the product is consumed by the farmers themselves (cotton, sugarcane etc.)

## IMPORTANT CROPS OF INDIA

### FOOD GRAINS

RICE	In West Bengal, Punjab, UP
WHEAT	In UP, Punjab, Haryana
MAIZE	In Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka
BAJRA	In Rajasthan, Gujarat, UP
JOWAR	In Maharashtra, Karnataka, MP, AP
TOTAL PULSES	In MP, UP, Maharashtra
TOTAL FOOD GRAINS	In UP, Punjab, West Bengal

### OIL SEEDS

GROUNDNUT	In Gujarat, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh
RAPESEED & MUSTARD	In Rajasthan, UP, Haryana
SOYABEAN	In Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Rajasthan
SUNFLOWER	In Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Maharashtra
TOTAL OIL SEEDS	In MP, Maharashtra, Rajasthan

### CASH CROPS

SUGARCANE	In UP, Maharashtra, Karnataka
COTTON	In Maharashtra, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh
JUTE & MESTA	In WB, Bihar, Assam
TEA	In Assam, West Bengal, Himachal Pradesh
COFFEE	In Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu
RUBBER	In Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka
SILK	In Karnataka, Jammu and Kashmir, Andhra Pradesh. In India all 4 varieties of silk are available: Mulberry, tussar, eri and muga. Mulberry is the main variety, while tussar is mainly found in Bihar.
TOBACCO	In Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka

### JHUM

- Shifting type of cultivation practiced in the hill slopes of Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram and Nagaland.
- In this, the trees are felled and set on fire. The ash of the burnt trees and the other vegetation adds to the fertility of soil. This land is used for 2-3 years till the soil gets exhausted and the jhum is abandoned. The cultivators then move on to the other patch of forest land.
- Known by different names: Ladang (Malaysia), Chengin (Philippines), Milpa (Mexico), Konuko (Venezuela), Masole (Zaire basin), Chena (Sri Lanka).

## MINERAL RESOURCES OF INDIA

### Coal

West Bengal (Raniganj, Burdwan, Bankura, Purulia, Birbhum, Jalpaigudi, Darjeeling), Jharkhand (Jharia, Giridih, Kharhawadi, Bokaro, Hazaribagh, Karnapura, Rampur, Palamau), Madhya Pradesh and Chhatisgarh (Rewa, Pench valley, Umaria, Korba, Sohagpur, Mand river area, Kanha valley, Betul), etc. Power sector is the largest consumer of coal in India followed by steel industry, cement industry, etc.

### Manganese

Orissa, Maharashtra (Nagpur, Bhandara, Ratnagiri), Madhya Pradesh (Balaghat, Chhindawara), Karnataka (Keonjhar, Bonai, Kalahandi), Andhra Pradesh (Kadur, Garibadi).

### Copper

Madhya Pradesh (Balaghat), Rajasthan (Khetri), Jharkhand (Singbhum, Masobani, Surda), Karnataka (Chitradurg, Hassan).

### Mica

Jharkhand (Hazaribagh, Giridih, Kodarma), Bihar (Gaya, Bhagalpur), Andhra Pradesh (Guntur, Vizag, Kurnool), Rajasthan (Bhilwara, Udaipur, Jaipur).

### Petroleum

Assam (Digboi, Naharkatiya, Badarpur, Masinpur and Pallahria), Gujarat (Ankleshwar, Khambhat, Kalol), Mumbai High, Bassein (south of Mumbai High), etc. Recently oil has been discovered in Cauvery basin, Krishna and Godavary basin, Khambhat basin, etc.

### Iron

India possesses Haematite, a very high-grade iron ore. In Madhya Pradesh (Bailadila, Jabalpur), Goa (North Goa), Karnataka (Bababudan hills, Chikmagalur, Hospet), Jharkhand (Singbhum, Naomundi, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa, India is the fifth largest exporter of iron ore in the world. Japan is the biggest buyer accounting for about 3/4th of India's total exports. Major ports handling iron ore export are Vishakhapatnam, Paradip, Mormogoa and Mangalore.

### Bauxite

Bauxite is chief ore for producing aluminium. In Orissa (Kalahandi, Koraput, Sundargarh, Bolangir, Sambalpur), Jharkhand (Lohardaga, Gumla); Madhya Pradesh (Jabalpur, Mandla, Shahdol, Katni, Balaghat), Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Tamil Nadu.

### Gold

Karnataka (Kolar, Hutti, Raichur), Andhra Pradesh (Ramgiri and Yeppamanna goldfields in Chittoor and Anantapur districts).

### Silver, Zinc & Lead

Rajasthan (Zawar mines near Udaipur), Andhra Pradesh (Mysore, Chitradurg), Karnataka (Kolar mines).

### Uranium

Jharkhand (Jaduguda), Rajasthan (Ajmer), Andhra Pradesh (Nellore, Nalgonda), Karnataka (Gulbarga).

### Thorium

Kerala coast (From Monazite sand), rocks of Aravallis in Rajasthan.

## OIL REFINERIES

• There are 19 refineries in India, 16 in public sector, one in joint sector and two in private sector. Public sector refineries are located at Digboi, Guwahati, Bongaigaon, Barauni, Haldia, Koyali, Mathura, Kochi, Chennai, Vishakhapatnam, Mumbai (2), Panipat, Narimanam, Numanigarh and Tatipaka. Joint sector refinery is at Mangalore. The private sector refinery of Reliance Limited is at Jamnagar, Gujarat and Essar Refinery at Vadinar, Gujarat.

Haldia Refinery	(IOC)
Panipat Refinery	(IOC)
Digboi Refinery	(IOC)
Gujarat Refinery	(IOC)
Barauni Refinery	(IOC)
Guwahati Refinery	(IOC)
Mathura Refinery	(IOC)
Bongaigaon Refinery	(IOC)
Manali Refinery	(IOC)
Mumbai Refinery	(HPCL)
Vishakhapatnam Refinery	(HPCL)
Mumbai Refinery Mahaul	(BPCL)
Nagapattanam Refinery	(CPCL)
Kochi Refinery	(Kochi Refineries Ltd.)
Numaligarh Refinery	(NRL)
Mangalore Refinery	(MRPL)
Tatipaka Refinery	(ONGC)
Essar Refinery	(Essar)
Jamnagar Refinery	(Reliance Petroleum)

## INDUSTRIES IN INDIA

### Cotton Textile

Most important industry in terms of employment and production of export goods. In Maharashtra (Mumbai, Sholapur, Pune, Kolhapur, Solapur, Wardha, Hajipur), Gujarat (Ahmedabad, Vadodara, Rajkot, Surat, Bhavnagar), Tamil Nadu (Coimbatore- Manchester of South India). Tamil Nadu has the largest number of cotton textile mills in India.

### Silk Textile

The location of silk industry is governed by two factors prevalence of sericulture practices and availability of skilled labour. Karnataka is the leading producer, followed by West Bengal, Bihar, etc.

### Woolen Textile

In Punjab (Dhariwal, Amritsar, Ludhiana, Ferozpur) Maharashtra (Mumbai), UP (Kanpur, Mirzapur, Agra, Tanakpur), etc.

### Jute

India manufactures the largest quantity of jute goods in the world. Mainly located in West Bengal, followed by Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, UP, MP.

## Iron and Steel

Located near the sources of raw materials and fuel (coal). In Jamshedpur (Jharkhand), Durgapur, Bumpur (W.B.), (Jharkhand), Rourkela (Orissa), Bhilai (Chhatisgarh), Salem (T.N.) Vishakhapatnam (A.P).

### Aluminium Smelting

Located mainly near the sources of raw materials, means of transport and cheap electricity. In Mirakud, Koraput (Orissa), Renukoot (UP), Koro (MP), Ratnagiri (Maharashtra), Mettur (TN), Alwaye.

### Copper Smelting

In Khetri, Alwar, Jhunjhunu (Rajasthan), Singhbhum (Jharkhand), Agnigundala (A.P.).

### Heavy Machinery

In Ranchi, Vishakhapatnam, Durgapur, Tiruchirapalli, Mumbai, Naini.

### Machine Tools Industry

It forms the basis for the manufacturing of industrial, defence equipments, automobiles, railway engines and electrical machinery. In Bangalore, Pinjore (Haryana), Kalamassery (Kerala), Hyderabad, Secunderabad, Sringar, Ajmer.

### Heavy Electrical Equipments

Power generation equipments. In Bhopal, Tiruchirapalli, Jammu, Ramchandrapuram (Hyderabad), Hardwar, Bangalore, and Jagdishpur (UP).

### Railway equipments

Locomotives: In Chittaranjan (WB), Varanasi, Jamshedpur, Bhopal. Coaches: Perambur (TN), Kapurthala (Punjab), also at Bangalore and Kolkata.

### Ship Building

Hindustan Shipyard at Vishakhapatnam, Cochin Shipyard, Mumbai (Mazgaon Dock) and Kolkata (Garden Reach Workshop). For Indian Navy, only at Mazgaon.

### Cycles

In Mumbai, Asansol, Sonapat, Delhi, Chennai, Jalandhar and Ludhiana.

### Tractors

At Faridabad, Pinjore, Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai.

### Fertilizers

The location of fertilizer industry is closely related to petro-chemicals. About 70% of the plants producing nitrogenous fertilizers use naphtha as raw material. Naphtha is a by-product of oil refineries. Phosphate plants are dependent of mineral phosphate found in UP and MP. Now natural gas based fertilizer plants are also being set up. The Fertilizer Corporation of India (FCL) was set up in 1961. National Fertilizer Limited (NFL) was set up in 1974. In Sindri (Bihar), Nangal, Trombay, Gorakhpur, Durgapur, Namrup, Cochin, Rourkela, Neyveli, Varanasi, Vadodara, Vishakhapatnam, Kota and Kanpur.

## Pharmaceuticals and Drugs

Antibiotics are prepared at Pimpri and Rishikesh. the Indian Drugs and Pharmaceuticals Limited has 5 plants at Hyderabad, Rishikesh, Chennai, Gurgaon and Muzaffarpur. A number of other units are concentrate in Mumbai, Baroda, Delhi, Kolkata and Kanpur.

## Pesticides

Delhi and Alwaye

## Sugar Industry

- UP, Maharashtra, A.P, T.N, Karnataka and Bihar.

## Aircraft

Hindustan Aeronautics India Ltd. was formed by merging two aircraft factories at Bangalore and Kanpur. Four other factories are at Nasik, Hyderabad, Koraput (Orissa), Lucknow.

## Rubber Industry

Bareilly (UP), Baroda (Gujarat)-Synthetic Rubber Units, Mumbai, Ahmadabad, Amritsar- Reclaimed Rubber Units.

## NUCLEAR POWER STATIONS

Tarapur	-	Maharashtra,
Kalpakkam	-	Tamil Nadu, Called Indira Gandhi Nuclear Power Station
Narora	-	U.P.
Rawatbhata	-	Kota, Rajasthan
Kaiga	-	Karnataka
Kakrapara	-	Gujarat
Kundnkulam	-	(TN) Under construction with the assistance of Russia.

## MAJOR THERMAL POWER PLANTS

Power Plant	State
Neyveli	Tamil Nadu
Korba	Chhatisagarh
Obra	UP
Harduaganj	UP
Rihand	UP
Singrauli	UP
Parichha	UP
Talcher	Orissa
Farakka	West Bengal
Satpura	MP
Ramagundam	AP
Vindhyanchal	MP

## MAJOR RIVER VALLEY PROJECTS

<b>Bhakra Nangal Project</b>	On Satluj in Punjab. Highest in India. Height is 226 m. Reservoir is called Gobind Sagar Lake.
<b>Mandi Project</b>	ON Beas in HP.
<b>Chambal Valley Project</b>	On Chambal in MP & Rajasthan. 3 dams are there: Gandhi Sagar Dam, Rana Pratap Sagar Dam and Jawahar Sagar dam.
<b>Damodar Valley Project</b>	On Damodar in Bihar. Based on Tennessees Valley Project, USA.
<b>Hirakud</b>	On Mahanadi in Orissa. World's longest dam: 4801m
<b>Rihand</b>	On Son in Mirzapur. Reservoir is called Govind Vllabh Plant reservoir.
<b>Kosi Project</b>	On Kosi in Bihar.
<b>Mayurkashi Project</b>	On Mayurkashi in WB.
<b>Kakrapara Project</b>	On Tapti in Gujarat.
<b>Nizamsagar Project</b>	On Manjra in AP.
<b>Krishna Sagar Project</b>	On Krishan in AP.
<b>Tungabhadra</b>	On Tungabhadra in AP & Karnataka.
<b>Shivasamudram Project</b>	On Cauvery in Karnataka.
<b>Tata Hydel Scheme</b>	On Bhima in Maharashtra.
<b>Sharavathi Hydel Project</b>	On Jog Falls in Karnataka.
<b>Kundah &amp; Periyar Project</b>	In TN.
<b>Farakka Project</b>	On Ganga in WB. Apart from power and irrigation it helps to remove silt for easy navigation.
<b>Ukai Project</b>	On Tapti in Gujarat.
<b>Mahi Project</b>	On Mahi in Gujarat.
<b>Salal Project</b>	On Chenab in J&K.
<b>Mata Tila Multipurpose Project</b>	On Betwa in Up & MP.
<b>Thein Project</b>	On Ravi, Punjab.
<b>Pong Dam</b>	On Beas, Punjab.

## TRANSPORTATION IN INDIA

### RAILWAYS

- Indian railway system is the largest in Asia and the fourth largest in the world. It is the biggest departmental public undertaking in the country.
- The first train ran in India between Bombay and Thane, a stretch of 34 Kms on April 16, 1853. The Indian Railways celebrated its 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary on April 16, 2003. To commemorate the occasion, on 16th Jan, Shatabadi inter-city express trains were announced to be inducted.



- The second train ran between Howrah and Hooghly in 1854.
- The headquarters of Indian Railway is in New Delhi.
- The first electric train in India was 'Deccan Queen'. It was introduced in 1929 between Bombay and Poona.
- Indian Railways has the second biggest electrified system in the world after Russia.
- The fastest train in India is the Shatabdi Express whose maximum speed is 140 km/hr.
- The total route covered is approx. 63,000 km.
- The total number of railway stations in India is 7,100.
- The longest railway platform in India is at Kharagpur (W.B).
- Mumbai is the destination where maximum number of trains in India head for.
- The longest train route is of 'Himsagar Express' from Jammu Tavi to Kanyakumari. It covers a distance of 3,726 kms and passes through ten states.
- The first Metro Rail was introduced in Kolkata (W.Bengal) on Oct 24, 1984. The two stations connected were Dumdum and Belgachhia.
- The Indian Railways operate in three different gauges:
  1. Broad Gauge (Distance between rails is 1.67 m)
  2. Meter Gauge (Distance between rails is 1.00 m)
  3. Narrow Gauge (Distance between rails is 0.762 or 0.610 m)
- Indian railways are divided into 17 zone, headed by a General Manager who is responsible to the Railway Board, for all matters.

Railway Zone	Head Quarters
Central	Mumbai VT
Western	Mumbai Churchgate
Eastern	Kolkata
East Coast	Bhubaneswar
Northern	New Delhi
East Central	Jaipur
North Eastern	Gorakhpur
North Central	Allahabad
North-East Frontier	Maligaon- Guwahati
North Western	Jaipur
Southern	Chennai
South Western	Bangalore (Hubli)
South Central	Secunderabad
West Central	Jabalpur
South Eastern	Kolkata
South East Central	Bilaspur
West Coast	Trivandrum

- Northern Railway (NR) is the largest railway zone having length of 10,995 km.
- **Konkan Railways:** It is a project to shorten the distance between Maharashtra, Goa and Karnataka. The total route length is 786 km between Apta (Maharashtra) and Mangalore (Karnataka).

## RAILWAY MANUFACTURING UNITS

- **Chittaranjan Locomotive Works :** Located in Chittaranjan (W.B.) and manufactures electric engines.
- **Diesel Locomotive Works :** Located in Varanasi (UP) and manufactures diesel engines.
- **Integral Coach factory:** Located in Perambur (TN) and manufactures rail coaches.
- **Wheel and Axle Plant:** Located at Yalahaka (Bangalore, Karnataka) and manufactures wheels and axles.
- **Diesel component Work:** Located at Patiala (Punjab) and manufactures components of diesel engines.
- **Rail Coach Factory :** Located at Kapurthala (Punjab) and manufactures rail coaches.

## ROAD TRANSPORT

- India's road network is one of the largest in the world. The total length of roads is more than 33 lakh km.
- For the purpose of maintenance and construction, roads are classified into National Highways, State Highways, District Highways, Village Roads, Border Roads, etc.
- National highways are maintained by the Central Government, State highways by the respective State government while District highways by the respective District Board. Border roads and International highways are also the responsibility of Central Government.
- The present length of the National Highways in India is approx. 66,000 km. They constitute only 2% of the total road length and carries nearly 40% of the road traffic.
- Some of the important National Highways :
  - **NH 1 :** New Delhi-Ambala-Jalandhar-Amritsar.
  - **NH 2 :** Delhi-Mathura-Agra-Kanpur-Allahabad - Varanasi - Kolkata.
  - **NH 3 :** Agra - Gwalior - Nasik - Mumbai
  - **NH 4 :** Thane and Chennai via Pune and Belgaun.
  - **NH 5 :** Kolkata - Chennai
  - **NH 6 :** Kolkata - Dhule
  - **NH 7 :** Varanasi - Kanyakumari
  - **NH 8 :** Delhi - Mumbai (via Jaipur, Baroda and Ahmedabad)
  - **NH 9 :** Mumbai - Vijaywada
  - **NH 10 :** Delhi - Fazilka.
  - **NH 11 :** Agra - Bikaner
  - **NH 12 :** Jabalpur - Jaipur
  - **NH 24 :** Delhi - Lucknow
  - **NH 27 :** Allahabad - Varanasi
  - **NH 28 :** Barauni - Lucknow
  - **NH 29 :** Gorakhpur - Varanasi
  - **NH 56 :** Lucknow - Varanasi
- NH-7 is the longest highway of India.

## NOTE

**The Golden Quadrilateral Project** connecting the four Metropolitan cities of Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata covering a total distance of 5952 km is currently being processed. It is the first phase of the **National Highways Development Project (NHDP)**. As of 31 May 2006, 91.68% of the entire work has been completed with the final completion date set as December 2006, approximately two years behind schedule; this has been mainly due to issues with the various States about giving up land for the national highway. The **North South-East West Corridor (NS-EW)** is the largest ongoing expressway project in India. It is the second phase of the National Highways Development Project (NHDP), and consists of building 7300 kilometers of four/six lane expressways connecting Srinagar, Kanyakumari, Porbandar and Silchar. As of December 2005, 10.29% of the entire work has been completed, with the final completed, with the final completion date set as December 2009.

- Maharashtra has the maximum length of surfaced roads in India.

### AIR TRANSPORT

- J.R.D Tata was the first person to make a solo flight from Mumbai to Karachi in 1931.
- In 1935, the 'Tata Air Lines' started its operation between Mumbai and Tiruvananthapuram and in 1937 between Mumbai and Delhi.
- In 1953, all the private Airline companies were nationalised and Indian Airlines and Air India came into existence. Caters to the domestic circuit.
- Air India administers international flights while Indain Air lines.
- The two Airlines 'Indian Airlines' and 'Air India' merged into National Aviation company Ltd. in 1997.
- Vayudoot limited started in 1981 as a private air carrier and later on it merged with Indian Airlines.
- Pawan Hans limited operate helicopter support services to oil sector, hill stations and remote areas.
- A number of private airlines also operates in India. They are Jet Airways, Sahara, etc.
- The Civil Aviation Centre in Fursatgarh near Allahabad provided, among other things, ground training to the pilots.

### AIRPORTS IN INDIA

#### Main International airports in India.

1. Begumpet Airport, Hyderabad.
2. Calicut International Airport, Calicut.
3. Chatrapati Shivaji International Airport, Mumbai
4. Chennai International Airport, Chennai.
5. HAL Airport Bangalore.
6. Goa Airport in Vasco-da-Gama city Goa.
7. Lokpriya Gopinath Bordoloi International Airport, Guwahati

8. Indira Gandhi International Airport Delhi.
  9. Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose International Airport, Kolkata.
  10. Rja Sansi International Airport, Amritsar.
  11. Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel International Airport, Ahmedabad.
  12. Thiruvananthapuram International Airport, Thiruvananthapuram.
- The Indira Gandhi International Airport and the Chatrapati Shivaji International Airport handle more than half of the air traffic in South Asia. Besides these airports several other domestic airports are located in India.
  - In total, there are more than 334 (2002 est.) civilian airports in India – 238 with paved runways and 108 with unpaved runways.

### WATER TRANSPORT

- Most efficient, least costly and environment friendly means of transportation.
- The total length of navigable waterways in Indian comprising rivers, canals, backwaters, etc, is 14,500 km out of which 3700 km is navigable by mechanised boats.
- The government has recognised the following

#### National Waterways of India:

- |      |   |          |
|------|---|----------|
| NW 1 | Allahabad to Haldia                     | 1,629 km |
| NW 2 | Sadai to Dhubari (on Brahmaputra river) | 819 km   |
| NW 3 | Kollam to Kottapuraam                   | 186 km   |
| NW 4 | Kakinada to Marakkanam                  | 1,100 km |
- (Proposed) (along Godavari and Krishna river)

### PORT IN INDIA

- The Waterways Authority in India divide Indian ports into three categories: major, minor and intermediate.
- India has about 190 ports in all, with 13 major and the rest intermediate and minor.
- The 13 major ports are:

Port	State
Kolkata(including Haldia)	West Bengal
Paradip	Orissa
Vishakhapatnam	Andhra Pradesh
Ennore	Tamil Nadu
Chennai	Tamil Nadu
Tuticorin	Tamil Nadu
Cochin	Kerala
New Mangalore	Karnataka
Mormugao	Goa
Jawaharlal Nehru	Maharashtra
Mumbai	Maharashtra
Kandla	Gujarat
Port Blair	A&N

- All these ports are administered by the respective Port Trusts, except the newly constructed Ennore port which is under the Ennore Port Ltd. Company.

## **SALIENT FEATURES:**

### **KOLKATA PORT (including Haldia)**

Kolkata is a riverine port, located about 128 km from the Bay of Bengal on the banks of river Hoogly. Haldia was developed because excessive silting prevented the entry of large marine vessels in Kolkata.

### **PARADIP PORT**

Located on the Orissa coast along the Bay of Bengal. India exports raw iron to Japan from here.

### **VISHAKHAPATNAM PORT**

The deepest port, located in Andhra Pradesh. It serves the Bhilai and Rourkela steel plants.

### **CHENNAI PORT**

Oldest artificial harbour. This port ranks only second after Mumbai in terms of the traffic handling capacity.

### **ENNORE PORT**

Declared a major port in 2001. It is the first port with corporate participation. It has been provided with all the modern facilities for handling the thermal coal required for Tamil Nadu Electricity Board power station.

### **TUTICORIN PORT**

It came into existence during the reign of Pandya kings. It has an artificial deep sea harbour.

### **COCHIN PORT**

A fine natural harbour located on Kerala coasts. Handles the export of tea, coffee and spices and import of petroleum and fertilisers.

### **NEW MANGALORE PORT**

The 'Gateway of Karnataka'. Handles the export of iron-ore of Kudremukh.

### **MARMUGAO PORT**

It has a naval base. India's leading iron-ore port.

### **MUMBAI PORT**

A natural port. India's busiest. A new port, Nhava sheva, is being developed near Mumbai port.

### **JAWAHARLAL NEHRU PORT**

Occupies the 5<sup>th</sup> position in the world's faster growing ports.

### **KANDLA PORT**

Called the 'offspring of partition' as it was developed after the partition as a substitute of Karanchi port. It is a tidal and a free trade zone located in the Rann of Kutch.

## **MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION ON INDIA: NICK NAME OF IMPORTANT INDIAN PLACES**

NICK NAME	PLACE
Golden city	Amritsar
Manchester of India	Ahmedabad
City of seven islands	Mumbai
Queen of Arabian sea	Cochin
Space city	Bangalore
Garden city of India	Bangalore
Silicon valley of India	Bangalore
Electronic city of India	Bangalore
Pink city	Jaipur
Gateway of India	Mumbai
Twin city	Hyderabad-Sikandarabad
City of festivals	Madurai
Deccan queen	Pune
City of buildings	Kolkata
Dakshin Ganga	Godavari
Old Ganga	Godavari
Egg bowls of Asia	Andhra Pradesh
Soya region	Madhya Pradesh
Manchester of the South	Coimbatore
City of Nawabs	Lucknow
Venice of the east	Cochin
Sorrow of Bengal	Damodar river
Sorrow of Bihar	Kosi river
Blue mountains	Nilgiri
Queen of the mountains	Mussoorie (Uttaranchal)
Sacred river	Ganga
Hollywood of India	Mumbai
City of Castles	Kolkata
State of five river	Punjab
City of lakes	Srinagar
Steel city of India	Jamshedpur
City of temples	Varanasi
Mancheshter of North	Kanpur
City of rallies	New Delhi
Heaven of India	Jammu & Kashmir
Boston of India	Ahmedabad
Garden of spices of India	Kerala
Switzerland of India	Kashmir
Abode of the God	Prayag (Allahabad)
Pittsburg of India	Jamshedpur

### IMPORTANT INDIAN TOWNS ON RIVERS

Town	River
Allahabad	At the confluence of the Ganga and Yamuna
Patna	Ganga
Varanasi	Ganga
Kanpur	Ganga
Hardwar	Ganga
Badrinath	Alaknada
Agra	Yamuna
Delhi	Yamuna
Mathura	Yamuna
Ferozpur	Satluj
Ludhiana	Satluj
Srinagar	Jhelum
Lucknow	Gomti
Jaunpur	Gomti
Ayodhya	Saryu
Bareilly	Ram Ganga
Ahmedabad	Sabarmati
Kota	Chambal
Jabalpur	Narmada
Panji	Mandavi
Ujjain	Kshipra
Surat	Tapti
Jamshedpur	Swarnrekha
Dibrugarh	Brahmaputra
Guwahati	Brahmaputra
Kolkata	Hooghly
Sambalpur	Mahanadi
Cuttack	Mahanadi
Serirangapatnam	Cauvery
Hyderabad	Musi
Nasik	Godawari
Vijayvada	Krishna
Cumool	Tungabhadra
Tiruchirapalli	Cauvery

### FAMOUS HILL STATIONS OF INDIA

Hill stations	Height from sea level (m)	State
Gulberga	2250	J & K
Ooty	2290	Tamil Nadu
Shimla	2210	HP
Pahalgam	2200	J & K
Darjeeling	2135	West Bengal
Kodaikanal	2120	Tamil Nadu
Lansdowne	2120	Uttaranchal
Dalhousie	2035	HP
Mussoorie	2006	Uttaranchal
Mukteshwar	1975	Uttaranchal
Nainital	1940	Uttaranchal

Kasauli	1895	HP
Coonoor	1860	Tamil Nadu
Gangtok	1850	Sikkim
Manali	1830	HP
Ranikhet	1830	Uttaranchal
Ranchi	1800	Jharkhand
Srinagar	1770	J & K
Almora	1650	Uttaranchal
Shillong	1500	Meghalaya
Mahabaleshwar	1370	Maharashtra
Kalimpong	1250	West Bengal
Kullu valley	1200	HP
Mt. Abu	1220	Rajasthan

### TRIBAL GROUPS IN INDIA

Tribal groups	Found in
Abhors	North-East
Adivasis	M. P (Bastar distt.)
Angami	Manipur
Apatamis	Arunachal Pradesh
Badagas	Tamil Nadu
Baigas	MP
Bakkarwals	J & K
Bhils	MP & Rajasthan
Bhotias	Uttaranchal
Bhujia	MP
Bimors	MP & Bihar
Chang	North-East
Chenchus	AP and Orissa
Chutia	Assam
Gaddis	Himachal Pradesh
Gallong	North-East
Garos	Assam and Meghalaya
Gonds	MP
Gujjars	J & K and HP
Irula	Tamil Nadu
Jaintias	Meghalaya
Jarawas	Little Andamans
Kanikar	Tamil Nadu
Katkari	MP
Kharia	MP
Khond	MP
Khas	UP
Khasis	Assam and Meghalaya
Khonds	Orissa
Kol	MP
Kolam	AP
Kotas	Tamil Nadu
Kuki	Manipur
Lahaulas	Himachal Pradesh
Lepchas	Sikkim
Lushai	Tripura
Murias	MP

Tribal groups	Found in
Minas	Rajasthan
Moplahs	Kerala
Mundas	Bihar
Murias	MP
Nishi	North-East
Nagas	Nagaland
Oarons	Jharkhand and Orissa
Origes	Andaman & Nicobar
Pho	North East

Tribal groups	Found in
Santhals	WB, Orissa & Jharkhand
Sangtam	North-East
Sema	Nagaland
Sentinelese	Andaman & Nicobar
Shompens	Andaman & Nicobar
Todas	Tamil Nadu
Uralis	Kerala
Wancho	North-East
Warlis	Maharashtra

### INDIAN TOWNS ASSOCIATED WITH INDUSTRIES

Town	State	Industries
Ahmedabad	Gujarat	Cotton textiles
Agra	U.P.	Leather, Marble, Carpets
Aligarh	U.P.	Locks, Cutlery
Ankleshwar	Gujarat	Oil fields
Ambarnath	Maharashtra	Machine tools
Amritsar	Punjab	Woolen clothes
Anand	Gujarat	Milk and its products
Alwaye	Kerala	Fertilizer, Monazite factory
Ambala	Haryana	Scientific instruments
Bokaro	Jharkhand	Steel plant
Bangalore	Karnataka	Telephones, Aircraft Motors, Cotton Textiles, Toys
Batanagar	West Bengal	Shoes
Bareilly	U.P.	Resin industries, match factory
Bhilai	Chhatisgarh	Steel plant
Barauni	Bihar	Chemical fertilizer
Burnpur	West Bengal	Steel plant
Bhurkunda	Jharkhand	Glass Industries
Bhagalpur	Bihar	Silk Industries
Bhandara	Maharashtra	Explosives
Bhadravati	Karnataka	Iron & Steel
Bongaigaon	Assam	Petroleum
Bhadoi	U.P.	Carpets
Churk	M.P.	Cement
Cyberabad	Andhra Pradesh	Electronics, Computers, Information Technology
Chitranjan	West Bengal	Locomotive
Kolkata	West Bengal	Jute, Leather, Electric goods
Cochin	Kerala	Ship building, Coconut oil Rubber
Calicut	Kerala	Coffee, Coconut
Coimbatore	Tamil Nadu	Cotton industries
Dhariwal	Punjab	Woollen clothes
Durgam	West Bengal	Steel
Digboi	Assam	Petroleum
Delhi	Delhi	Textiles, Electronic, D.D.T.
Dalmianagar	Bihar	Cement
Darjeeling	West Bengal	Tea
Dindigul	Tamil Nadu	Cigar, Tobacco
Firozabad	M.P.	Bangle works
Guntur	Andhra Pradesh	Cotton Industries
Gwalior	M.P.	Pottery, Tobacco
Gomia	Jharkhand	Explosives
Hardwar	Uttaranchal	Heavy Electricals
Hatia	Jharkhand	Heavy Engineering Corporation



Halolia  
 Hazira  
 Jamshedpur  
 Jalandhar  
 Jharia  
 Jhansi  
 Jabalpur  
 Jainakot  
 Japla  
 Kanpur  
 Katni  
 Korba  
 Koyna  
 Koyali  
 Kolar  
 Kota  
 Kanchipuram  
 Karnal  
 Kandla  
 Khetri  
 Ludhiana  
 Lucknow  
 Chennai  
 Madurai  
 Mirzapur  
 Muradabad  
 Mathura  
 Mysore  
 Meerut  
 Mumbai  
 Modinagar  
 Moorie  
 Majhagaon  
 Nagpur  
 Nepanagar  
 Nasik  
 Neyveli  
 Nunamati  
 Narora  
 Nangal  
 Panna  
 Pinjora  
 Perambur  
 Pimpri  
 Raniganj  
 Rourkela  
 Rana Pratap Sagar  
 Renukoote  
 Roopnarayanpur  
 Rishikesh  
 Saharanpur

West Bengal  
 Gujarat  
 Jharkhand  
 Punjab  
 Rajashtan  
 Jharkhand  
 Madhya Pradesh  
 Jammu & Kashmir  
 Jharkahand  
 U.P.  
 M.P.  
 Chattisgarh  
 Maharashtra  
 Gujarat  
 Karnataka  
 Rajasthan  
 Tamil Nadu  
 Haryana  
 Gujarat  
 Rajasthan  
 Punjab  
 U.P.  
 Tamil Nadu  
 Tamil Nadu  
 U.P.  
 U.P.  
 U.P.  
 Karnataka  
 U.P.  
 Maharashtra  
 U.P.  
 Jharkhand  
 Maharashtra  
 Maharashtra  
 Madhya Pradesh  
 Maharashtra  
 Tamil Nadu  
 Assam  
 U.P.  
 Punjab  
 M.P.  
 Haryana  
 Tamil Nadu  
 Maharashtra  
 W. Bengal  
 Orissa  
 Rajasthan  
 U.P.  
 W. Bengal  
 Uttaranchal  
 U.P.

Chemical fertilizer  
 Artificial Rayon  
 Iron & Steel, Locomotives, Railway coaches  
 Surgical goods and Sports articles  
 Cloth printing, Brass  
 Coal mines  
 Bidi industry  
 H.M.T. Watch  
 Cement  
 Cotton and Woolen mills, Leather, Sugar  
 Cement  
 Aluminium factory, Thermal Plant  
 Aluminium factory  
 Petrochemical industries  
 Gold mining centre  
 Atomic Power Plant  
 Silk clothes  
 Dairy products  
 Chemical fertiliser, Famous port  
 Copper industries  
 Hosiery  
 Embroidery work, Chicken work  
 Leather, Cigarette, Integral coach factory  
 Cotton and Silk Weaving  
 Carpet, Pottery, Brass industries  
 Brassware, cutlery  
 Oil refinery  
 Sandalwood oil, Silk goods  
 Publication work, Sports goods, Scissors making  
 Cinema industries, Cotton textiles  
 Nylon thread  
 Aluminium  
 Ship building  
 Cotton mills, Oranges  
 News print  
 Security Printing Press  
 Lignite industries  
 Oil refineries  
 Atomic Power Plant  
 Fertilisers  
 Diamond mining  
 Hindustan Machines Tools  
 Integral coach factory  
 Penicillin factory  
 Coal mining  
 Steel Plant, Chemical fertiliser  
 Hydro Power Plant  
 Aluminium Plant  
 Cables  
 Antibiotic Plant  
 Cigarette factory, News print

Sindri  
Srinagar  
Surat  
Surajpur  
Suratgarh  
Singhbhum  
Singreni  
Salem  
Samastipur  
Tarapur  
Titagarh  
Thiruvananthapuram  
Trombay  
Tiruchirappalli  
Tirupati  
Tanjore  
Thumba  
Vijaypur  
Vijaynagar  
Vishakhapatnam  
Varanasi  
Worli  
Zainkot

Jharkhand  
Jammu & Kashmir  
Gujarat  
Haryana  
Rajasthan  
Jharkhand  
Andhra Pradesh  
Tamil Nadu  
Bihar  
Maharashtra  
W. Bengal  
Kerala  
Maharashtra  
Tamil Nadu  
Andhra Pradesh  
Tamil Nadu  
Kerala  
M.P.  
Karnataka  
A.P.  
U.P.  
Maharashtra  
J&K

Chemical fertilizers  
Woollen shawls, Silk, Woodwork  
Cotton Textiles, Diamond cutting  
Cement factory  
Agricultural instruments  
Copper, Iron  
Coal mining  
Iron and Steel  
Jute, Paper, Sugar, Tobacco  
Atomic Power Plant  
Paper, Jute  
Coir matting  
Oil refinery  
Ciger  
Scooter  
Silk clothes  
Rocket launching station  
Fertilizers  
Steel Plant  
Ship building, Iron and Steel, Oil refinery  
Rail Engines and Sari industries  
Baby food  
HMT Watches

### **LARGEST, LONGEST, HIGHEST AND SMALLEST IN INDIA**

Longest river  
The longest tributary river of India  
The longest river of the South  
Highest mountain peak  
Largest Lake (Fresh water)  
Highest Dam  
Largest Mosque  
Longest Road  
State with longest coastline  
Longest railway route  
Longest tunnel  
Longest National Highway  
Longest Dam  
Longest River Bridge  
Longest Populated City  
Largest Museum  
Largest Delta  
Largest Dome  
Largest Zoo  
Largest man-made Lake  
Largest Desert  
Highest Tower  
Smallest State (Area)  
Smallest State (Population)  
Highest Waterfall  
Densest Populated State  
Longest Electric railway line  
Longest cave temple  
Largest animal fair  
Highest Gateway

Ganga  
Yamuna  
Godavari  
Godwin Austin (K<sub>2</sub>)  
Wular lake (Kashmir)  
Bhakra Dam (Punjab)  
Jama Masjid (Delhi)  
Grand Trunk Road  
Gujarat  
Dibrugarh to Kanya Kumari  
Jawahar tunnel (Jammu & Kashmir) (Road)  
NH-7 which runs from Varanasi to Kanyakumari  
Hirakund Dam (Orissa)  
Mahatma Gandhi Setu, Patna  
Mumbai (1.60 core)  
National Museum, Kolkata  
Sunderban Delta, W. Bengal  
Gol Gumbaz, Bijapur (Karnataka)  
Zoological gardens, Alipur, Kolkata  
Govind Sagar (Rihand Dam)  
Thar (Rajasthan)  
Pitampura Tower, Delhi  
Goa  
Sikkim  
Gersoppa Waterfall (Karnataka)  
W. Bengal  
From Delhi to Kolkata via Patna  
Kailash temple, Ellora (Maharashtra)  
Sonapur (Bihar)  
Buland Darwaza, Fatehpur Sikri (Agra)

Biggest Hotel  
 Largest State (Area)  
 Largest State (Population)  
 Place of heaviest rainfall  
 Largest corridor  
 Largest cantilever span bridge  
 Largest forest state  
 Highest straight gravity Dam  
 Longest Railway Platform  
 Largest Stadium  
 Largest Port  
 Highest Lake  
 Largest Lake (saline water)  
 Highest Award  
 Highest Gallantry Award  
 Largest Gurudwara  
 Deepest river valley  
 State with longest coastline of South India  
 Longest river which forms estuary  
 Largest Church  
 Longest Beach  
 Highest Battle field  
 Highest Airport  
 Largest river island  
 Largest Planetarium

Oberai-Sheraton (Mumbai)  
 Rajasthan  
 Uttar Pradesh  
 Mawsinram (Meghalaya)  
 Rameshwaram temple corridor (Tamil Nadu)  
 Howrah bridge (Kolkata)  
 M.P.  
 Bharkra Dam  
 Gorakhpur (New) U.P.  
 Salt lake (Yuva Bharti), Kolkata  
 Mumbai  
 Devatal (Garhwal)  
 Chilka lake, Orissa  
 Bharat Ratna  
 Paramveer Chakra  
 Golden Temple, Amritsar  
 Bhagirathi & Alaknanda  
 Andha Pradesh  
 Narmada  
 Saint Cathedral (Goa)  
 Marina Beach, Chennai  
 Siachin Glacier  
 Leh (Laddakh)  
 Majuli (Brahmaputra river, Assam)  
 Birla Planetarium (Kolkata)

#### IMPOTANT MONUMENTS OF INDIA

Name	Place	Built by
Ajanta-Ellora Caves	Aurangabad (Maharashtra)	Gupta rulers
Aram Bagh	Agra (U.P.)	Babur
Agra Fort	Agra (U.P.)	Akbar
Akbar's Mausoleum	Sikandra (U.P.)	Akbar
Itmad-ud-daula Fort	Agra (U.P.)	Noorjahan
Anand Bhawan	Allahabad (U.P.)	Motilal Nehru
Bada Imambara	Lucknow (U.P.)	Asaf-ud-daula
Bharatpur Fort	Bharatpur (Raj.)	Raja Surajmal Singh
Bibi Ka Maqbara	Aurangabad (Maharashtra)	Aurangzeb
Char Minar	Hyderabad (A.P.)	Quli Qutub Shah
Charar-e-Sharif	Jammu & Kashmir	Zainul Abedin
Chhota Imambara	Lucknow (U.P.)	Muhammad Ali Shah
Dargah Ajmer Sharif	Ajmer (Raj.)	Sultan Shyasuddin
Dilwara's Jain Temple	Mount Abu (Raj.)	Siddharaja
Deewan-e-Khas	Agra fort (U.P.)	Shahjahan
Adhai Din Ka Jhopra	Ajmer (Raj.)	Qutubuddin Aibak
Elephanta's Cave	Mumbai (Mah.)	Rashtrakuta rulers
Fatehpur Sikri	Agra (U.P.)	Akbar
Ferozshah Kotla	Delhi	Ferozshah Tughlaq

Gol Ghar	Patna (Bihar)	British Govt.
Gateway of India	Mumbai (Mah.)	British Govt.
Hauz Khas	Delhi	Alauddin Khilji
Hawa Mahal	Jaipur (Raj.)	Maharaja Pratap Singh
Humayun's Tomb	Delhi	Humayun's wife
Jama Masjid	Agra (U.P.)	Shajahan
Jama Masjid	Delhi	Shah Jahan
Jagannath Temple	Puri (Orissa)	Anantvarman Ganga
Jantar-Mantar	Delhi	Sawai Jai Singh
Jaigarh Fort	Jaipur	Sawai Jai Singh
Jim Corbett Park	Nainital (U.P.)	Sri Malcom Hailey
Jodhpur Fort	Jodhpur (Raj.)	Rao Jodhaji
Kanheri's Fort	Mumbai (Mah.)	Buddhists
Khirki Masjid	Delhi	Ghyasuddin Tughlaq
Lal Bagh	Bangalore	Hyder Ali
Lakshmi Narayan Temple	Delhi	Birla Family
Makka Masjid	Hyderabad	Quli Qutub Shah
Moti Masjid	Agra Fort (U.P.)	Shah Jahan
Moti Masjid	Delhi Fort	Aurangzeb
Nahargarh Fort	Jaipur (Raj.)	Sawai Jai Singh
Nishat Garden	Srinagar (J&K)	Asaf Ali
Purana Qila	Delhi	Shershah Suri
President House	Delhi	British Govt.
Pather ki Masjid	Patna (Bihar)	Pervez Shah
Qutub Minar	Delhi	Qutub-uddin aibak
Red Fort	Delhi	Shah Jahan
Safdar Jung Tomb	Delhi	Shuja-ud-daula
Sabarmati Ashram	Ahmadabad (Guj.)	Mahatma Gandhi
Shantiniketan	West Bengal	Rabindrar Nath Tagore
Shish Mahal	Agra (U.P.)	Shah Jahan
Sher Shan's Tomb	Sasaram (Bihar)	Sher Shah's son
Saint George Fort	Chennai (T.N.)	East India Company
Shalimar Garden	Srinagar (J & K)	Jahangir
Sati Bui	Mathura (U.P.)	Raja Bhagwan Das
Sun Temple	Konark (Orissa)	Narsimhadeva-I
Swarna Mandir	Amritsar (PUN.)	Guru Ramdas
Tajmahal	Agra (U.P.)	Shah Jahan
Vellure Math	Kolkata (W.B.)	Swami Vivekanand
Victoria Memorial	Kolkata (W.B.)	British Govt.
Vishnupad Temple	Gaya (Bihar)	Rani Ahiliabai
Vijaya Stambha	Chittorgarh (Raj.)	Maharana kumbha

**POLITY**



## Contents

S. No.	Chapter	Page. No.
1.	Historical Background	1-2
2.	Making of the constitution	3-3
3.	Sailent Features of the Constitution	4-6
4.	Preamble to the Constitution	7-8
5.	The union and its Territory	9-9
6.	Citizenship	10-11
7.	Fundamental Rights	12-14
8.	Directive Principles of State Policy	15-15
9.	Fundamental Duties	16-16
10.	Union Executive	17-22
11.	The Parliament	23-26
12.	Judiciary in India	27-28
13.	The State Executive and the State Legislature	29-31
14.	Commissions	32-33
15.	Important Articles of the Constitution	34-34
16.	Important amendments of the Constitution	35-35
17.	Prime Ministers	36-37
18.	Presidents	38-39
19.	Multiple Choice Questions	40-47

## HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

### REGULATING ACT, 1773

- ✓ Subjected the company's actions to the supervision of the British Govt.
- ✓ End of dual government.
- ✓ Government of Bengal to be the Governor-general of British territories of India.
- ✓ Establishment of Supreme court in Calcutta.
- ✓ The servants of the company were forbidden to engage in private trade, accept presents or bribes, etc.

### PITTS ACT OF 1784

- ✓ The commercial and political activities of the company were now separated. Board of control of six members (including two cabinet ministers) set-up to guide and supervise the affairs of the company in India.
- ✓ Three members will be there in Governor-general's executive council.
- ✓ Madras and Bombay presidencies were subordinated to the Governor-general-in-council of Bengal in all matters.
- ✓ This act gave the British Government a measure of control over the company's affairs. In fact, the company became a subordinate department of the state.

### CHARTER ACT OF 1793

- ✓ Expenses and salaries of the board of control to be charged on Indian revenue.
- ✓ The Governor-general and the Governors could now over-ride the decisions of their respective councils.
- ✓ All laws were to be translated in Indian languages.
- ✓ It laid the foundation of government by written laws, interpreted by courts.

### CHARTER ACT OF 1813

- ✓ Company deprived of its trade monopoly in India except in tea and trade with China. This made the company more of an administrative body. All Englishmen could trade with India subject to few restrictions.
- ✓ Further, Christian missionaries were also permitted to come to India and preach their religion.

### CHARTER ACT OF 1833

- ✓ End of company's monopoly even in tea and trade with China. Company was asked to close its commercial business at the earliest.
- ✓ All restrictions on European immigration into

Indian and acquisition of land and property in India by them were removed, legalizing European colonization of India.

- ✓ Governor General of Bengal to be Governor-general of India; all powers, administrative and financial, were centralized in the hands of the Governor-General-in-council. (The Governor general of India- lord William Bentinck)
- ✓ President of board of control became the minister for Indian affairs.
- ✓ A law member (without power to vote) was added to the executive council of the Governor-general. (Macaulay was the first law member). This increased the council's strength to four.
- ✓ A law commission was constituted for codification of laws.
- ✓ The Act threw open to all, irrespective of religion, place of birth, descent and color, services under the company.

### CHARTER ACT OF 1853

- ✓ The number of members of the court of directors was reduced from 24 to 18 of which 6 were to be nominated by the crown.
- ✓ Legislation was treated for the first time as separate from executive functions.
- ✓ Recruitment to Civil Services was based on open annual competition examination (excluding Indians)

### INDIAN COUNCIL ACT, (1909) OR MORLEY-MINTO REFORMS

- ✓ Morley was the Secretary of State, while Minto was the Indian Viceroy.
- ✓ Legislative councils, both at the Centre and in the Provinces, were expanded.
- ✓ With regard to Central Government, an Indian member was taken in the Executive council of the Governor General. The size of the Provincial Legislative councils were enlarged by including elected non-official members so that the official majority was gone. Their functions were also increased. Now, they could move resolutions on Budget and on some matters of public matters.
- ✓ An element of election was also introduced in the Central Legislative Council.
- ✓ The most notable and retrograde change introduced was that Muslims were given separate representation. Thus, communal representation was introduced.

## GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, (1919) OR MONTAGUE CHELMSFORD REFORMS

- ✓ Diarchy system introduced in the provinces. It was considered to be a substantial step towards transfer of power to the Indians. The provincial subjects of administration were to be divided into two categories: Transferred and reserved. The transferred subjects were to be administered by the Government with the aid of ministers responsible to the Legislative Council. The Government and the Executive Council were to administer the reserved subjects without any responsibility to the legislature.
- ✓ Devolution Rules: Subjects of administration were divided into two categories-Central and Provincial. Subjects of all India importance (like railways and finance) were brought under the category of Central, while matters relating to the administration of the provinces were classified as Provincial.
- ✓ The provincial Legislature was to consist of one House only (Legislative Council).
- ✓ The number of Indians in the Governor General's Executive Council was raised to three in a Council of eight. The Indian members were entrusted with departments such as Law, Education, Labour, Health and industries.
- ✓ The centre was now to have a bicameral Legislature for the first time. It actually happened after 1935 Act.
- ✓ Communal representation extended to Sikhs, Christians, Anglo Indians, etc.
- ✓ Secretary of State to be henceforth paid salary out of the British revenue.

## GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT 1935

- ✓ Provided for the establishment of All-India Federation consisting of the British province and the Princely States. The joining of Principle States was voluntary and as a result the federation did not come into existence.
- ✓ Diarchy was introduced at the Centre (e.g., Department of Foreign Affairs and Defence were reserved for the Governor-general). The other

Federal subjects were to be administered by the Governor-general with the assistance and advice of a Council of Ministers to be chosen by him (but to include representatives of Princely States and minorities, and to be responsible to the Central Legislature). Residuary powers were to be with the Governor-general only.

- ✓ The Federal Legislature (Central Legislature) was to have two chambers (bicameral) - the council of State and the federal assembly. The council of states was to be a permanent body with one-third of its membership being vacated after every two years. The federal assembly's duration was fixed for five years.

- ✓ It made a 3-fold division of powers: Federal (Central) Legislative List, Provincial legislative List and the Concurrent Legislative list. Residuary legislative powers were subject to the discretion of the Governor-general. Even if a bill was passed by the Federal Legislature, the Governor-general could veto it, while even Acts assented to by the governor General could be disallowed by the King-in-Council.

- ✓ Provincial autonomy replaced Dyarchy in provinces i.e., the distinction between reserved and Transferred subject was abolished and full responsible Government was established, subject to certain safeguard. They were granted separate legal identity.

- ✓ The Governor was the head of the provincial executive and was expected to be guided by the advice of the popular ministries. However, the Act gave arbitrary powers to the Governors to act in their 'discretion' in certain matters.

- ✓ The Act also provided for a Federal Court (which was established in 1937), with original and appellate powers) to interpret the constitution. A Federal Bank (the Reserve Bank of India) was also established. The Indian council of Secretary of State was abolished.

- ✓ Principle of separate electorate was extended to include Anglo Indians, Indian Christians and Europeans.

## MAKING OF THE CONSTITUTION

- ✓ It was in 1934 that the idea of a Constituent Assembly for India was put forward for the first time by M.N. Roy.
- ✓ In 1935, the Indian National Congress (INC), for the first time, officially demanded a Constituent Assembly to frame the Constitution of India.
- ✓ The demand was finally accepted in principle by the British Government in what is known as the 'August Offer' of 1940.

### COMPOSITION OF THE CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

The Constituent Assembly was constituted in November 1946 under the scheme formulated by the Cabinet Mission Plan. The features of the scheme were:

1. The total strength of the Constituent Assembly was to be 389. Of these, 296 seats were to be allotted to British India and 93 seats to the Princely States. Out of 296 seats allotted to the British India, 292 members were to be drawn from the eleven government's provinces and four from the four chief commissioners' provinces, one from each.
2. Each province and princely state (or group of states in case of small states) were to be allotted seats in proportion to their respective population. Roughly, one seat was to be allotted for every million population.
3. Seats allocated to each British province were to be decided among the three principal communities—Muslims, Sikhs and general (all except Muslims and Sikhs), in proportion to their population.
4. The representatives of each community were to be elected by members of that community in the provincial legislative assembly and voting was to be by the method of proportional representation by means of single transferable vote.
5. The representatives of princely states were to be nominated by the heads of the princely states.

### WORKING OF THE CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

- ✓ The Constituent Assembly held its first meeting on December 9, 1946.
- ✓ The meeting was attended by only 211 members. Dr Sachchidanand Sinha, the oldest member, was elected as the temporary President of the Assembly following the French practice.
- ✓ Later, on December 11, 1946, Dr Rajendra Prasad and H C M Mukherjee were elected as the President and Vice-President of the Assembly respectively.

- ✓ Sir B N Rau was appointed as the Constitutional advisor to the Assembly.

### Objectives Resolution

On December 13, 1946, Jawaharlal Nehru moved the historic 'Objectives Resolution' in the Assembly. It laid down the fundamentals and philosophy of the constitutional structure. It read:

This Resolution was unanimously adopted by the Assembly on January 22, 1947.

### Other Main Points

1. The national flag was adopted on July 22, 1947.
  2. It adopted the national anthem on January 24, 1950.
  3. It adopted the national song on January 24, 1950.
  4. It elected Dr. Rajendra Prasad as the first President of India on January 24, 1950.
  5. In all, the Constituent Assembly had 11 sessions over two years, 11 months had 18 days.
  6. The Constitution-makers had gone through the constitutions of about 60 countries, and the Draft Constitution was considered for 114 days.
  7. The total expenditure incurred on making the Constitution amounted to Rs 64 lakh.
  8. On January 24, 1950, the Constituent Assembly held its final session. It, however, did not end, and continued as the provisional Parliament of India from January 26, 1950 till the formation of new Parliament after the first general elections in 1951-52.
- Constituent Assembly framed 13 important committees for framing the constituent. The most important committee was 'Drafting Committee'.

### Drafting Committee

Among all the committees of the Constituent Assembly, the most important committee was the Drafting Committee set up on August 29, 1947. It was this committee that was entrusted with the task of preparing a draft of the new Constitution. It consisted of seven members.

They were:

1. Dr B. R. Ambedkar (Chirman).
2. N. Gopalaswamy Ayyangar.
3. Alladi Krishnawamy Ayyar.
4. Dr K. M. Munshi.
5. Syed Mohammad Saadullah.
6. N. Madhava Rau. (He replaced B. L. Mittal who resigned due to ill-health.)
7. T. T. Krishnamachari. (He replaced D.P. Khaitan who died in 1948.)

The salient features of the Constitution, as it stands today, are as follows:

### 1. Longest Written Constitution

Constitutions are classified into written form, like the American Constitution, or unwritten form, like the British Constitution. The Constitution of India is the longest of all the written Constitutions of the world. It is a very comprehensive, elaborate and detailed document.

### 2. Drawn From Various Sources

The Constitution of India has borrowed most of its provisions from the constitutions of various other countries.

Provision	Source
Parliamentary form of Govt.	UK
Rule of Law	UK
Fundamental Rights	U.S.A
Republic	French
Fundamental duties	Former USSR
Directive principles of state policy	Ireland
Method of election of president	Ireland
Concurrent list	Australia
Process to amend the Constitution	South Africa
Single citizenship	Britain (U.K.)
Federation with strong centre	Canada

### 3. Blend of Rigidity and Flexibility

Constitutions are also classified into rigid and flexible. A rigid Constitution is one that requires a special procedure for its amendment, as for example, the American Constitution. A flexible constitution, on the other hand, is one that can be amended in the same manner as the ordinary laws are made, as for example, the British Constitution.

The Constitution of India is neither rigid nor flexible but a synthesis of both.

### 4. Federal System with Unitary Bias

The Constitution of India establishes a federal system of government. It contains all the usual features of a federation, viz., two governments, division of powers, written Constitution, supremacy of Constitution, rigidity of Constitution, independent judiciary and bicameralism.

However, the Indian Constitution also contains a large number of unitary or non-federal features, viz., a strong Centre, single Constitution, single citizenship, flexibility of Constitution, integrated judiciary, appointment of State Governor by the Centre, all-India services, emergency provisions, and so on.

### 5. Parliamentary Form of Government

The Constitution of India has opted for the British parliamentary System of Government rather than American Presidential System of Government. The parliamentary system is based on the principle of cooperation and co-ordination between the legislative and executive organs while the presidential system is based on the doctrine of separation of powers between the two organs.

### 6. Synthesis of Parliamentary Sovereignty and Judicial Supremacy

The doctrine of sovereignty of Parliament is associated with the British Parliament while the principle of Judicial Supremacy is associated with that of the American Supreme Court.

Just as the Indian Parliamentary System differs from the British system, the scope of Judicial review power of the Supreme Court in India is narrower than that of what exists in US. This is because the American Constitution provides for 'due process of law' against that of 'procedure established by law' contained in the Indian Constitution (Article 21).

### 7. Integrated and Independent Judiciary

The Indian Constitution establishes a Judicial System that is integrated as well as independent.

The Supreme Court stands at the top of the integrated Judicial System in the country. Below it, there are High Courts at the state level. Under a high court, that is, district courts and other lower courts. This single system of courts enforces both the central laws as well as the state law, where the federal laws are enforced by the Federal Judiciary and the state laws are enforced by the State Judiciary.

### 8. Fundamental Rights

Part III of the Indian Constitution guarantees six fundamental rights to all the citizens:

- Right to Equality (Articles 14-18).
- Right to Freedom (Articles 19-22).
- Right against Exploitation (Articles 23-24).
- Right to Freedom of Religion (Articles 25-28).



(e) Cultural and Educational Rights (Articles 29-28),

(f) Right to Constitution Remedies (Articles 32).

The Fundamental Rights are meant for promoting the idea of political democracy.

### 9. Directive Principles of State Policy.

According to Dr B R Ambedkar, the Directive Principles of State Policy is a 'novel feature' of the Indian Constitution. They are enumerated in Part IV of the Constitution. They can be classified into three broad categories- Socialistic, Gandhian and liberal-intellectual.

The directive principles are meant for promoting the ideal of social and economic democracy. The seek to establish a 'welfare state' in India.

### 10. Fundamental Duties

The original Constitution did not provide for the fundamental duties of the citizens. These were added during the operation of internal emergency (1975-77) by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Constitution Amendment Act of 1976 on the recommendation of the Swaran Singh Committee. The 86<sup>th</sup> Constitutional Amendment Act of 2002 added one more fundamental duty.

### 11. A Secular State

The Constitution of India stands for a Secular State. Hence, it does not uphold any particular religion as the official religion of the Indian State. The following provisions of the Constitution reveal the secular characters of the India State:

- (a) The term 'Secular' was added to the Preamble of the Indian Constitution by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Constitution amendment Act of 1976.
- (b) The Preamble secures to all citizens of India liberty of belief, faith and worship.
- (c) The State shall not deny to any person equality before the law or equal protection of the laws (Article 14).
- (d) The State shall not discriminate against any citizen on the ground of religion (Article 15).
- (e) Equality of opportunity for all citizens in matters of public employment (Article 16).
- (f) All persons are equally entitled to freedom of conscience and the right to freely profess, practice and propagate any religion (Article 25).
- (g) Every religious denomination or any of its section shall have the right to manage its religious affairs (Article 26).
- (h) No person shall be compelled to pay any taxes for the promotion of a particular religion (Article 27).
- (i) No religious instruction shall be provided in any educational institution maintained by the

State (Article 28).

- (j) Any section of the citizens shall have the right to conserve its distinct language, script or culture (Article 29).
- (k) All minorities shall have the right to establish and administer educational institutions of their choice (Article 30).
- (l) The State shall endeavour to secure for all the citizens a Uniform Civil Code (Article 44).

### 12. Universal Adult Franchise

The Indian Constitution adopts universal adult franchise as a basis of elections to the Lok Sabha and the State Legislative Assemblies. Every citizen who is not less than 18 years of age has a right to vote without any discrimination of caste, race, religion, sex, literacy, wealth, and so on. The voting age was reduced to 18 years from 21 years in 1989 by the 61<sup>st</sup> Constitutional Amendment Act of 1988.

### 13. Single Citizenship

Though the Indian Constitution is federal and envisages a dual polity (Centre and States), it provides for only a single citizenship, that is, the Indian citizenship.

In countries like USA, on the other hand, each person is not only a citizen of USA but also a citizen of the particular State to which he belongs. Thus, he owes allegiance to both and enjoys dual sets of rights- one conferred by the National government and another by the State government.

In India, all citizens irrespective of the State in which they are born or reside enjoy the same political and civil rights of citizenship all over the country and no discrimination is made between them excepting a few cases like tribal areas, Jammu Kashmir, and so one.

### 14. Independent Bodies

The Indian Constitution not only provides for the Legislative, Executive and Judicial organs of the government (Central and State) but also establishes certain independent bodies. They are envisaged by the Constitution as the bulwarks of the Democratic System of Government in India. These are:

- (a) Election Commission to ensure free and fair elections to the Parliament, the State Legislatures, the office of President of India and the office of Vice-president of India.
- (b) Comptroller and Auditor-General of India to audit the accounts of the Central and State government. He acts as the guardian of public purse and comments on the legality and propriety of government expenditure.

- (c) Union Public Service Commission to conduct examinations for recruitment to all-India services<sup>15</sup> and higher Central Services and to advise the President on disciplinary matters.
- (d) State Public Service Commission in every state to conduct examinations for recruitment to State Services and to advise the Governor on disciplinary matters.

The Constitution ensures the independence of these bodies through various provisions like security of tenure, fixed service conditions, expenses being charged on the Consolidates Fund of India, and so on.

### 15. Emergency Provisions

The Indian constitution contains elaborate emergency provisions to enable the President to meet any extraordinary situation effectively. The rationality behind the incorporation of these provisions is to safeguard the Sovereignty, unity, integrity and security of the country, the Democratic political system and the Constitution.

The Constitution envisages three types of emergencies, namely:

- (a) National emergency on the ground of war or external aggression or armed rebellion<sup>16</sup> (Article 352).
- (b) State emergency (President's Rule) on the

ground of failure of Constitutional machinery in the States (Article 356) or failure to comply with the directions of the Centre (Article 365); and

- (c) Financial emergency, the Central Government becomes all-powerful and the States go into the total control of the centre. It converts the federal structure into a unitary one without a formal amendment of the Constitution.

### 16. Three-tier Government

Originally, the Indian Constitution, like any other federal constitution, provided for a dual polity and contained provisions with regard to the organization and powers of the Centre and the States. Later, the 73<sup>rd</sup> and 74<sup>th</sup> Constitutional Amendment Acts (1992) have added a third tier of government (i.e., local) which is not found in any other Constitution of the world.

The 73<sup>rd</sup> Amendment Act of 1992 gave Constitutional recognition to the Panchayats (rural local governments) by adding a new part IX and a new Schedule 11 to the Constitution. Similarly, the 74<sup>th</sup> Amendment Act of 1992 gave constitutional recognition to the municipalities (Urban local governments) by adding a new Part IX-A and a new Schedule 12 to the Constitution.

## PREAMBLE TO THE CONSTITUTION

It is a preface or the introduction of the Constitution. It is not an integral part of Constitution. The interpretation of Constitution is based on the spirit of preamble.

The Preamble of the Indian Constitution is based on the 'Objectives Resolution', drafted and moved by Pandit Nehru, are adopted by the Constituent Assembly<sup>1</sup>. It has been amended by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Constitutional Amendment Act (1976), which added three new words-Socialist, Secular and Integrity.

### TEXT OF THE PREAMBLE

"We, THE PEOPLE OF India, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a SOVEREIGN SOCIALIST SECULAR DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC and to secure to all its citizens:

JUSTICE, Social, Economic and Political:

LIBERTY of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;

EQUALITY of status and of opportunity; and to promote among them all;

FRATERNITY assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity and integrity of the Nation.

IN OUR CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do HEREBY ADOPT, ENACT AND GIVE TO OURSELVES THIS CONSTITUTION",

### KEY WORDS IN THE PREAMBLE

#### 1. Sovereign

The word 'sovereign' implies that India is neither a dependency nor a dominion of any other nation, but an independent State. There is no authority above it, and it is free to conduct its own affairs (both internal and external).

Being a Sovereign State, Indian can either acquire a foreign territory or cede a part of its territory in favour of a foreign state.

#### 2. Socialist

Even before the term was added by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Amendment in 1976, the Constitution had a Socialist content in the form of certain Directive Principles of State Policy. In other words, what was hitherto implicit in the Constitution has now been made explicit. Moreover, the Congress party itself adopted a resolution to establish a 'socialistic pattern of society' in its Avadi session as early as in 1955 and took measures accordingly.

Notably, the Indian brand of Socialism is a

'Democratic Socialism' and not a 'Communist Socialism' (also known as 'State Socialism') which involves the nationalization of all means of production and distribution and the abolition of private property. Democratic socialism, on the other hand, holds faith in a 'mixed economy' where both Public and Private sectors co-exist side by side. As the Supreme Court says, 'Democratic Socialism aims to end poverty, ignorance, disease and inequality of opportunity. Indian Socialism is a blend of Marxism and Gandhism, leaning heavily towards Gandhian Socialism'.

#### 3. Secular

The term 'secular' too was added by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Constitutional Amendment Act of 1976. However, as the Supreme Court said in 1974, although the words 'Secular State' were not expressly mentioned in the Constitution there can be no doubt that Constitution-makers wanted to establish such a State and accordingly Articles 25 to 28 (guaranteeing the fundamental right to freedom of religion) have been included in the Constitution.

The Indian Constitution embodies the positive concept of secularism i.e., all religions in our country (irrespective of their strength) have the same status and support from the state<sup>10</sup>.

#### 4. Democratic

A Democratic polity, as stipulated in the preamble, is based on the doctrine of popular Sovereignty, that is, possession of supreme power by the people.

The Indian Constitution provides for representative Parliamentary Democracy under which the Executive is responsible to the Legislative for all its policies and actions. Universal adult franchise, periodic elections, rule of law, independence of Judiciary, and absence of discrimination on certain grounds are the manifestations of the democratic character of the Indian polity.

The term 'Democracy' is used in the preamble in the broader sense embracing not only Political democracy but also Social and Economic democracy.

#### 5. Republic

A Democratic Polity can be classified into two categories-Monarchy and Republic. In a Monarchy, the head of the state (usually king or queen) enjoys a hereditary position, that is, he comes into office through succession, eg, Britain. In a Republic, on the other hand, the head of the State is always elected, directly or indirectly for a fixed period, eg, USA.

Therefore, the term 'Republic' in our Preamble indicates that India has an elected head called the President. He is elected indirectly for a fixed period of five years.

A Republic also means two more things: one vesting of Political Sovereignty in the people and not in a single individual like a king; second, the absence of any privileged class and hence all public offices being opened to every citizen without any discrimination.

## 6. Justice

The term 'justice' in the Preamble embraces three distinct forms-Social, Economic and Political, secured through various provisions of Fundamental rights and Directive Principles.

Social justice denotes the equal treatment of all citizens without any social distinction based on caste, colour, race, religion, sex and so on. It means absence of privileges being extended to any particular section of the society, and improvement in the conditions of backward classes (SCs, STs and OBCs) and women.

Economic justice denotes the non-discrimination between people on the basis of economic factors. It involves the elimination of glaring inequalities in wealth, income and property. A combination of Social justice and Economic justice denotes what is known as 'Distributive justice'.

Political justice implies that all citizens should have equal political rights, equal access to all political offices and equal voice in the government.

The ideal of justice-Social, Economic and Political-has been taken from the Russian Revolution (1917).

## 7. Liberty

The term 'liberty' means the absence of restraints on the activities of individuals, and at the same time, providing opportunities for the development of individual personalities.

The Preamble secures to all citizens of India liberty of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship, through their Fundamental Rights, enforceable in court of law, in case of violation.

## 8. Equality

The term 'equality' means the absence of special privileges to any section of the society and the provision of adequate opportunities for all individuals without any discrimination.

The Preamble secures to all citizens of India equality of status and opportunity. This provision embraces three dimension of equality-Civic, Political and Economic.

The following provisions of the chapter on Fundamental Rights ensure civic equality:

- (a) Equality before the law (Article 14).
- (b) Prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth (Article 15).
- (c) Equality of opportunity in matters of public employment (Article 16).
- (d) Abolition of untouchability (Article 17).

The Directive Principles of State Policy (Article 39) secures to men and women equal right to an adequate means of livelihood and equal pay for equal work.

## 9. Fraternity

Fraternity means a sense of brotherhood. The Constitution promotes this feeling of fraternity by the system of single citizenship. Also, the Fundamental Duties (Article 51-A) say that it shall be the duty of every citizen of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic, regional or sectional diversities.



# THE UNION AND ITS TERRITORY

✓ Article 1 says, "India, that is Bharat, shall be a Union of States".

✓ The term 'Union' was suggested by Dr B R Ambedkar which indicates two things, first, Indian Union is not a result of agreement of independent and Sovereign States, and second, the Units/States do not have right to secede from the Union.

✓ Union of India includes only the States which share federal powers with the Centre.

✓ The expression Union of India deeds to be distinguished from the expression 'Territory of India'.

✓ While the Union of India includes only the States which share federal powers with the Centre, Territory of India includes the entire territory over which the sovereignty of the country is exercised.

## Formation of new States

✓ Article 3 deals with the formation of a new State out of the territories of the existing States.

✓ Parliament, under Article 3, can increase or diminish the area of any State or alter the boundaries or change the name of any State.

✓ The Indian Constitution empowers the Parliament to alter the territory or names, etc, of the States without their consent or concurrence.

✓ Thus, it is clear that the very existence of a State depends upon the sweet will of the centre.

✓ By a simple majority and by ordinary Legislative process, Parliament may form a new State or alter the boundaries etc of the existing States and thereby, can change the Political map of India.

The Articles 2, 3 and 4 thus demonstrate the flexibility of the Indian Constitution.

## Procedure for creation of new states

✓ Parliament can form new States, alter the area, boundaries or names of the existing States by a law passed by a simple majority.

✓ No Bills for the formation of new States or alteration of the boundaries or names of the existing States shall be introduced in either House of the Parliament, except on the recommendation of the President.

✓ The President, before introducing the Bill in the Parliament, shall refer it to the concerned State Legislature for its opinion within a specified time limit.

✓ If the State Legislature does not give its opinion within the specified time limit, the time limit may be extended.

✓ The Bill may be introduced even if the opinion has not come.

✓ The Parliament is not bound to accept or act upon the views of the State legislature.

It is not necessary to make fresh reference to the State Legislature every time on an amendment to the bill, proposed and accepted.

## Reorganisation of States: Background.

1. The Constituent Assembly appointed the S.K. Dhar Commission in November 1947 to study the issue of the reorganization of the States on linguistic basis.
2. The Congress, in its Jaipur session in 1948 appointed a three member committee to consider the recommendations of the Dhar Commission.
3. The Committee is popularly known as the JVP Committee after the names of its three members- Jawaharlal Nehru, Vallabh Bhai Patel and Pattabhi Sitarammaiah.
4. The Committee rejected language as the basis for the reorganization of the States.
5. As the agitation took a violent turn in the Telugu speaking areas, the Congress conceded the reorganization of the Telugu speaking area in the State of Andhra Pradesh in 1953.
6. To make an exhaustive study of the problem, the Government of India set up the State Reorganisation Commission in 1953 which was headed by Fazal Alia.

## PART I: The Union and its Territory

### ARTICLE

1. Name and territory of the Union.
2. Admission or establishment of new States.
- 2A [Repealed].
3. Formation of new States and alteration of areas, boundaries or names of existing States.
4. Laws made under Articles 2 and 3 to provide for the amendment of the First and the Fourth Schedules and supplemental, incidental and consequential matters.



## Part II: Citizenship

### ARTICLE

- 5 Citizenship at the commencement of the Constitution.
- 6 Rights of citizenship of certain persons who have migrated to India from Pakistan.
- 7 Rights of citizenship of certain migrants to Pakistan.
- 8 Rights of citizenship of certain persons of Indian origin residing outside India.
- 9 Persons voluntarily acquiring citizenship of a foreign State not to be citizens.
- 10 Continuance of the rights of citizenship.
- 11 Parliament to regulate the right of citizenship by law.

- ✓ A citizen is a person who enjoys full membership of the community or State in which he lives or ordinarily lives.
- ✓ Citizens are different from aliens, who do not enjoy all the rights which are essential for full membership of a state.
- ✓ Part II of the Constitution simply describes classes of persons living in India at the commencement of the Constitution, i.e. 26<sup>th</sup> January 1950, and leaves the entire law of the citizenship to be regulated by legislations made by the Parliament.
- ✓ In exercise of its power, the Parliament enacted the Indian Citizenship Act, 1955, which was subsequently amended in 1986.
- ✓ The Act provides for the acquisition of Indian citizenship after the commencement of the Constitution in five ways, i.e. birth, descent, registration, naturalization and incorporation of territory.

**By birth:** Every person born in India on or after 26 January, 1950, shall be a citizen of India by law of soil (*Jus Soli*), provided either or both of his/her parents are citizens of India at the time of his/her birth.

**By descent:** Broadly, person born outside India on or after January 26, 1950, is a citizen of India by descent if his/her either of the parents is a citizen of India at the time of that person's birth i.e. law of blood (*Jus Sanguine*).

**By registration:** The prescribed authority may, on

application, register as a citizen of India, any person who is not a citizen by virtue of Constitution or the provisions of the Citizenship Act.

This mode of acquiring citizenship is available to any of the following categories.

- (a) Persons of Indian origin who are ordinarily resident in India for 7 years immediately before making an application for registration.
- (b) Persons of Indian origin who are ordinarily resident in any country or place outside India.
- (c) Women who are, or have been married to citizens of India.
- (d) Minor children of persons who are citizens of India.
- (e) Persons of full age and capacity who are citizens of a country mentioned in the First schedule.

**By naturalization:** Citizenship by naturalization can be acquired by making an application in the prescribed manner. The qualifications for naturalization are the following:

- (a) He must be a person of full age and capacity.
- (b) He must not be a citizen of a country where Indian citizens are prevented from becoming citizens by naturalization.
- (c) He has renounced the citizenship of the other country.
- (d) He has either resided in India or has been in Government service for 12 months before the date of making the application for naturalization, or during 7 years prior to these 12 months, he has resided or has been in the Government service for not less than four years.
- (e) He must take an oath of allegiance.
- (f) He is of a good character.
- (g) He has an adequate knowledge of a language recognized by the Constitution.

**By incorporation of territories:** If any new territory becomes a part of India, after a popular verdict, the Government of India shall specify the person of that territory to be the citizen of India.

In India, there is single citizenship i.e. citizenship of India.

A citizen is an individual who enjoys all the rights given by the law, available in the country.

Art. 11 says that the Parliament will regulate.

#### **Termination of citizenship**

The citizenship act, 1955 also lays down three modes by which an Indian citizen may lose his/her citizenship. These are renunciation, termination and deprivation.

#### **Three modes of losing citizenship**

##### **Renunciation**

It is a voluntary act by which a person, after acquiring the citizenship of another country, gives up his Indian citizenship.

This provision is subject to certain conditions.

##### **Termination**

It takes place by operation of law when an Indian citizen voluntarily acquires the citizenship of another country.

He automatically ceases to be an Indian.

##### **Deprivation**

It is compulsory termination of the citizenship of India obtained by Registration or Naturalisation by the government of India, on charges of using fraudulent means to acquire citizenship.



Paramount Coaching Centre

- ✓ Part III of the Constitution contains a long list of the Fundamental Rights.
- ✓ The most striking difference between the Government of India Act, 1935 and the present Constitution is the presence of the Fundamental Rights in the later.
- ✓ This chapter of the Constitution has been described as the Magna Carta of India.
- ✓ They are the limitations upon all the powers of the Government, legislative as well as Executive.
- ✓ These rights are regarded as fundamental, because they are most essential for the attainment by the individual his/her full intellectual, moral and spiritual status.

### Classification of Fundamental Rights

There are six groups of Fundamental Rights:-

1. Right to Equality (Art. 14-18)
2. Right to Freedom (Art. 19-22)
3. Right against Exploitation (Art. 23 and 24)
4. Right to Freedom of Religion (Art. 25-28)
5. Cultural and Educational Rights (Art. 29 and 30)
6. Right to Constitutional Remedies (Art. 32)

### PART III: Fundamental Rights

#### ARTICLE

#### General

12 Definition.

13 Law inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights

#### Right to Equality

14 Equality before law

15 Prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth:

- (1) The State shall not discriminate against any citizen on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them.
- (2) No citizen shall, on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them, be subject to any disability, liability, restriction or condition with regard to -
  - (a) access to shops, public restaurants, hotels and places of public entertainment; or
  - (b) the use of wells, tanks, bathing ghats, roads and places of public resort maintained wholly or partly out of State

funds or dedicated to the use of the general public.

- (3) Nothing in this Article shall prevent the State from making any special provision for women and children.
  - (4) Nothing in this article or in clause (2) of article 29 shall prevent the State from making any special provision for the advancement of any socially and educationally backward classes of citizens or for the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes.
- 16 Equality of opportunity in matters of public employment:
- (1) There shall be equality of opportunity for all citizens in matters relating to employment or appointment to any office under the State.
  - (2) No citizen shall, on grounds only of religion, race, caste, sex, descent, place of birth, residence or any of them, be ineligible for, or discriminated against in respect of, any employment or office under the State.
  - (3) Nothing in this article shall prevent Parliament from making any law prescribing, in regard to a class or classes of employment or appointment to an office under the Government of, or any local or other authority within, a State or Union territory, any requirement as to residence within that State or Union territory prior to such employment or appointment.
  - (4) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any provision for the reservation or appointments or posts in favour of any backward class of citizens which, in the opinion of the State, is not adequately represented in the services under the State.
  - (4A) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from making any provision for reservation in matters of promotion, with consequential seniority, any class or classes of posts in the services under the State in favour of the Scheduled Castes and the Scheduled Tribes which, in the opinion of the State, are not adequately represented in the services under the State.
  - (4B) Nothing in this article shall prevent the State from considering any unfilled vacancies of a year which are reserved for being filled up in that year in accordance with any provision for reservation made under clause (4) or clause (4 A) as a separate class of vacancies to be filled up in any succeeding year or years and such class or

vacancies shall not be considered together with the vacancies of the year in which they are being filled up for determining the ceiling of fifty per cent reservation on total number of vacancies of that year.

- (5) Nothing in this article shall affect the operation of any law which provides that the incumbent of an office in connection with the affairs of any religious or denominational institution or any member of the governing body thereof shall be a person professing a particular religion or belonging to a particular denomination.

17 Abolition of Untouchability.

18 Abolition of titles.

### Rights to Freedom

19 Protection of certain rights regarding freedom of speech, etc.

20 Protection in respect of conviction for offences.

21 Protection of life and personal liberty.

22 protection against arrest and detention in certain cases.

### Right against Exploitation

23 Prohibition of traffic in human beings and forced labour.

24 Prohibition of employment of children in factories, etc.

### Right to Freedom of Religion

25 Freedom of conscience and free profession, practice and propagation of religion.

26 Freedom to manage religious affairs.

27 Freedom as to payment of taxes for promotion of any particular religion.

28 Freedom as to attendance at religious instruction or religious worship in certain educational institutions.

### Cultural and Educational Rights

29 Protection of interests of minorities.

30 Right of minorities to establish and administer educational institutions.

### Saving of Certain Laws

31 [Repealed.]

31 A Saving of laws providing for acquisition of estates, etc.

31 B Validation of certain Acts and Regulations.

31 C Saving of laws giving effect to certain directive principles.

31 D [Repealed.]

### Right to Constitutional Remedies

32 Remedies for enforcement of rights conferred by this Part.

32 A [Repealed.]

Power of Parliament to modify the rights conferred by this Part in their application to Forces, etc.

Restriction on rights conferred by this Part while martial law is in force in any area.

Legislation to give effect to the provisions of this Part.

### IMPORTANT FACTS:

- ✓ Article 17 and Article 24 are the only absolute rights.
- ✓ Right against discrimination [Art 15(2)], Right against untouchability [Art 17] and Right against exploitation [Art (23) & (24)] can be enforced against the private individuals also.
- ✓ Article 13 provides for the Judicial Review of all the legislations in India.
- ✓ The concept of the Judicial Review is taken from the Constitution of the US.

### Writs Under Right to Constitutional Remedies (Article 32)

Dr B.R. Ambedkar called this Article as "The fundamental of the Fundamental Right" and "the heart and soul of the Constitution".

To enforce the Fundamental Rights, the Supreme Court is empowered, under Art. 32, to issue writs of various forms.

The concept of issuing writs is taken from the UK.

The five forms of writs are as follows:

1. **Habeas Corpus**- It literally means 'to have a body' i.e., to be produced before Court.
  - ✓ This kind of writ is issued to protect personal liberty of an individual against the arbitrary action of both the State and private individuals.
  - ✓ The aggrieved person can even claim for compensation against such action.
2. **Mandamus**- It literally means 'Command'.
  - ✓ This kind of writ is issued against a public authority or an officer and inferior Courts for purpose of enforcing legal rights only.
  - ✓ This writ cannot be issued against the President and the Governors.
  - ✓ Private rights cannot be enforced by the writ of the Mandamus.
3. **Prohibition**- "to restrain".
  - ✓ This kind of writ is issued by the higher Courts to the lower Courts or the quasi-judicial bodies when the latter exceed their judicial authority.

✓ The objective is to keep the inferior Courts or the quasi-judicial bodies within the limits of their respective jurisdiction.

✓ The difference between 'Mandamus' and 'Prohibition' is that while the former can be issued against judicial as well as administrative authorities, the latter is issued only against the judicial or quasi-judicial authorities.

**4. Certiorari-** It is similar to Prohibition.

✓ This writ is issued to quash the order of a lower Court or the decision of a tribunal in excess of its jurisdiction.

✓ The purpose of this writ is to secure that the jurisdiction of an inferior Court or tribunal is properly exercised and that it does not usurp the jurisdiction it does not possess.

**5. Quo Warranto-** It literally means "what is your authority".

✓ This kind of writ is issued to ensure that the person holding a public office is qualified to hold the office.

❖ **AMENDABILITY OF THE FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS**

This is a controversial question right from beginning that fundamental rights are amendable or not. Initially the Supreme Court of India gave the judgement that the fundamental rights are amendable like any other part of Constitution but in 1967 in the famous Golaknath case that fundamental rights are fundamental in nature. Hence they can't be amended. But in 1973 in the Kesavananda Bharti case, Supreme Court reversed its previous decision and said that the fundamental rights of part-III are amendable provided the basic structure of the Constitution should not be affected.



Paramount Coaching



## 8 DIRECTIVE PRINCIPLES OF STATE POLICY

Articles 36 to 51 deal with the provisions of the Directive Principles which are contained in Part IV of the Constitution.

- This novel feature of the Constitution has been adopted from the Constitution of the Ireland.
- This concept is the latest development in the Constitutional Governments throughout the world, with the growing acceptance of a 'Welfare State'.
- ✓ They are in the nature of directions or instructions to the State.
- ✓ Article 37 says that Directive Principles are not justiciable but are fundamental to the Governance of the Country, and the State has the duty in applying the Directive Principle of State Policies (DPSPs).
- ✓ The reason for making the DPSPs explicitly unjusticiable are that they require resources which the State may not have at present.

### Directive Principles Mentined in Other Parts:

**Article 335:** It says that the claims of SC/ST shall be taken into consideration, consistently with the maintenance of efficiency of administration, in the making of appointments to services and posts in connection with affairs of the Union or of a State.

**Article 350 (A):** It is the duty of the officers of concerned states to provide primary education in mother tongue to the people of minorities particularly to the children of minorities' class.

**Article 351:** It will be the duty of the Union to spread Hindi language amongst the people of India which will develop our cultural and social element.

### Relationship between Fundamental Rights and Directive Principles

✓ The Supreme Court in various cases has evolved a 'Doctrine or theory of Harmonization'.

It has further stated that both the Fundamental Rights and the Directive Principles are in fact supplementary to each other and together constitute an integrated scheme.

✓ It has also held that where this is not possible, the Fundamental Rights shall prevail over the Directive Principles.

✓ The present position is that only Article 39 (b), (That the ownership and control of the material resources of the community are so distributed as best to subserve the common good) and Article 39 (c) (That the operation of the economic system does not result in the concentration of wealth and means of production to the common detriment) can be given precedence over Article 14 and 19 and not all the directive principles.

### Difference between FR & DPSP

✓ The Fundamental Rights provide the foundation of political democracy in India whereas the Directives spell out the character of social and economic democracy in India.

✓ Fundamental Rights are in the form of negative obligations of the State i.e., injunctions against the actions of the State. The Directive Principles are, on the contrary, positive obligations of the State towards the citizen.

✓ Whereas the Fundamental Rights are justiciable, the Directive Principles are non-justiciable.

### PART IV: Directive Principle of State Policy

#### ARTICLE

- 36 Definition.
- 37 Application of the principles contained in this Part.
- 38 State to secure a social order for the promotion of welfare of the people.
- 39 Certain principles of policy to be followed by the State.
- 39 A Equal justice and free legal aid.
- 40 Organisation of village panchayats.
- 41 Right to work, to education and to public assistance in certain cases.
- 42 Provision for just and humane conditions of work and maternity relief.
- 43 Living wage, etc., for workers.
- 43 A Participation of workers in management of industries.
- 44 Uniform civil code for the citizens.
- 45 Provision for free and compulsory education for children.
- 46 Promotion of educational and economic interests of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and other weaker sections.
- 47 Duty of the State to raise the level of nutrition and the standard of living and to improve public health.
- 48 Organisation of agriculture and animal husbandry.
- 48 A Protection and Improvement of environment and safeguarding of forests and wildlife.
- 49 Protection of monuments and places and objects of national importance.
- 50 Separation of judiciary from executive.
- 51 Promotion of international peace and security.

- ✓ These are included in the Indian Constitution by the 42<sup>nd</sup> Amendment Act, 1976 on the basis of Swarn Singh Committee report.
- ✓ It is based on the former USSR model.
- ✓ 10 duties of the citizens towards the State have been enumerated by inserting Article 51-A in Part IVA of our Constitution. 11<sup>th</sup> Fundamental Duty was added by the 86<sup>th</sup> amendment, 2002.
- 9. To safeguard public property and abjure violence.
- 10. To strive for excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity.
- 11. It shall be duty of every citizen of India who is a parent or guardian to provide opportunities for education to his child or ward as the case may be, between the age of 6 and 14 years. (Added by 86<sup>th</sup> Amendment 2002)

#### Eleven Fundamental Duties for citizens

1. To abide by and respect the Constitution, the National Flag and the National Anthem.
2. To cherish and follow the noble ideals of the freedom struggle.
3. To uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India.
4. To defend the country and render national service when required.
5. To promote common brotherhood and establish dignity of women.
6. To preserve the rich heritage of the nation's composite culture.
7. To protect and improve natural environment.
8. To develop scientific temper, humanism and spirit of inquiry.

#### The New Flag Code

- ✓ On can hoist the flag only from sunrise to sunset.
- ✓ The ratio of width to length of the flag should be 2:3
- ✓ Don't print it on a costume, cushion, napkin either.
- ✓ Don't use as a shroud for funerals.
- ✓ Don't drape the Flag on vehicles.
- ✓ Don't hoist it upside down. Must not touch the ground.
- ✓ Must fly higher than all other flags except that of the UN or other nations.
- ✓ Don't fly a damaged flag.
- ✓ The amended code come into effect from January 26, 2003.



## PRESIDENT OF INDIA

- ✓ Article 52 says that "There shall be a President of India."
- ✓ Article 53 says that the executive powers of the Union shall be vested in the President.
- ✓ The President is the head of the Indian State.
- ✓ He is only a nominal Executive Head.

## Qualifications for the election to the office of the President (Article 58)

- He must be a citizen of India.
- He must have completed the age of 35 years.
- He must be qualified to be a member of the Lok Sabha.
- He must not hold any office of profit under the Government of India or the government of any State or under any local or other authority.

## Election of President (Art. 54, 55)

- ✓ The provisions dealing with the election of the President are provided in Articles 54 and 55
- ✓ The President is elected by the members of an electoral college consisting of
  - The elected members of both the Houses of the Parliament, and
  - The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of the States
- ✓ The nominated members of both the Houses of the Parliament, the nominated members of the State Legislative Assemblies and the members of the State Legislative Council (in case of a Bicameral Legislature) do not participate in the election of the President.
- ✓ The President's election is held in accordance with a system of proportional representation by means of a single transferable vote and the voting is by secret ballot.

## Value of the vote of an MLA

- $$= \frac{\text{Population of the state}}{(\text{Total elected members of the state legislature}) \times 1000}$$
- ✓ This means that value of the vote of an MLA differs from one State to another. This is done to give equality of representation in terms of the population.

## Value of the vote of an MPs

- $$= \frac{\text{Total value of votes of all MLAs of all States and UTs}}{\text{Total elected members of the Parliament}}$$
- ✓ The value of vote of an MLA and MP is such that a true federal character of the office of the President is maintained, by striking a balance between the States and the Centre.
  - ✓ To be declared elected to the office of the President, more than 50% of the valid votes are required by Presidential candidate.
  - ✓ Election of the President is an indirect one.
  - ✓ In case of any dispute regarding the election of the President, only the Supreme Court is authorized to intervene in the matter.
  - ✓ The dispute can be brought in front of the Supreme Court only after the elections are over.
  - ✓ On account of vacancies in the Electoral College, no petition can be filed.
  - ✓ If the election of the President is declared void, acts as the President till the declaration cannot be invalidated.
  - ✓ The two Union Territories are the National Capital Territory of Delhi and the Union territory of Pondicherry
  - ✓ The expression "population" means the population as ascertained at the last preceding census of which the relevant figures have been published.
  - ✓ The oath of the office of the President is administered by the Chief Justice of India and in his absence, by the seniormost judge of the Supreme Court available.
  - ✓ The President holds office for a term of five years.
  - ✓ He can resign from his office at any time by addressing the resignation letter to the Vice President of India.
  - ✓ Any resignation addressed to the Vice-President shall forthwith be communicated by him to the Speaker of the Lok Sabha.
  - ✓ He can also be removed from the office before completion of his term by impeachment for violation of the Constitution. Impeachment Process is clearly defined in Art. 61 of Constitution
  - ✓ The impeachment charges can be initiated in either House of the Parliament.
  - ✓ The impeachment motion can be introduced only when

not less than one-fourth of the total number of members of the originating House have signed the proposal and a 14 days prior notice should be given to the President.

- ✓ After the impeachment motion is passed by a majority of not less than two-thirds of the total membership of that House, it moves to the other House which shall investigate the charges.
- ✓ The president shall have the right to appear and to be represented at such investigations.
- ✓ If the other House also sustains the charges and passes the impeachment motion by a majority of two-thirds of the total membership of that House, then the President stands impeached from his office from the date on which the motion is so passed.
- ✓ The impeachment process is quasi-judicial in nature.
- ✓ When a vacancy occurs in the office of the President due to his death, resignation or impeachment or otherwise, the Vice-President assumes the office.

## POWERS

### (i) Executive Powers

- ✓ All the executive actions of the Government of India are formally taken in his name.
- ✓ He appoints the Prime Minister, and the other Ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Ministers hold the office during the pleasure of the President.
- ✓ He appoints the Attorney-General of India and determines his remuneration. The Attorney-General holds office during the pleasure of the President.
- ✓ He appoints the Comptroller and Auditor-General of India, the Chief Election Commissioner and other election Commissioners, the Chairman and Minister of the Union Public Service Commission, the Governors of the States, the Chairman and the Members of the Finance Commission, and so on.
- ✓ He can seek any information relating to the administration of affairs of the Union, and proposals for legislation from the Prime Minister (Article 78).
- ✓ He can require the Prime Minister to submit, for consideration of the Council of Ministers any matter on which the decision has been taken by a Minister but which has not been considered by the Council.
- ✓ He can appoint a Commission to investigate into the conditions of the SCs, the STs, and the OBCs.
- ✓ He can appoint the Inter-State Council to

promote the Centre-State co-operation.

### (ii) Legislative Powers

- ✓ He can summon or prorogue both the Houses of the Parliament and dissolve the Lok Sabha.
- ✓ He can summon a joint sitting of both the Houses of the Parliament, which is presided over by the Speaker of the Lok Sabha.
- ✓ He can appoint any member of the Lok Sabha to preside over its proceedings when the offices of both the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker fall vacant simultaneously.
- ✓ He can also appoint any member of the Rajya Sabha to preside over its proceedings when the offices of both the Chairman and the Deputy Chairman fall vacant simultaneously.
- ✓ He nominates 12 members to the Rajya Sabha from amongst the persons having special knowledge or practical experience in respect of Literature, Science, Arts and Social Services.
- ✓ He can nominate 2 members to the Lok Sabha from the Anglo-Indian Community.
- ✓ When a Bill is sent to the President after it has been passed by the Parliament, he can:
  - (a) Give his assent to the bill, or
  - (b) Withhold his assent to the bill, or
  - (c) Return the bill (if it is not a Money Bill or a Constitutional Amendment Bill) for reconsideration of the Parliament.
- ✓ However, if the bill is again passed by the Parliament, with or without amendments, the President has to give his assent to the bill.
- ✓ The President has the option of veto with respect to the Bills passed by the Parliament.
- ✓ The veto power enjoyed by the President of India is a combination of absolute, suspensive and pocket votes.
  - (a) **Absolute Veto:** Withholding the assent to the Bill. Normally, it is exercised only in the case of private member's Bill. In the case of a Government Bill, a situation may however be imagined where, after the passage of a Bill and before it is assented to by the President, the ministry resigns and new council of ministers advises the President to use his veto power against the Bill.
  - (b) **Suspensive Veto:** It is exercised when instead of refusing his assent outrightly to a Bill or part of it or for the reconsideration and the Parliament makes it obligatory on him to give his assent to it. In this case, the veto power is merely of suspensive nature.

- (c) **Pocket Veto:** Since the Constitution does not provide any time limit within which the President is to declare his assent or refusal, the President could exercise this veto by not taking any action for an indefinite time; but if the ministry has a strong backing in Parliament, it would not be possible for him to do so. Pocket Veto was used in 1986 by the President Giani Zail Singh in the Postal Bill.
- ✓ He can promulgate ordinances when both the Houses of the Parliament are not in session (Article 123). These ordinances must be approved by the Parliament within the six weeks of its reassembly. He can also withdraw an ordinance any time.

### (iii) Emergency Powers

#### (A) National Emergency

- ✓ According to Article 352, President of India can proclaim the national emergency on the basis of war, external aggression or armed rebellion.
- ✓ The President can proclaim this emergency only after receiving a written recommendation from the Cabinet.
- ✓ The proclamation of the Emergency must be approved by the Parliament within one month. If approved, the Emergency shall continue for six months.
- ✓ A National Emergency has been proclaimed three times so far- 1962, 1971 and 1975.
- ✓ Article 19 can only be suspended in case of external emergency and not in the case of internal emergency (armed rebellion).

#### (B) State Emergency

- ✓ The President's rule is also known as the Constitutional Emergency or the State Emergency.
- ✓ It can be proclaimed by the President on the failure of the constitutional machinery in the State (Article 356), or failure to comply with or to give effect to the directions given by the Union (Article 365).
- ✓ The proclamation of the President's rule should be approved by the Parliament within two months. If approved, it remains in force for six months from the date of proclamation of the State Emergency.
- ✓ It can be extended for a maximum period of three years with the approval of the Parliament every six months.
- ✓ The State Governor, on behalf of the President, carries on the State administration with the help of advisors appointed by the President or the Chief Secretary of the State.

### (C) Financial Emergency

- ✓ The president can proclaim Financial Emergency under 360 if he is satisfied that the financial stability or credit of India or any part thereof is threatened.
- ✓ Such a proclamation must be approved by the Parliament within two months.
- ✓ When a Financial Emergency is proclaimed, the President can give directions to the States to observe the canons of financial propriety.
- ✓ Financial Emergency has not been declared so far.

#### (iv) Financial Powers

- ✓ Money bill can be introduced in the Parliament only with his prior recommendation.
- ✓ He causes to be laid before the Parliament the Annual Financial Statement (i.e. Union Budget) under Article 112.
- ✓ No demand for a grant can be made except on his recommendation.
- ✓ He can make advances out of the contingency fund of India to meet any unforeseen expenditure.
- ✓ He constitutes a Finance Commission after every five years to recommend the distribution of the taxes between the Centre and the States.

#### (v) Military Powers

- ✓ He is the Supreme Commander of the Defence Forces of India.
- ✓ He can declare war or conclude peace subject to the approval of the Parliament.

#### (vi) Judicial Powers

- ✓ He appoints the Chief Justice and the judges of the Supreme Court and Zonal High Courts.
- ✓ He can seek advice from the Supreme Court on any question of law of fact (Article 143).
- ✓ The advice rendered by the Supreme Court is not binding on the President.
- ✓ He can grant pardon, reprieve, respite and remission of punishment, or suspend, remit or commute the sentence of any person convicted of any offence:
  - (a) In all the cases where the punishment or sentence is by a court martial;
  - (b) In all the cases where the punishment or the sentence is for an offence against any law relating to matter to which the executive power of the Union extends; and
  - (c) In all the cases where the sentence is a sentence of death.



## Article 72

**Pardon:** completely absolves the offender.

**Reprieve:** temporary suspension of the sentence.

**Respite:** awarding a lesser sentences on special grounds.

**Remission:** reducing the amount of sentence without changing its character.

**Commutation:** substitution of one form of punishment for another form which of a lighter character.

### Important Facts:-

- ✓ In the history of Presidential elections. V.V. Giri is the only person who won the election of the President as an independent candidate in 1969.
- ✓ In July 1977, Neelam Sanjeeva Reddy was elected unopposed as no one else filed nomination for the post of the President.
- ✓ Only once in the history of India, Justice M. Hidayatullah, Chief Justice of Supreme Court, discharged the duties of the President in 1969.
- ✓ Justice Hidayatullah is the only person to perform the functions of the President two times in two different capacities, the first time in 1969 being the Chief justice of the Supreme Court and the second time being the Vice-President of India in 1982.

### VICE-PRESIDENT

- ✓ According to Article 63, there shall be a Vice-President of India.

#### Qualifications to be the Vice-President

- (i) No person shall be eligible to be elected as the Vice-President unless he
  - (a) is a citizen of India.
  - (b) has completed the age of 35 years.
  - (c) is qualified for election as a members of Council of States.
- (ii) A person holding any office of profit under the Government shall not be eligible for election as the Vice-President.

✓ He is the ex-officio Chairman of the Council of States (the Rajya Sabha).

✓ The Vice-President is not a member of the Rajya Sabha, and hence he has no right to vote.

✓ Being the Vice-President of India, he is not entitled for any salary, but he is entitled to the salary and allowances payable to the Chairman of the Council of States.

- ✓ When he acts as the President or discharges the functions of the President, he shall not perform the duties of the office of the Chairman of the Council of States and shall not be entitled to receive the salary.
- ✓ The Vice-President is elected by an Electoral College consisting of the members of both the Houses of the Parliament in accordance by means of a single transferable vote (Article 66).
- ✓ The election to the vacancy of the office of the Vice-President is completed before the expiry of his term.
- ✓ An election to the vacancy of the office of the Vice-President occurring due to death, resignation or removal shall be held as soon as possible after the occurrence of the vacancy, and the person elected to fill the vacancy shall be entitled to hold office for the full term of five years from the date on which he enters his office.
- ✓ There is no mandatory provision, like in case of the President, to hold the election within the six months.

### COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

- ✓ Article 74(1) provides that "There shall be a council of Ministers with the Prime Minister as its head to aid and advice the President who shall, in exercise of his function act in accordance with such advice."
- ✓ Article 75(1) "The Prime Minister shall be appointed by the President and other Ministers shall be appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister".

#### Council of Ministers

##### Article

- 74 Council of Ministers to aid and advise President.
- 75 Other provisions as to Ministers.
- 76 Attorney-General of India to be appointed by the President .
- 77 Conduct of business of the Government of India.
- 78 Duties of Prime Minister as respects the furnishing of information to the President, etc.

✓ The Council of Ministers is formed as soon as the Prime Ministers is sworn in.

✓ The number of the Ministers in the Council has been fixed in the Constitution, where the number has been provisioned not to exceed 15% of the number of the MPs in the Lower House.

- ✓ As per Article 75 (3), the Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha i.e., if a resolution is defeated in the Parliament, the entire ministry collapses.
- ✓ The Prime Minister has the right to refer to the President, the removal of dissident minister(s) because technically the ministers are responsible individually to the President.
- ✓ The Council of Ministers consists of three categories of ministers – Ministers of Cabinet rank, State Ministers and Deputy Ministers.
- ✓ Cabinet Ministers are the senior most Ministers to head a department with portfolio.
- ✓ The Cabinet is the smaller body of the Council of Ministers.
- ✓ A Minister can be a member of either House of the Parliament, but he is liable to vote only in the House to which he belongs.
- ✓ A person not belonging to any House can be appointed as Minister but he has to get elected to either House within a period of six months, [Art. 75 (5)].

## PRIME MINISTER OF INDIA

- ✓ In the Scheme of the Parliamentary system of Government provided by the Constitution, the President is the nominal executive (de jure) authority and the Prime Minister is the real executive authority (de-facto).
- ✓ The president is the Head of the State while the Prime Minister is the Head of the Government.
- ✓ He is the leader of the party in power.
- ✓ He is the Chief Spokesman of the Union Government.
- ✓ He plays a significant role in shaping the foreign policy of the Country.
- ✓ He is the ex-officio Chairman of the Planning Commission, National Development Council, National Integration Council and Inter-State Council.

### Power and Functions

#### (i) In relation to the Council of Minister

- ✓ He recommends the persons who can be appointed as the Ministers by the President i.e., the President can appoint only those persons as the Ministers who are recommended by the Prime Minister.
- ✓ He presides over the meetings of the Council of Ministers and influences its decisions.
- ✓ He can bring about the collapse of the Council of Ministers by resigning from the office any

time.

- ✓ He summons and decides the agenda of the Cabinet meetings. Even the venue of such meetings is decided by the Prime Minister.
- ✓ He has right to call for any file from any ministry. This right is basically in pursuance of his role as a coordinator of various ministries.

#### (ii) In relation to the President

- ✓ He advises the President with regard to the appointment of important officials like- the Attorney-General of India, the Comptroller and Auditor General of India, the Chairman and the members of the UPSC, the Election Commissioners, the Chairman and the Members of the Finance Commission, and so on.
- ✓ He is the principal channel of communication between the President and the Council of Ministers (Art 72).
- ✓ He communicates to the President all the decisions of the Council of Ministers relating to the administration of the affairs of the Union and proposals for legislation.

#### (iii) In relation to the Parliament

- The Prime Minister is the leader of the Lower House of the Parliament.
- ✓ He advises the President with regard to the Summoning and proroguing of the sessions of the Parliament.
- ✓ He can recommend dissolution of the Lok Sabha to the President at any time.
- ✓ He announces the Government policies on the floor of the House.
- ✓ He has the right to intervene in any debate in the Parliament.
- ✓ He can give answers in both the Houses of Parliament or can participate in debates.

## ATTORNEY-GENERAL OF INDIA

- ✓ Article 76 states that the President shall appoint a person who is qualified to be appointed as a Judge of the Supreme Court to be the Attorney-General of India.
- ✓ He is the first legal officer of the Government of India.
- ✓ It is convention that, after the change of the Government, the Attorney-General resigns and the new government appoints one of its own choice.
- ✓ He is assisted by two Solicitors-Generals and four assistant Solicitors-General.
- ✓ The Attorney-General holds office during the

pleasure of the President, and receives remuneration as the President may determine.

### COMPTROLLER AND AUDITOR GENERAL

- ✓ Provisions regarding the Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG) are given under Articles 148-151.
- ✓ He is appointed by the President for a full term of 6 years or 65 years of age whichever is earlier.

### DUTIES OF CAG

- (i) To audit the accounts of the Union and the States and submit the report of the President or the Governor, as the case may be.
- (ii) To ensure that all the expenditures from the Consolidated Fund of India or States are in accordance with the Law.
- (iii) Also, to audit and report on the receipts and expenditure of the-
  - (a) Government companies.

- (b) All bodies and authorities 'substantially financed' from the Union or the State revenues; and
- (c) Other corporations or bodies when so required by the Laws relating to such corporations or bodies.

- (iv) The report of the CAG relating to the accounts of a State shall be submitted to the Governor of the State, who shall cause it to be laid before the Legislature of the State.
- (v) This report is immediately referred to the Public Accounts Committee of the Parliament which, after a detailed study, prepares another report which is placed before the Parliament.
- (vi) The discussion in the Parliament takes place on the secondary report of the Public Accounts Committee.
- (vii) The CAG is an officer of the Parliament and he is called Ears and Eyes of the Public Accounts Committee.
- (viii) The CAG is concerned only at the stage of audit after the expenditure has already taken place.



Paramount Coaching

**Article 79: Constitution of the Parliament**

- ✓ There shall be a parliament for the Union which shall consist of the President and the two Houses to be known respectively as the Council of States (the Rajya Sabha) and the House of the People (the Lok Sabha).
- ✓ Though the President is not a member of either House of the Parliament, yet like the British crown he is an integral part of the Parliament and performs certain functions relating to its proceedings.

**Functions of the Parliament**

- ✓ The most important function of the Parliament is to legislate i.e. make legislations for the development which benefits the society.
- ✓ The second most important function is to exercise control over the Executive.
- ✓ The Parliament provides the Council of Ministers as the Ministers are the Members of the Parliament.

**The Rajya Sabha or the Council of States**

- ✓ The Rajya Sabha consists of 250 members who are divided into two categories-elected and nominated. Out of 250 members, 198 are elected and 12 are nominated. They are indirectly elected by the members of the State legislatures. For that quota is assigned to each and every State according to its population and this quota is fixed till 2026.

**State****No. of Seats**

U.P. (Highest) 31

Sikkim (Lowest) 01

- ✓ The nominated members are nominated by President. These members can be associated with different fields like Art Science, Literature and Social work.
- ✓ Minimum age for the member of Rajya Sabha is 30 years. The tenure of its members is 6 years and it is scheduled in such a way that one third of its members retire every two years.
- ✓ It never dissolves and it is also called the Upper House.

**Officers of the Rajya Sabha**

- ✓ **Chairman:** The Vice-President of India is the *ex-officio* chairman of the Rajya Sabha. He presides over the proceedings of the Rajya Sabha as long as he does not act as the

President of India during a vacancy in the office of the President.

- ✓ **Deputy Chairman:** The Deputy Chairman is elected by the Rajya Sabha from amongst its members. In the absence of the Chairman, Deputy Chairman presides over the functions and proceedings of the House.

**Functions**

- ✓ Art. 312 empowers the Rajya Sabha to declare by a resolution, supported by not less than two-thirds of the members present and voting, that it is necessary or expedient in the national interest, that the Parliament should create one or more All India Services, including All-India Judicial Services (42<sup>nd</sup> Amendment, 1976), common to the Union and the States, and also to regulate the recruitment and conditions of the service of persons appointed to such services (the Lok Sabha cannot initiate the Process).

In case of the Constitutional Amendment Bill, it must be passed by the Rajya Sabha separately. There is no provision for a joint-sitting to pass such Bills.

- ✓ In Ordinary Bills Rajya Sabha have same powers as Lok Sabha have but in case of money Bill, Lok Sabha have more power than Rajya Sabha. Rajya Sabha can keep a money Bill maximum of 14 days.
- ✓ In cases of declaration of emergencies under Article 352 and Article 356 by the President (who, in fact, proclaims them on the advice of the Council of Ministers), such declarations must be approved by the Rajya Sabha within a period of one month and two months respectively after such declarations.

**The Lok Sabha or The Lower House**

- ✓ In the Constitution, the strength of the Lok Sabha was provisioned to be not more than 552 from the States, 20 from the Union Territories and two nominated from the Anglo-Indian community. But the Constitution empowers the Lok Sabha to readjust the strength.
- ✓ The Parliament has fixed the strength of the Lok Sabha as 545 till 2026.
- ✓ The minimum age for the members of Lok Sabha is 25 years. The tenure of its members is 5 years.

- ✓ The Lok Sabha is the popular House of the Parliament because its members are directly elected by the citizens of India.
- ✓ All the members of the Parliament are popularly elected, except not more than two members of the Anglo-Indian community, who are nominated by the President.
- ✓ Prime Minister is called the leader of Lok Sabha. Lok Sabha elects its speaker who is called Lok Sabha speaker.
- ✓ Any bill which is money bill or not, its decision is taken by the speaker of Lok Sabha.
- ✓ Speaker of Lok Sabha doesn't cast his vote but only in one situation he can cast his vote when there is a tie between favour and against. His vote is called "Decisive Vote".
- ✓ No Confidence Motion Bill can be brought only in Lok Sabha because union council of ministers is responsible for Lok Sabha.
- ✓ Lok Sabha can be extended for 1 year. It has been done once.

### Session of the Parliament

The Constitution only states that there should not be a gap of more than six months between two consecutive sittings of the Parliament. There are three types of sessions as per the Parliamentary practices-

1. **Budget Session** (February-May)- This is the most important and the longest session.
2. **Monsoon Session** July-August.
3. **Winter Session** (November-December)- This is the shortest session.

### Joint Session

- ✓ Can be ordered by President to consider a particular bill in case:
  - (a) A Bill passed by one house is rejected by other.
  - (b) The amendments made by the other house are not acceptable to the house where the Bill originated.
  - (c) In case a bill remains pending unpassed for more than 6 months.
- ✓ Joint session is presided over by the Speaker of Lok Sabha or in his absence by the Deputy Speaker, or in his absence by the Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha or in his absence any other member of the Parliament who is agreed upon by the Houses.
- ✓ If the Lok Sabha is dissolved before the President notifies a joint sitting, the Bill lapses and no joint sitting is possible. However, if the President has notified his intention to summon the Houses for joint sitting and then the Lok Sabha is dissolved,

the joint sitting takes place notwithstanding the dissolution of the House.

- ✓ The deadlock over a Bill is resolved by a majority of the total number of the members of both the Houses present and voting.
- ✓ Since the Lok Sabha has larger membership, its will prevails.
- ✓ In joint session, no fresh constitutional amendment can be done.

### Prorogation of House

- ✓ Means ending the session.
- ✓ Pending bills/business does not lapse; they are taken in the next session.

### Dissolution of House

- ✓ Only of Lok Sabha.
- ✓ By President on advice of PM.
- ✓ Bills pending in Rajya Sabha, passed by Lok Sabha, do not lapse unless President calls a joint sitting of the 2 houses.
- ✓ Bills pending in Rajya Sabha, not passed by Lok Sabha don't lapse.

### Conduct of Business in Parliament

**Ordinary Bills:** All bills, except money bills, are introduced in either house. [Speaker of Lok Sabha decides whether the bill is a money bill or not].

- ✓ **Money Bills:** It deals with the imposition or abolition of taxes, matters pertaining to borrowing of money by the government, custody and maintenance of consolidated funds, etc.

- ✓ It can originate only in Lok Sabha on the recommendation of the President. The Rajya Sabha can only delay it by 14 days. Its final authority lies with Lok Sabha only.

### Question Hour

- ✓ The first hour of every sitting in both houses (11-12AM). In this questions are asked by members and answered by ministers.

### Types of questions:

- (i) Starred Questions (1 member can ask only one/day) for which oral answers is required.
- (ii) Unstarred Questions for which written answer (10 days notice) is enquired.
- (iii) Short Notice Questions are the ones which relates to matters of urgent public importance and can be asked by members with notice shorter than the ten days prescribed for an ordinary question.

### Zero Hour

From 12-1 PM daily. Time allotted everyday for



miscellaneous business in call-attention notice, questions on official statement and adjournment motions.

## MOTION

It is a proposal brought before the house for its opinion/decision.

Type:

- (i) **Privilege Motion** - A resolution introduced by the opposition that a minister has misled the house by giving wrong information.
- (ii) **Censure Motion** - Can be moved only in Lok Sabha only by the opposition. It can be brought against the ruling Government or against minister only for the failure to act or seeking disapproval of their policy. A censure motion must specify the charges against the Government for which it is moved. Further, 1/10th members of the House is required for moving it. If a censure motion is passed in the Lok Sabha, the Council of ministers is bound to seek the confidence of the Lok Sabha as early as possible.
- (iii) **No confidence motion** - Can be moved only in Lok Sabha and only by the opposition. It can be brought only against the council of ministers and not against any individual minister.

Further, unlike censure motion, a no confidence motion need not set out any specific ground. Once admitted in the House, it takes precedence over all the pending business of the House. Generally the PM answers the allegation after the members have spoken. If the motion is adopted by the House, the Council of Ministers is bound to resign.

- (iv) **Call - Attention Motion** - A member (after permission from Speaker) calls the attention of the minister to any matter of 'urgent public importance'.

There is no Call-Attention motion in the Rajya Sabha. Instead there exists a motion called 'Motion for Papers'.

- (v) **Adjournment Motion** - Leads to setting aside the normal business of the House for discussing a definite matter of urgent public importance.
- (vi) **Cut motions** - They are moved in the Lok Sabha only. They are part of the budgetary process which seeks to reduce the amounts for grants.

## Parliament's Control over the Financial System

- ✓ Article 265 states that no tax can be levied

or collected except by authority of law. The executive, therefore, cannot impose any tax without the sanction of the Parliament.

- ✓ All the revenue and loans raised by the authority of law are paid into the consolidated Fund of India. Under Article 266 no money can be withdrawn or spent or appropriated from the consolidated Fund of India without the sanction of the Parliament.
- ✓ The parliament, thus, controls the revenue expenditure and appropriation of Government of India.

## Parliamentary Committees

- ✓ The Legislature has to perform complex and enormous quantity of work.
  - ✓ Due to the paucity of time in the Legislature, the initial work is mostly done by the Committees, appointed or elected for specific purpose.
  - ✓ These Committees essentially belong to the Lok Sabha and function under the Speaker to whom they submit their reports.
- These Parliamentary Committees are classified as the Standing Committees and the Ad-hoc Committees. While the former are permanent in nature, the latter are constituted for specific purposes and they cease to exist after completion of the specific work.
- ✓ Most important Committees, with their strength in brackets, are as follows: Business and Advisory Committee (15) Estimates Committee (30), Committee on Petitions (15), Committee on the Welfare of the Schedule Castes and Scheduled Tribes (30).

## Details of some of the important Committees are:

1. **Committee on Estimates.** This Committee consists of 30 members wholly derived from the Lok Sabha. All the parties in the Parliament are given proportionate representation in this Committee. The Chairman is appointed by the Speaker from amongst its members. The functions of the Committee are:
  - (a) To report on the efficiency of the policy underlying the estimates;
  - (b) To examine whether the money is well laid out within the limits of the policy implied in the estimates;
  - (c) To suggest the form in which the estimates are to be presented in the Parliament.The Committee works well within the limits of the policy approved by the Parliament, but it may

suggest a change if it thinks so.

2. **Committee on Public Account.** The twenty-two member Committee is elected through a single transferable vote, 15 from the Lok Sabha and 7 from the Rajya Sabha. Externally, the Committee belongs to the Lok Sabha and its Chairman is appointed by the Speaker and is from the Lok Sabha. The functions of the Committee include:

- (a) To examine the accounts showing the appropriation granted by the Parliament to meet the expenditure of the Government of India.
- (b) To examine the Annual Finance Accounts of the Government of India and other accounts laid before the House.
- (c) To examine the reports of the Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG) of India on

revenue receipts.

3. **Committee on Public Undertakings.** This Committee consists of 15 members of the Lok Sabha and 7 associated members of the Rajya Sabha. The Chairman of the committee is appointed from the amongst the members of the Lok Sabha by the Speaker. The functions of the Committee are-

- (a) To examine the reports and the Accounts of the Public undertakings specified in the Fourth Schedule of the Rules of Procedure and Conduct of Business of the Lok Sabha and also the report of the CAG, if any.
- (b) To examine the efficiency and autonomy of the Public Undertakings.
- (c) To examine other specific subjects or matters referred to it by the House or the Speaker.



Paramount Coaching

## THE SUPREME COURT

- ✓ The constitution consists provisions related to the Union Judiciary in Art. 124-147.
- ✓ Initially, there was a Chief Justice and seven other Judges in the Supreme Court.
- ✓ The number of the Judges excluding the Chief Justice was increased to 25 in 1985.
- ✓ At present, there is one Chief Justice and 25 other Judges in the Supreme Court.
- ✓ The power to increase or decrease the number of Judges in the Supreme Court rests with the Parliament.
- ✓ The senior most judge of the Supreme Court is appointed as the Chief Justice of India.
- ✓ The Judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President after Consultation with such Judges of the Supreme Court and of the High Courts as the President may deem necessary.

### Qualifications for the Appointment as a judge of the Supreme Court

A person shall not be qualified for appointment as a Judge of the Supreme Court unless he

- (a) Is a citizen of India, and
- (b) Has been for atleast five years judge of a High Court or a two such Courts in succession; or
- (c) Has been for atleast ten years an advocate of a High Court or of two or more such Courts in succession; or Courts in succession; or
- (d) Is, in the opinion of the President, a distinguished jurist.

### Writ Jurisdiction

- ✓ Article 32 imposes duty on the Supreme Court to enforce the Fundamental Rights.
- ✓ Under this Article, every individual has a right to move to the Supreme Court directly if there has been any infringement on his Fundamental Rights.
- ✓ The Writs Jurisdiction sometimes is referred to as the Original Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court, but in the strict sense, Original Jurisdiction relates to the federal character of the Constitution.

### Removal of the Judges of the Supreme Court

- ✓ The Constitution under Article 124 (4)

provides that a Judge of the Supreme Court can be removed by the President after an address by each of the House of the Parliament supported by a majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of not less than two-third of the members of that House present and voting, on the ground of proved misbehavior or incapacity.

- ✓ Under this act, a motion seeking the removal of a Judge can be referred before either House of the Parliament.
- ✓ If it is to be introduced in the Lok Sabha, it should be signed by not less than 100 members of the Lok Sabha.
- ✓ If it is to be introduced in the Rajya Sabha, the motion should be signed by not less than 50 members.
- ✓ The motion can be moved only after a prior notice of 14 days to that Judge.

After being properly introduced, the presiding officer of that House appoints a three-member Judicial Committee to inquire into the misbehaviour or incapacity of the accused Judge.

- ✓ The head of the Judicial Committee shall be a serving Judge of the Supreme Court.

## THE HIGH COURTS

- ✓ The High Courts stands at the head of the judiciary in a State.
- ✓ There shall be a High Court for each State (Article - 214)
- ✓ The Judiciary in the States consists of a High Court and the Subordinate Courts.
- ✓ The Parliament can, however, establish by law, a common High Court for one or more State (s) and one or more Union Territory (Article 231).
- ✓ Every High Court shall be a Court of record (Article 215).

### Qualifications for Appointment as a Judge of a High Court

The qualifications required under the Constitution for a person to be appointed as a Judge of a High Court.

- (a) Must be a citizen of India; and

- (b) Must have held a judicial office in the territory of India for at least ten years; or
- (c) Must have been an advocate of a High Court or two or more such Courts in succession for atleast ten years.

#### **Writ Jurisdiction**

- ✓ Under Article 226 of the Constitution, the High Courts are given powers of issuing writs not only for the enforcement of the Fundamental Rights, but also for other purposes.
- ✓ In exercise of this power, a Court may issue

the same type of writs, orders or directions which the Supreme Court is empowered to issue under Article 32.

#### **Some important points**

- ✓ At present there are 21 High Courts.
- ✓ According to Article-143, The President can seek advice of Supreme Court in any complex issue. Supreme Court is not bound to give its advice or if the advice given by Supreme Court then president is not bound to work on it.



Paramount Coaching Centre

## THE STATE EXECUTIVE & THE STATE LEGISLATURE

*In India, except Jammu & Kashmir (Article 370), all the States have the same pattern of Government as the Centre.*

### THE GOVERNOR

- ✓ The Constitution provides for an office of the Governor in the States Article 153.
- ✓ A Governor is the chief executive head of a State, but like the President of India, he is a nominal executive head (or de jure or titular or Constitutional head).
- ✓ The Governor also acts as an agent of the Central Government and therefore, the office of the Governor has a dual role.

### Appointment and Conditions

- ✓ A Governor is appointed by the President of India by a warrant under his hand and seal; on the recommendations of the Union Council of Ministers.
- ✓ His usual term of office is five years but he holds office during the pleasure of the President.
- ✓ He can be asked to continue for more time until his successor takes the charge.
- ✓ He can also be transferred from one State to another by the President.
- ✓ The Constitution lays down the following two qualifications for the appointment of a person as a Governor.
  - (a) He should be a citizen of India.
  - (b) He should have completed the age of 35 years.
- ✓ The Oath of the office to the Governor is administered by the Chief Justice of the concerned State High Court and in his absence, the senior-most Judge of that Court available.
- ✓ Under Article 361, a Governor is not answerable to any court for the performance of the power and duties of his office.
- ✓ No criminal proceedings can be instituted or continued in any form as long as a person holds the office of the Governor. However, no such immunity is available in case of civil cases, the only respite being that the Governor should be given a two months prior notice containing full details of such proceedings.
- ✓ There should be a Tribal Welfare Minister in the States of Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and

Orissa appointed by the Governor.

- ✓ The Governor can recommend for the imposition of the Constitutional emergency in a State to the President. During the period of the President's rule in a State, the Governor enjoys the extensive executive powers as an agent of the President.
- ✓ The Governor has the power to suspend the Members of the State Public Service Commission
- ✓ If the Governor is satisfied that the members of the Anglo-Indian community are not adequately represented in the Vidhan Sabha, he may nominate one member.
- ✓ If Vidhan Parishad is also in existence in a State, the governor has the power to nominate 1/6 of the total members of the Vidhan Parishad for among the persons who have expelled or have practical experience in the fields of Literature, Science, Arts, Co-operative Movement and Social Services.

### THE CHIEF MINISTER

- ✓ The Chief Minister is the real executive and is the head of the Government of a State.
- ✓ The position of the Chief Minister at the State level is analogous to the position of the Prime Minister at the Centre.
- ✓ The Chief Minister shall be appointed by the Governor.
- ✓ Other Ministers shall be appointed by the Governor on the advice of the Chief Minister.
- ✓ Normally the leader of the majority party in the Vidhan Sabha is appointed as the Chief Minister by the Governor.
- ✓ The Governor shall administer the oath of office and secrecy to the Ministers.
- ✓ The Chief Minister can bring about the collapse of the Council of Ministers by resigning from the office.
- ✓ The Chief Minister advises the Governor with regard to the appointment of important officials like Advocate General, the Chairman and the Members of the State Public Service Commission, the State Election Commissioner etc.

### THE ADVOCATE GENERAL

- ✓ The Advocate General is the first law officer of a State.



- ✓ His office and functions are comparable to that of the Attorney General of India.
- ✓ Appointed by the Governor and holds the office during his pleasure.
- ✓ His remunerations are also determined by the Governor.
- ✓ To be appointed to the office of the Advocate General, he/she must be qualified to be a Judge of the High Court.
- ✓ He has the right to attend and speak in the proceedings of either Houses of the State Legislature without any right to vote.
- ✓ He has the right of audience in any Court in the State.

## THE STATE LEGISLATURE

- ✓ The Legislature of every State consists of the Governor and one or two Houses.
- ✓ The Legislatures of Bihar, Jammu and Kashmir, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh are bicameral i.e. having both the Legislative Assembly and the Legislative Council. Other States have unicameral Legislatures i.e. there exists only the State Legislative Assembly.

## THE LEGISLATIVE ASSEMBLY (VIDHAN SABHA)

- ✓ The Legislative Assembly is the popular House of the State Legislature where members are directly elected by the people for a term of five years, unless the House is dissolved by the Governor earlier.
- ✓ The strength of this popular House should not be less than 10 or more than 500.
- ✓ However, the President has the power to alter this number and, in fact, the strengths of Goa and Sikkim Legislatures are less than 60.
- ✓ The Governor may nominate one member from the Anglo-Indian community to this House, if he thinks that the community is not adequately represented.

## THE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL (VIDHAN PARISHAD)

- ✓ As per the Constitution, the number of members of the Legislative Council is not to exceed one-third of the total strength of the State Assembly. However, its strength should not be less than 40 either.
- ✓ Just like the Upper House at the Centre, the Legislative Council of a State is never dissolved. The members are elected for a term of 6 years and 1/3<sup>rd</sup> of its members retire every two years.

## PANCHAYATI RAJ

- ✓ The term 'Panchayati Raj' in India signifies the system of rural local self-Government.
- ✓ It is created in all the States in India by the Acts of concerned State Legislature to establish democracy at the grass root level.
- ✓ It was constitutionalised through the 73rd Constitutional Amendment Act of 1992.
- ✓ At the Central level, the Ministry of Rural Development looks after the matters relating to the Panchayati Raj bodies.
- ✓ 'Local Government' is a subject of the State List.
- ✓ The fifth entry of the State List in the Seventh Schedule of the Constitution of India deals with the 'Local Government'.

### Balwant Ray Mehta Committee

- ✓ In January 1957, the Government of India appointed a committee to examine the functioning of the Community Development Programme (1952) and to suggest measures for their better performance.

The committee submitted its report in November 1957 and recommended the establishment of the scheme for 'democratic decentralisation' which ultimately came to be known as the 'Panchayati Raj'.

### Ashok Mehta Committee

- ✓ In December 1977, the Janata Party Government appointed a committee on Panchayati Raj institutions under the chairmanship of Ashok Mehta.
- ✓ It submitted its report in August 1978 and made 132 recommendations to revive and strengthen the declining Panchayati Raj System in the country.

### G.V.K. Rao Committee

- ✓ The Committee on Administrative Arrangement for the Rural Development and Poverty Alleviation Programmes under the chairmanship of G.V.K. Rao was appointed by the Planning Commission in 1985.
- ✓ The committee came to the conclusion that the developmental process was being gradually bureaucratised and divorced from the Panchayati Raj.

## THREE TIER SYSTEM

It envisages Panchayat at the village level, Panchayat Samitis at the block level and Zila Parishad at the district level.

### (a) Village Panchayat

- ✓ Consists of elected representatives of the

people.

- ✓ Membership varies from 5-31.
- ✓ Seats reserved for SC, ST, women etc.
- ✓ Chairman is elected from among its members, known as 'Sarpanch'.
- ✓ The Panchayat is accountable for all its actions to the Gram Sabha, the general body of Villagers.
- ✓ Gram Sabha consists of the adults residing within the jurisdiction of the Panchayat.
- ✓ It exercises General supervision over the working of the Panchayat and lays down necessary guidelines for its working.

**(b) Block and Panchayat Samiti**

- ✓ The block, consisting of 20-60 villagers is administered through a Panchayat Samiti, consisting of indirectly elected members of village panchayat.
- ✓ The chairman of Panchayat Samiti is called 'Pradhan'.

**(c) Zila Parishad**

- ✓ It is the top level of the 3-tier structure.
- ✓ Elect its chairman from amongst its members who is known as the District Collector.



Paramount Coaching Centre

**ELECTION COMMISSION**

- ✓ The Election Commission is a permanent and independent body established by the Constitution of India.
- ✓ Article-324 of the Constitution provides that the power of superintendence, direction and control of the elections, to the Parliament, State Legislatures, the office of the President of India, shall be vested in the Election Commission.
- ✓ The Electoral System in India is borrowed from the one operating in Great Britain.
- ✓ The Election Commission is not concerned with the elections to Panchayats and Municipalities in the States.
- ✓ It delimits the Constituencies for elections and allots the number of seats to each of them.
- ✓ It fixes the election programme-dates, the number of polling booths, and the declaration of the results.
- ✓ It determines the criteria for recognizing political parties and decides their election symbols.
- ✓ It settles the election disputes and petitions referred to it by the President or the Governor.
- ✓ The term of the Chief Election Commissioner is for 6 years or till he/she attains the age of 65 years, whichever is earlier.
- ✓ He/she can be removed from the office in the same manner as the Judges of the Supreme Court.
- ✓ He/she is not eligible for re-appointment.
- ✓ The electoral system is based on adult-suffrage, the citizen not less than 18 years of age and not otherwise disqualified has the right to vote.
- ✓ The first Chief Election Commissioner of India was Mr. Sukumar Sen (21 March 1950-19 December, 1958).

**The Voters Identity Card**

Introduced in 1993 during the tenure of the former Chief Election Commissioner TN Seshan.

**PLANNING COMMISSION**

- ✓ It was established on March 15, 1950 by an executive resolution of the Government of India.
- ✓ It was established on the recommendation of the Advisory Planning Board constituted in

1946, under the chairmanship of KC Neogi.

- ✓ It is an extra-constitutional and a non-statutory body.
  - ✓ It is the supreme organ of planning for social and economic development in India.
  - ✓ The Prime Minister of India is the ex-officio chairman of the Planning Commission.
  - ✓ The Deputy Chairman is the de-facto executive head (i.e. full time functional head of the Commission).
  - ✓ The Deputy Chairman of the Commission is responsible for the formulation and submission of the draft of the Five-Year Plans to the Central Cabinet.
  - ✓ He is appointed by the Central Cabinet for a fixed tenure and enjoys the rank of a Cabinet Minister.
  - ✓ Finance Minister and Planning Minister are the ex-officio members of the Commission.
- It is also known as 'Super Cabinet' an 'Parallel Cabinet', the 'Fifth wheel of the coach' etc.

**FINANCE COMMISSION**

- ✓ Article 280 of the Constitution provides for a Finance Commission.
- ✓ It is a quasi-judicial body.
- ✓ It is constituted by the President of India every fifth year or at such an earlier time as he appointed by the President.
- ✓ They are eligible for reappointment.
- ✓ The Parliament enacted the Finance Commission Act. in 1951, specifying the qualifications of the Chairman and the members of the Commission.
- ✓ The Chairman should be a person having experience in public affairs.
- ✓ The members should be selected from amongst the following-
  - (i) A judge of the High Court or one qualified to be appointed as one.
  - (ii) A person who has specialized knowledge of finance and accounts of the Government.
  - (iii) A person who has wide experience in

financial matters and in administration.

(iv) A person who has special knowledge of Economics.

- ✓ The recommendations made by the Finance commission are only of advisory nature and hence, not binding on the Government.

### UNION PUBLIC SERVICE COMMISSION [UPSC]

- ✓ Composition is determined to the President.
- ✓ The members of the UPSC are appointed for a term of 6 yrs, or till they attain 65 yrs of age.
- ✓ Can resign earlier to the President.
- ✓ President can remove them by issuing orders. Only the SC makes such a recommendation on the basis of an inquiry.

- ✓ Members of the UPSC are not eligible for employment by the government after retirement.

#### Functions-

- (i) To conduct exams for appointment to services under the Union.
- (ii) Advise the President (not obligatory on him) in matters relation to appointments, promotions and transfers from one service to another of civil servants.
- (iii) All disciplinary matters affecting a person in the service of Union.
- (iv) Matters regarding awards of pension and awards in respect of injuries sustained during service under the government.
- (v) Maintains continuity of administration.



Paramount Coaching Centre

# IMPORTANT ARTICLES OF THE CONSTITUTION

Articles	Subject		
Art. 1-4	The territory of India	Art. 30	Right to minorities to establish and administer educational institutions
Art. 5-11	Citizenship		<b>Saving of certain Laws</b>
	<b>FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS</b>	Art. 31A	Saving of laws providing for acquisition of estates, etc.
Art. 12	Definition	Art. 31B	Validation of certain Acts and Regulations
Art. 13	Laws inconsistent with or in derogation of the fundamental rights	Art. 31C	Saving of laws giving effect to certain directive principles
	<b>Right to Equality</b>		<b>Right to constitutional Remedies</b>
Art. 14	Equality before law	Art. 32	Remedies for enforcement of rights conferred by this Part
Art. 15	Prohibition of discrimination on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth	Art. 33	Power of Parliament to modify the rights conferred by this part in their application to Forces, etc.
Art. 16	Equality of opportunity in matters of public employment	Art. 34	Restriction on rights conferred by this Part while martial law is in force in any area
Art. 17	Abolition of untouchability	Art. 35	Legislation to give effect to the provisions of this part
Art. 18	Abolition of titles	Art. 36-51	<b>Directive Principles of State Policy</b>
	<b>Right to freedom</b>	Art. 51A	<b>Fundamental Duties</b>
Art. 19	Protection of certain rights regarding freedom of speech, etc.	Art. 52	The President of India
Art. 20	Protection in respect of conviction for offences	Art. 54	Election of President
Art. 21	Protection of life and personal liberty	Art. 61	Procedure for impeachment of the President
Art. 21A	Right to education	Art. 63	The Vice-President of India
Art. 22	Protection against arrest and detention in certain cases	Art. 72	Power of President to grant pardons etc. and to suspend, remit or commute sentences in certain cases
	<b>Right against Exploitation</b>	Art. 74	Council of Ministers to aid and advise President
Art. 23	Prohibition of traffic in human beings and forced labour	Art. 76	The Attorney-General of India
Art. 24	Prohibition of employment of children in factories, etc.	Art. 124	Establishment and Constitution of Supreme Court
	<b>Right to Freedom of Religion</b>	Art. 148	Comptroller and Auditor-General of India
Art. 25	Freedom of conscience and free profession, practice and propagation of religion	Art. 312	All-India Services
Art. 26	Freedom to manage religious affairs	Art. 352	Proclamation of Emergency
Art. 27	Freedom as to payment of taxes for promotion of any particular religion	Art. 356	Provisions in case of failure of constitutional machinery in States
Art. 28	Freedom as to attendance at religious instruction or religious worship in certain educational institutions	Art. 360	Provisions as to financial emergency
	<b>Cultural and Educational Rights</b>		
Art. 29	Protection of interests of minorities		



# IMPORTANT AMENDMENTS OF THE CONSTITUTION

Amendment	Year	Purpose
1 <sup>st</sup>	1951	(a) Abolition of Zamindari System. (b) Added Ninth schedule to the Constitution.
7 <sup>th</sup>	1956	States are reorganized.
8 <sup>th</sup>	1960	SC/ST reservation in Parliament.
15 <sup>th</sup>	1963	Raised the age of retirement of a High Court Judge from 60 to 62.
24 <sup>th</sup>	1971	Parliament got the power to amend any part of Constitution in which Fundamental Rights were also included.
27 <sup>th</sup>	1971	Reorganisation of North-Eastern States.
31 <sup>st</sup>	1974	Seats of Lok Sabha increased from 525 to 545.
35 <sup>th</sup>	1974	Sikkim was accepted as an associate State of India.
36 <sup>th</sup>	1975	Sikkim got full right as a State of India.
42 <sup>nd</sup> (Mini Constitution)	1976	(a) <b>Socialist, Secular and Integrity</b> were added to Preamble. (b) Fundamental duties were also added in IV A part of Constitution. (c) President was bounded with Prime Minister.
44 <sup>th</sup>	1977	(a) Right to property deleted from Fundamental Rights. (b) It authorized the President to refer back the advice to the council of Ministers for reconsideration but made it binding for the President to act on the reconsidered advice. (c) National emergency will be set up after written recommendation of union council of Ministers and will not be basis of internal disturbance.
48 <sup>th</sup>	1984	President rule in Punjab was extended upto 2 years.
52 <sup>nd</sup>	1985	10 <sup>th</sup> Schedule was added to the Constitution containing the modes for disqualification in case of defection from the Parliament and State Legislature.
56 <sup>th</sup>	1987	Goa got the status of a State.
61 <sup>st</sup>	1988	Reduction of voting age from 21 to 18 years.
64 <sup>th</sup>	1990	President rule in Punjab was further extended upto 6 months.
69 <sup>th</sup>	1991	Delhi got the designation of National Capital Territory.
73 <sup>rd</sup>	1992	Panchayati Raj received Constitutional status.
84 <sup>th</sup>	2001	Chhatisgarh, Uttrakhand and Jharkhand, three New States were made.
86 <sup>th</sup>	2002	(a) Right of education of children of the age of 6 to 14 years a Fundamental Right. (b) Added a new Fundamental Duty to Part IVA of the Constitution.
92 <sup>nd</sup>	2003	(a) It amended the Eighth Schedule to the Constitution. (b) Inserted four new languages in it, namely — Bodo, Dogri, Maithili and Santhali as Constitutionally recognized languages.
93 <sup>rd</sup>	2006	Reservation in admissions in private unaided educational institutions for SC/OBC/ST.



## PRIME MINISTERS

S.N.	Name	Time in office	Political party
1st	<b>Jawaharlal Nehru</b> MP for Phulpur	15 August 1947-27 May 1964	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> Indo-Pakistani War of 1947; created Planning commission of India and initiated Five-year plan to increase government investment in agriculture and industry; launched programmes to build irrigation canals, dams and spread the use of fertilizers to increase agricultural production; oversaw widespread poverty and unemployment, even with improvements in agriculture and infrastructure; oversaw establishment of All India Institute of Medical Sciences, Indian Institutes of Technology and Indian Institutes of Management; criminalized caste discrimination and increased the legal rights and social freedoms of women; pioneered the policy of non-alignment and co-founded the Non-Aligned Movement; Sino-Indian War; signed the Indus Water Treaty; granted asylum to the Dalai Lama; oversaw liberation of Goa.		
2nd	<b>Gulzarilal Nanda</b> MP for Sabarkantha	27 May 1964-9 June 1964*	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> He was a caretaker prime minister until Lal Bahadur Shastri was elected as a new leader.		
3rd	<b>Lal Bahadur Shastri</b> MP for Allahabad	9 June 1964-11 January 1966	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> Indo-Pakistani War of 1965; pushed for Green Revolution in India and Operation Flood; The National Dairy Development Board was formed; died from a heart attack at a summit in Tashkent.		
2nd	<b>Gulzarilal Nanda</b> MP for Sabarkantha	11 January 1966-24 January 1966*	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> He was in office as caretaker prime minister once again, until Indira Gandhi was chosen as the new leader.		
4th	<b>Indira Gandhi</b> MP for Rae Bareilly	24 January 1966-24 March 1977	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> nationalized banks; won the Indo-Pakistani War of 1971, which resulted in the formation of Bangladesh; signed the Shimla Agreement; tested the first nuclear weapon with Smiling Buddha; initiated Green Revolution in India; established state of emergency from 1975-1977.		
5th	<b>Morarji Desai</b> MP for Surat	24 March 1977-28 July 1979	Janata Party
	<b>Notes:-</b> ended the state of emergency initiated by Indira Gandhi; improved relations with Pakistan, China and the United States; softened relationship with the Soviet Union; launched Sixth Five-Year Plan, aiming to boost agricultural production and rural industries; the plan proved unsuccessful leading to resurging inflation, fuel shortages, unemployment and poverty; lost many MPs from Janata Party, including his rival Charan Singh, which led to his resignation.		
5th	<b>Charan Singh</b> MP for Bahupat	28 July 1979-14 January 1980	Janata Party
	<b>Notes:-</b> Initiated high level diplomatic relations with Israel; lost support of Congress, which led to his resignation without even a single session of Lok Sabha.		
th	<b>Indira Gandhi</b> MP for Rae Bareilly	14 January 1980-31 October 1984	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> Operation Bluestar, which subsequently led to her assassination; 1984 anti-Sikh riots.		
th	<b>Rajiv Gandhi</b> MP for Amethi	31 October 1984-2 December 1989	Indian National Congress
	<b>Notes:-</b> significantly reduced License Raj; expanded telecommunications in India; signed the Indo-Sri Lanka Peace Accord; Bofors scandal; nullified the Supreme Court's judgement on Shah Bano case.		

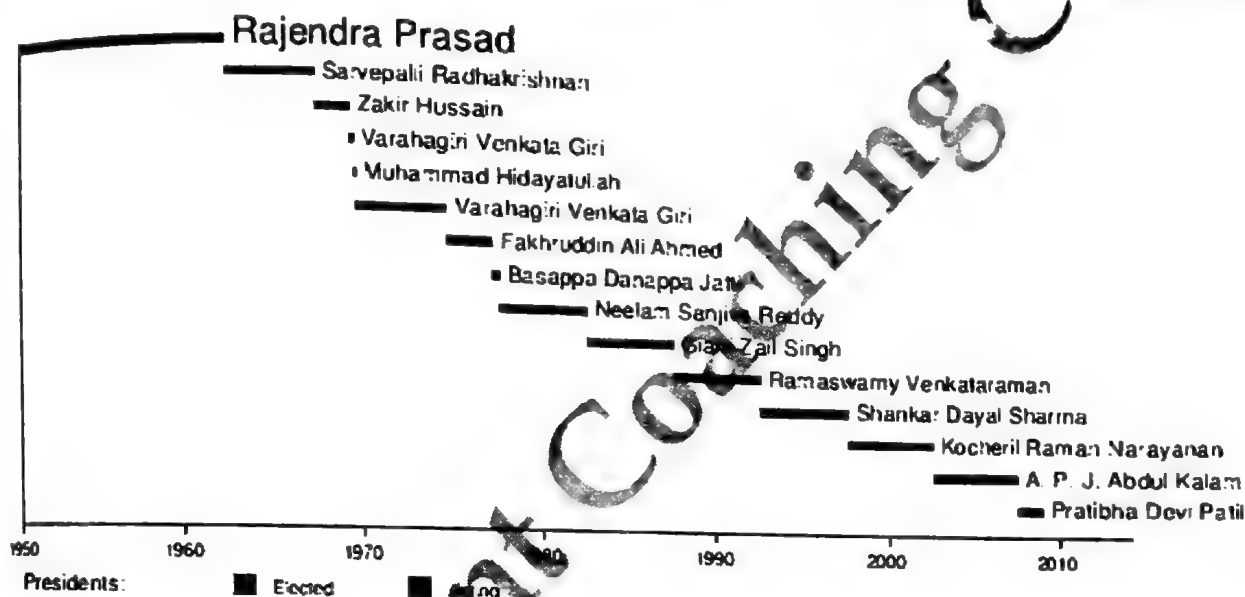
- 8th Vishwanath Pratap Singh 2 December 1989-10 November 1990 Janata Dal**  
**MP for Fatehpur**  
*Notes:-* negotiated terrorist kidnapping of Mufti Mohammad Sayeed's daughter; visited Golden Temple to ask for forgiveness for Operation Bluestar; withdrew IPKF from Sri Lanka; initiated fixed quota/reservation for all public sector jobs as per recommendation from Mandal Commission; Ram Janmabhoomi agitation and subsequent loss of vote of no confidence because of it.
- 9th Chandra Shekhar Singh 10 November 1990-21 June 1991 Samajwadi Janata Party**  
**MP for Ballia**  
*Notes:-* resigned due to accusations of spying on former Prime Minister Rajiv Gandhi, and subsequent withdrawal of Congress' support; Assassination of Rajiv Gandhi.
- 10th P. V. Narasimha Rao 21 June 1991-16 May 1996 Indian National Congress**  
**MP for Nandyal**  
*Notes:-* initiated Economic liberalization in India; SEBI Act 1992; formation of National Stock Exchange of India; 1993 Bombay bombings; introduced TADA; Demolition of Babri Masjid.
- 11th Atal Bihari Vajpayee 16 May 1996-1 June 1996 Bharatiya Janata Party**  
**MP for Lucknow**  
*Notes:-* Was in power for only 13 days, after BJP could not gather enough support from other parties to form a majority.
- 12th H. D. Deve Gowda 1 June 1996-21 April 1997 Janata Dal**  
**MP for Karnataka**  
*Notes:-* Chinese President Jiang Zemin begins the first visit by a Chinese head of state to India; initiates controversial president's rule in Gujarat.
- 13th Inder Kumar Gujral 21 April 1997-19 March 1998 Janata Dal**  
**MP for Bihar**  
*Notes:-* Fodder scam; Jain Commission.
- 11th Atal Bihari Vajpayee 19 March 1998-22 May 2004 Bharatiya Janata Party**  
**MP for Lucknow**  
*Notes:-* Pokhran nuclear tests; Kargil War; National Highway Development Project; Pradhan Mantri Gram Sadak Yojana; Barak Missile Deal Scandal; POCSA; Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan; 2001 Gujarat earthquake; 2002 Gujarat violence.
- 14th Dr. Manmohan Singh 22 May 2004-Incumbent Indian National Congress**  
**MP for Assam**  
*Notes:-* Indo-US civilian nuclear agreement; won the 2008 Lok Sabha vote of confidence; Iran-Pakistan-India gas pipeline; expanding ties with Israel; Economic crisis of 2008; National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA); Right to Information Act; revoking of POTA; 2008 Mumbai attacks and the implementation of Unlawful Activities (Prevention) Act; National Intelligence Agency.

## PRESIDENTS

This list is numbered based on Presidents elected after winning an Indian Presidential election. The terms of Varahagiri Venkata Giri, Muhammad Hidayatullah, and Basappa Danappa Jatti, who have functioned as acting presidents, are therefore not numbered. The President of India does not represent any political party, and the Political party column below indicates the party (if any) that the president was a member of before being elected. The colours used in the table indicate the following:

S.N.	Name	Time in Office	Vice President
1st	<b>Dr Rajendra Prasad</b>	26 January 1950-13 May 1962	<b>Abhijeet Bhandari</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> Prasad was the first President of independent India. He was also an independence activist of the Indian Independence Movement. Prasad was the only president to serve for two terms in office.		
2nd	<b>Sarvepalli Radhakrishnan</b>	13 May 1962-13 May 1967	<b>Zakir Hussain</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> Radhakrishnan was a prominent philosopher, writer, a Knight of the Realm and also held the position of vice chancellor of the Andhra University and Banaras Hindu University. He was also made a Knight of the Golden Army of Angels by Pope Paul VI.		
3rd	<b>Zakir Hussain</b>	13 May 1967-3 May 1969	<b>Varahagiri Venkata Giri</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> Hussain was vice chancellor of the Aligarh Muslim University and a recipient of Padma Vibhushan and Bharat Ratna. He died before his term of office was ended.		
	<b>Varahagiri Venkata Giri *</b>	3 May 1969-20 July 1969	-----
	<i>Notes:-</i> Giri was appointed as acting president following the death of Hussain. He resigned in a few months to take part in the presidential elections.		
	<b>Muhammad Hidayatullah *</b>	20 July 1969-24 August 1969	-----
	<i>Notes:-</i> Hidayatullah served as the Chief Justice of India, and was a recipient of the Order of the British Empire. He served as acting president until the election of Giri as the President of India.		
4th	<b>Varahagiri Venkata Giri</b>	24 August 1969-24 August 1974	<b>Gopal Swarup Pathak</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> Giri is the only person to have served as both an acting president and president of India. He was a recipient of the Bharat Ratna, and has functioned as Indian Minister of Labour and High Commissioner to Ceylon (Sri Lanka).		
5th	<b>Fakhruddin Ali Ahmed</b>	24 August 1974-11 February 1977	<b>Basappa Danappa Jatti</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> Fakhruddin Ali Ahmed served as a Minister before being elected as president. He died in 1977 before his term of office ended, and was the second Indian president to have died during a term of office.		
	<b>Basappa Danappa Jatti *</b>	11 February 1977-25 July 1977	-----
	<i>Notes:-</i> Jatti was the vice president of India during Ahmed's term of office, and was sworn in as acting president upon Ahmed's death. He earlier functioned as the Chief Minister for the State of Mysore.		
6th	<b>Neelam Sanjiva Reddy</b>	25 July 1977-25 July 1982	<b>Muhammad Hidayatullah</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> S. Reddy was the first Chief Minister of Andhra Pradesh State. Reddy was the only Member of Parliament from the Janata Party to get elected from Andhra Pradesh. He was unanimously elected Speaker of the Lok Sabha on 26 March 1977 and relinquished this office on 13 July 1977 to become the 6th President of India.		
7th	<b>Giani Zail Singh</b>	25 July 1982-25 July 1987	<b>Ramaswamy Venkataraman</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> In March 1972, Singh assumed the position of chief Minister of Punjab, and in 1980, he became Union Home Minister.		
8th	<b>Ramaswamy Venkataraman</b>	25 July 1987-25 July 1992	<b>Shankar Dayal Sharma</b>
	<i>Notes:-</i> In 1942, Venkataraman was jailed by the British for his involvement in the India's independence movement. After his release, he was elected to independent India's Provisional Parliament as a member of the Congress Party in 1950 and eventually joined the central government, where he first served as Minister of Finance and Industry and later as Minister of Defence.		

- 9th **Shankar Dayal Sharma** 25 July 1992-25 July 1997  
*Notes:-* Sharma was Chief Minister of Madhya Pradesh, and the Indian Minister for Communications. He has also served as the governor of Andhra Pradesh, Punjab and Maharashtra.
- 10th **Kocheril Raman Narayanan** 25 July 1997-25 July 2002  
*Notes:-* Narayanan served as India's ambassador to Thailand, Turkey, China and United States of America. He received doctorates in Science and Law and was also a chancellor in several universities. He was also the vice-chancellor of Jawaharlal Nehru University.
- 11th **A. P. J. Abdul Kalam** 25 July 2002-25 July 2007  
*Notes:-* Kalam, was a scientist who played a leading role in the development of India's ballistic missile and nuclear weapons programs. Kalam also received the Bharat Ratna.
- 12th **Pratibha Patil** 25 July 2007-Incumbent  
*Notes:-* Patil is the first woman to become the President of India. She was also the first female Governor of Rajasthan.





# Multiple-Choice Questions

1. The prime minister of India is not the head/ chairman of the following?  
 (A) Planning Commission  
 (B) National Defense Fund  
 (C) National Relief Fund  
 (D) Department of Atomic Energy  
 (E) National Productivity Council
  2. Which article deals with the procedure for amendment of the Indian Constitution?  
 (A) Article 356 (B) Article 360  
 (C) Article 368 (D) Article 370  
 (E) none of them
  3. In the wake of the sarkaria commission report, which state suggested the abolition of the office of the governor?  
 (A) Karnataka (B) Andhra Pradesh  
 (C) Tamilnadu (D) Kerala  
 (E) Gujarat
  4. How many Former Presidents have been awarded "Bharat Ratna" till now?  
 (A) 2 (B) 3 (C) 4 (D) 5 (E) 6
- Note:- Sarvapalli Radhakrishnan, Dr. Rajendra Prasad, J. B. K. Hussain, Dr. V V Giri, A P J Abdul Kalam*
5. The first non confidence motion was moved in the Lok Sabha in which of the following years?  
 (A) 1960 (B) 1963 (C) 1965  
 (D) 1968 (E) 1971
  6. Which among the following is not correctly matched?  
 (A) Uttar Pradesh High court - Allahabad  
 (B) Rajasthan High Court - Jodhpur  
 (C) Andhra Pradesh High court - Hyderabad  
 (D) Orissa High court - Bhubneshwar  
 (E) Kerala High court - Thiruvananthapuram
  7. Which among the following statements is correct ?  
 (A) A joint sitting of both the houses of the parliament is summoned and presided by President  
 (B) A joint sitting of both the houses of the parliament is summoned and presided by Speaker of the Lok Sabha  
 (C) A joint sitting of both the houses of the parliament is summoned by President and presided by Speaker of Lok Sabha  
 (D) A joint sitting of both the houses of the parliament is summoned by Speaker of Lok Sabha and presided by President  
 (E) None of them
  8. Which among the following is not correctly matched? (Women Chief Ministers)  
 (A) Sucheta Kriplani - Uttar Pradesh  
 (B) Nandini Satpaty - West Bengal  
 (C) Sashikala Kadokar - Goa  
 (D) Janaki Ramchandran - Tamil Nadu  
 (E) all correctly matched
  9. The power of Judicial review in India lies with the \_\_\_\_?  
 (A) Supreme Court only  
 (B) High court and Supreme Court  
 (C) High Court only  
 (D) Lower courts only  
 (E) High court and lower courts
  10. Which of the following states in India is exempted from reservation for Scheduled Castes in Panchayati Raj institutions?  
 (A) Rajasthan (B) Assam  
 (C) Arunachal Pradesh (D) Sikkim  
 (E) Goa
  11. In which year the age for voting rights was reduced from 21 to 18?  
 (A) 1980 (B) 1982 (C) 1986  
 (D) 1989 (E) 1978
  12. Indian Legislature became "bicameral" through which of the following?  
 (A) The Morley- Minto Reforms  
 (B) Montague-Chelmsford Reforms  
 (C) Government of India Act 1935  
 (D) Indian Councils Act 1892  
 (E) None of them
  13. Through which of the following a Federal Court was established?  
 (A) Indian Councils Act 1909  
 (B) Indian Council Act 1892  
 (C) Government of India act 1919  
 (D) Government of India act 1935  
 (E) None of them
  14. How long did the constituent assembly take to frame the constitution?  
 (A) Approximately 1 year  
 (B) Approximately 2 years  
 (C) Approximately 3 years (2 years, 11 months and 18 days)  
 (D) Approximately 4 years (E) 6 months

15. When I respect the ideals and institutions of our constitution and respect national flag and national anthem perform which of the following?  
 (A) Exercise my right to freedom  
 (B) Exercise my cultural and educational rights  
 (C) Exercise my right to constitutional remedies  
 (D) perform my fundamental duties  
 (E) none of the above
16. All those laws that were in force immediately before the enactment of the constitution shall be void to the extent of inconsistency with the fundamental rights". Essence of Article 13(1) which quotes this can be placed under which of the following?  
 (A) Judicial Activism (B) Judicial Review  
 (C) Discretionary review (D) Judicial interpretation  
 (E) Judicial Supremacy
17. By exercising its amending power under article 368, parliament can amend even part III of the constitution. Through which among the following cases Supreme Court held this?  
 1. Golak Nath Case  
 2. Sajjan Singh v/s State of Rajasthan Case  
 3. Shankari Prasad v/s Union of India Case  
 (A) 1 only (B) 1 & 2 only (C) 2 & 3 only  
 (D) 1 & 3 only (E) all 1, 2, 3
18. Constitution Part IV (Article 36-51) contain the directive principles of state policy. In the following options bring out those which include the scope of Gandhian principles?  
 (A) Article 40, 43, 44 (B) Article 40, 47, 48  
 (C) Article 50, 50 (D) Article 40, 44, 50  
 (E) Article 47 only
19. Which among the following article says that "directive principles are not enforceable by any court but at the same time declared that they are nevertheless fundamental in the governance of the country and it shall be duty of the state to apply these principles in making laws?  
 (A) Article 36 (B) Article 37 (C) Article 38  
 (D) Article 39 (E) Article 40
20. Which among the following was the first programme launched by Government of India to implement the article 47 of the directive principles of state policy?  
 (A) Integrated rural development programme  
 (B) Community development programme  
 (C) National Rural employment programme  
 (D) Desert development Programme  
 (E) Drought prone areas programme
21. Which among the following justifies the reason that Directive Principles were made explicitly unjustifiable?  
 (A) The state may not have political will to implement the Directive Principles  
 (B) The state may not need to implement the Directive principles as Fundamental rights were made justifiable  
 (C) The implementation of directive principles needs resources which the states may not have  
 (D) The Constitution does not provide any clear guidelines to implement the directive principles  
 (E) all of above
22. In which year a non statutory minority commission was established in India?  
 (A) 1978 (B) 1982 (C) 1985  
 (D) 1992 (E) 1995
23. Who among the following was the chairman of the First National Commission for Women?  
 (A) Mahini Pri (B) Dr. Poornima Advani  
 (C) Jayanti Patnaik (D) Dr. Girija Vyas  
 (E) None of the above
24. How many matters are listed in Schedule XII added by 74th Amendment, which are responsibility of the municipalities?  
 (A) 11 (B) 16 (C) 18  
 (D) 20 (E) 22
25. Which of the following Lok Sabha had the shortest duration?  
 (A) Ninth Lok Sabha (B) Sixth Lok Sabha  
 (C) Twelfth Lok Sabha (D) Thirteenth Lok Sabha  
 (E) Eleventh Lok Sabha
26. The Proposed Article 47 (A) by Constitution Review Commission of Justice M N Venkatchaliah in the directive Principles of state policy is related to which of the following?  
 (A) To amend the part IV and read it as Directive principles of State Policy and action  
 (B) Control of population  
 (C) Action against terrorism and terror activities  
 (D) set up National education commission  
 (E) None of the above
27. Which among the following is in concurrent list?  
 (A) Bankruptcy and insolvency  
 (B) estate duty in respect of property other than agricultural land  
 (C) Production, supply and distribution of goods,  
 (D) Foreign Loans  
 (E) Post office savings bank

28. In which of the following decade India saw, maximum number of Prime Ministers?  
(A) 1951-60 (B) 1961-70 (C) 1971-80  
(D) 1981-90 (E) 1991-2000
29. Where is the seat of Uttarakhand High court?  
(A) Dehradun (B) Nainital (C) Haridwar  
(D) Tehri Garhwal (E) Udham Singh Nagar
30. Article 74, 75, 78 deal broadly with which of the following?  
(A) Relationship between Prime Minister and president  
(B) Relationship between Governor and Chief Ministers  
(C) Size and nature of the council  
(D) Composition of the cabinet  
(E) None of them
32. Which of the following article deals with citizenship at the time of commencement of the constitution?  
(A) Article 5 (B) Article 6 (C) Article 7  
(D) Article 8 (E) Article 9
33. Article 25-28 of the Indian Constitution deal with \_\_\_\_?  
(A) Right to Freedom (B) Right to Equality  
(C) Freedom of religion (D) Constitutional Remedies  
(E) None of them
34. After how many years Finance Commission is appointed?  
(A) 3 years (B) 4 years (C) 5 years  
(D) 6 years (E) 2 years
35. Under which of the following the Panchayati Raj comes?  
(A) Madras High court (B) Andhra Pradesh High court  
(C) Kerala High court (D) Karnataka High court  
(E) None of them,
36. Who among the following is heading a parliamentary standing committee to recommend on women's reservation bill?  
(A) Meira Kumar (B) Sushma Swaraj  
(C) Jayaprakash Narayan (D) Brinda Karat  
(E) None of them
37. In which of the following amendment acts of the constitution two articles were added in the constitution to incorporate Administrative Tribunals?  
(A) 42nd amendment act (B) 44th amendment act  
(C) 46th amendment act (D) 49th amendment act  
(E) None of them
38. What is the number of subjects in concurrent list?  
(A) 97 (B) 66 (C) 47  
(D) 41 (E) 56
39. The "Bill of rights and Judicial Review" are sourced from constitution which of the following countries?  
(A) USA (B) Ireland (C) Canada
40. Civil cases, Criminal Cases and constitutional cases come under which of the following jurisdiction?  
(A) Appellate Jurisdiction (B) Advisory Jurisdiction  
(C) Miscellaneous Powers
41. Which among the following was a committee for backward Classes?  
(A) Rajamannar Committee (B) Sarkar Commission  
(C) Kaka Kelkar Commission
42. Reservation of seats for scheduled tribes of Nagaland, Meghalaya, Mizoram, & Arunachal Pradesh in Lok Sabha was a broad subject of which of the following Amendment Acts?  
(A) 52nd Amendment Act (B) 57th Amendment Act  
(C) 61st Amendment Act
43. Among the following is appointed by President?  
(A) Chief Election Commissioner  
(B) Speaker of Lok Sabha  
(C) Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha
44. Which among the following is related to Fundamental rights?  
(A) State Religion (B) High Court  
(C) Public Interest Litigation
45. Arrange Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Kerala, Maharashtra in correct chronological order of creation?  
(A) Maharashtra, Kerala, Himachal Pradesh, Manipur  
(B) Kerala, Maharashtra, Manipur, Himachal Pradesh  
(C) Kerala, Maharashtra, Himachal Pradesh, Manipur
46. In which year Andhra Pradesh was Created?  
(A) 1960 (B) 1971 (C) 1956
47. Which among the following is related to Panchayati Raj Institutions?  
(A) Santhanam Committee  
(B) Balwant Rai Mehta Committee  
(C) Dantwala Committee
48. The success of Bardoli Satyagraha gave rise to which one of the greatest leaders of the independence struggle?  
(A) Mahatma Gandhi (B) Sardar Patel  
(C) Subhash Chandra Bose
49. Introduction of provincial Autonomy is related to which of the following acts?  
(A) The Government of India Act, 1909  
(B) The Government of India Act, 1935  
(C) The Government of India Act, 1858

50. Sir Edwin Montagu, and the Viceroy, Lord Chelmsford are related to which of the following ?  
 (A) Government of India Act 1919  
 (B) Government of India Act 1935  
 (C) Government of India Act 1909
51. Who among the following can be appointed as ad hoc judges of Supreme Court ?  
 (A) Only Retired Judges of Supreme Court  
 (B) Only those qualified for appointed as judge of Supreme Court  
 (C) Only Retired Judges of High Courts
52. Which among the following is incorrect regarding Money Bill ?  
 (A) It can be introduced only in Lok Sabha  
 (B) It can be introduced only on the recommendation of the President  
 (C) The Rajya Sabha is given 1 months time period to make recommendation on a Money Bill
53. The Indian Constitution has been amended for how many times till now?  
 (A) 108 (B) 109 (C) 110
54. Which among the following acts provided for a High Commissioner who resided in London, representing India in Great Britain?  
 (A) Government of India Act 1919  
 (B) Government of India Act 1935  
 (C) Government of India Act 1909
55. The original constitution of India had how many schedules?  
 (A) 6 (B) 7 (C) 8
56. Which among the following sentences is correct regarding the acts added in 9th schedule of the Constitution?  
 (A) They can be challenged in the supreme court  
 (B) They can not be challenged in the supreme court  
 (C) They can be challenged in the supreme court in some conditions
57. Which among the following schedules is related to the responsibilities of Municipalities?  
 (A) 10th schedule (B) 11th schedule  
 (C) 12th schedule
58. Who among the following reserves the right to initiate the Constitutional Amendment?  
 (A) Supreme Court of India (B) Parliament of India  
 (C) President of India
59. The right to constitutional remedies in India is available to whom of the following ?  
 (A) Only Citizens of India  
 (B) All persons in case of infringement of any fundamental right  
 (C) any person for enforcing any of the fundamental rights conferred on all persons
60. The bulwark of the personal freedom is called to which of the following writs?  
 (A) Mandamus (B) Habeas corpus (C) Quo warranto
61. The reasonableness of the restrictions placed on Fundamental rights is decided by which of the following ?  
 (A) Parliament (B) President (C) Courts
62. Which among the following fundamental rights is available to Indian Citizens but not to aliens?  
 (A) Freedom of expression and speech  
 (B) Equality before Law  
 (C) Protection of life & liberty
63. Which of the following sentences is incorrect ?  
 (A) Some of these rights are not available to the Armed Forces  
 (B) In an emergency is proclaimed by President, they are automatically suspended  
 (C) They are the basic features of our constitution & they can't be amended
64. Which among the following fundamental rights has been deleted by 44th amendment bill ?  
 (A) right to form associations (B) right to property  
 (C) right against exploitation
65. A person when decides to make an application to acquire Citizenship of India by registration must have finished his living in India for \_\_\_\_?  
 (A) 3 years (B) 5 years (C) 7 years
66. When Mr. Raman (imaginary name) born in New York his father was an American and Mother was Indian. Which among the following sentence is correct regarding his citizenship?  
 (A) he can be an Indian Citizen  
 (B) he can not be an Indian Citizen  
 (C) He can be Indian Citizen if his father acquires Indian Citizenship
67. Due to an excessive number of refugees incoming to India from Sri Lanka & Bangladesh, the Citizenship act 1955 was amended and Citizenship by birth was conferred on those who have been born on or after January 26, 1950 and \_\_\_\_?  
 (A) June 30, 1987 (B) June 30, 1988  
 (C) January 26, 1987
68. Which are the conditions for acquiring Indian Citizenship?  
 (A) Domicile and Descent

- (B) Domicile, Descent & Registration  
(C) Domicile, Decent, Registration and Holding property
69. Which of the following states were created in 1987?  
(A) Maharashtra, Goa & Arunachal Pradesh  
(B) Goa and Arunachal Pradesh (C) Goa Only
70. Which of the Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Sikkim & Tripura were Union Territories before becoming states?  
(A) Himachal Pradesh, & Tripura  
(B) Himachal Pradesh, Manipur and Tripura  
(C) Himachal Pradesh, Manipur, Sikkim & Tripura
71. Which among the following is a correct order of forming of states?  
(A) Assam, Nagaland, Goa, Mizoram  
(B) Assam, Nagaland, Mizoram, Goa  
(C) Assam, Mizoram, Nagaland, Goa
72. The first session of constituent assembly took place on which of the following dates?  
(A) 9-23 December 1946 (B) 20-25 January 1947  
(C) 28 April 1947
73. Which part of the Indian constitution deals with Trade, Commerce and Inter Course within the territories of India?  
(A) Part XII (B) Part XIII (C) Part XIV
74. Which among the following provisions of Indian Constitution have been taken from the Weimar Constitution of Germany?  
(A) Emergency & its effects on Fundamental Rights  
(B) The concurrent list  
(C) Constitutional Amendments
75. Which among the following amendment acts is also called as a Mini constitution?  
(A) 52nd Amendment Act 1985  
(B) 50th Amendment Act 1984  
(C) 42nd Amendment Act 1971
76. In a Parliamentary system, which of the following sentences is correct?  
(A) Executive is responsible to the Legislature  
(B) Legislature is responsible to the Executive  
(C) Executive is responsible to the people
77. The constitution of India was ordained by which of the following?  
(A) British Government (B) Government of India  
(C) The people of India through their representatives in the Constituent assembly
78. In which of the following the basic aims and objectives of the constitution are discussed?  
(A) Part III (B) Chapter IV (C) Preamble
79. Which among the following is 22nd state of Indian union?  
(A) Goa (B) Arunachal Pradesh (C) Sikkim
80. Which among the following states is oldest?  
(A) Andhra Pradesh (B) Gujarat  
(C) Rajasthan
81. In which schedule of Indian Constitution the territorial extent of Indian states and union Territories is prescribed?  
(A) First (B) Second (C) Third
82. The single citizenship has been introduced in the Indian constitution on the pattern of which of the following constitutions?  
(A) Britain (B) Canada (C) both of them
83. To enforce the fundamental rights, which among the following body has authority to issue writs?  
(A) High Courts of India (B) Supreme Court of India  
(C) President of India
84. Who among the following can suspend the fundamental rights?  
(A) Parliament (B) President (C) Supreme Court
85. Which among the following sentences is true regarding modification of any of the fundamental rights by parliament?  
(A) The parliament can not modify any of the fundamental right  
(B) The parliament can modify the fundamental right on the direction of the president  
(C) The parliament can modify any of the fundamental rights by a special majority
86. Which among the following is the most appropriate definition of Political liberty of Citizens of India?  
(A) Right to participate in the government and assume equal opportunity to assume highest office  
(B) right to cast vote and participate in the election process  
(C) Equal opportunity to freely move in the Political territories of India
87. Which of the following states in India established Panchayati Raj in 1956?  
(A) Rajasthan & Maharashtra  
(B) Rajasthan & Andhra Pradesh  
(C) Rajasthan Only
88. Among Sindhi, Sanskrit, Kashmiri & Urdu which are the languages that are in VIII schedule of the Indian Constitution but not official language of any state in India?  
(A) Sindhi, Sanskrit, (B) Sindhi, Sanskrit, Kashmiri  
(C) Sanskrit only
89. In which year National Commission for Minorities was established?  
(A) 1990 (B) 1989 (C) 1992



90. A political party in India acquires the status of registered party if it secures what fraction of votes in a state?  
 (A) 1% (B) 2% (C) 3%
91. Which among the following are not given a right to cast their vote by postal ballot?  
 (A) Foreign Service Personnel while at abroad & Officers on Election duty  
 (B) Members of the Armed Forces  
 (C) Indian Nationals settled abroad
92. Which of the following funds is charged for the salary and other allowances of the Judges of the High Courts?  
 (A) Consolidated Fund of India  
 (B) Consolidated Fund of State  
 (C) both of them in 1:1 ratio
93. Supreme Court of India was created by \_\_\_\_\_?  
 (A) Constitution (B) an Act of Parliament  
 (C) a Presidential Order
94. In the parliament terminology, what is the meaning of "Closure"?  
 (A) end of session of parliament  
 (B) end of proceedings of a day  
 (C) end of debate on a motion
95. Section 28 A of the Representation of the People Act provides for registration of Political parties by the election commission of India. This act was enacted in which year?  
 (A) 1949 (B) 1951 (C) 1955
96. Which among the following is not a National party?  
 (A) Bahujan samaj Party  
 (B) Communist Party of India  
 (C) Dravida Munetra kadgam DMK
97. Which of the following has more than one seat in Lok Sabha?  
 (A) Nagaland (B) Tripura (C) Sikkim
98. Article 326 of Indian Constitution originally granted electoral franchise to every Indian Citizen who has not been declared a bankrupt, criminal, insane, or a non resident and has attained age of \_\_\_\_\_?  
 (A) 18 years (B) 20 years (C) 21 years
99. No amount from the "Consolidated Fund of India" can be withdrawn without the authorization from \_\_\_\_\_?  
 (A) President of India (B) Parliament of India  
 (C) Controller & Auditor General of India
100. The "Contingency Fund of India" was constituted by an act called "Contingency Fund of India Act" \_\_\_\_\_?  
 (A) 1950 (B) 1959 (C) 1960

# Some Important Questions

1. "India, that is Bharat, shall be a union of states". This is in which article of Indian constitution?  
**Article 1**
2. What do we call a rule of legislative procedure under which a further debate on a motion can be stopped?  
**Closure**
3. When does a bill presented in parliament becomes an act?  
**After President has given his assent**
4. The minimum age of candidate for the office of the President of India is.....yrs.  
**35 Years**
5. A candidate seeking elections to a state Legislative Assembly must have completed how many years?  
**25 Years**
6. Who can resolve the dispute between two houses of Parliament?  
**Lok Sabha Speaker**
7. Finance commission is appointed by president for how many years?  
**5 Years**
8. The High Court consists of Chief Justice and other judges. Who determines other Judges?  
**President**
9. Who can remove the judge of the High Court from his office before expiry of his time?  
**President on the recommendation of Parliament**
10. A Judge of High court will address his resignation to .....?  
**The President**
11. The judge of Supreme court of India Holds the office till he attain the age of .....yrs?  
**65**
12. A member of Lok Sabha may vacate his seat before expiry of his time by writing to .....?  
**Speaker**
13. A minister of is not member of a legislative assembly has to win election within .....months.  
**6**
14. A money bill can originate in Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha or both ??  
**In Lok Sabha**
15. What is the administrative authority at the 'block' level?  
**Panchayat Samiti**
16. If a person is arrested and detained in Police, has to be produced before nearest Magistrate within .....period?  
**24 hrs.**
17. A session of the Lok Sabha is prorogued by order of .....?  
**President**
18. Who decides a bill is money bill or not?  
**Speaker of the Lok Sabha**
19. In 42nd amendment two more words have been added to the preamble. What are they?  
**Socialist and Secular**
20. What are the five words of Preamble to the constitution of India?  
**Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic, Republic**
21. Who can appoint ad hoc judges in Supreme Court?  
**President of India**
22. A retired judge of High court can do private practice in which court?  
**The Chief Justice of India with the prior consent of the President of the India**
23. An ordinance issued by a governor can remain in force on its own for a maximum period of .....months?  
**6**
24. Which article of the constitution gives right to Equality?  
**Article 14-18**
25. Which Part of our constitution forms the core chapter on Fundamental Rights?  
**Part - III**
26. The number of categories of freedoms that an Indian Citizen can have?  
**6**
27. Article 370 is applicable in which state?  
**Jammu & Kashmir**
28. Who can participate in the proceedings of both the houses without even being a member?  
**Attorney General**

29. How many states India has at Present? **28**
30. How many Union Territories India has at present? **7**
31. How many schedules are there in Indian Constitution? **12**
32. What defines the aim of constitution? **Preamble**
33. How many types of Indian Citizenships are there? **Single Citizenship**
34. In which year Indian Citizenship act passed? **1955**
35. Which article of Indian Constitution abolished untouchability? **Art - 17**
36. Under which article the the president of India can be impeached? **Art - 61**
37. Under which article in Money Bill defined the constitution? **Art - 110**
38. From which country's constitution is parliamentary system adopted? **United Kingdom**
39. Which article declares that " there shall be a President of India"? **Art 52**
40. What is the maximum age for retirement of a judge of the Supreme Court? **65 yrs**
41. Who appoints " ad hoc" Judge of the Supreme Court? **Chief Justice of the Supreme Court with Permission of President**
42. Which article says " there will be governor of each state"? **Art - 153**
43. Who is responsible to form the state council of Ministers? **Governor**
44. Which is the top-most urban local government? **The Municipal Corporation**
45. Which is the permanent House of Legislature? **Legislative Council**
46. Who established Municipality in the year 1882 AD? **Lord Rippon**
47. Who is the head of the executive wing council? **Commissioner**
48. Who becomes the Chairman of the National Development Council? **Prime Minister**
49. Which non constitutional body is called "Super Cabinet"? **National Development Council**
50. What is the main objective for the formation of Interstate Council? **The Co-Ordination between Centre and State**
51. What is the color of Chakra in National Flag? **Blue**
52. What is set time to sing national anthem? **52 Seconds**
53. Who is the spokes person of the State? **Chief Minister**
54. The Ninth schedule was added to the constitution in which year? **1951**
55. Who was the interim president of First Constituent assembly? **Sachidanand Sinha**
56. Who was the first Chief election commissioner of India? **Sukumar Sen**
57. The Citizenship act was passed by the Indian Parliament in which year? **1955**
58. The power to decide an election petition in India is vested in the \_\_\_\_\_? **Administrative Tribunal**
59. "There shall be a President of India" which article says this? **Article 52**
60. Which of the following articles is related to amendment of the Indian Constitution? **article 368**

# ECONOMY

# Contents

S.No	Chapter	Page. No.
1.	Meaning, Types & Sector of Economy	1-1
2.	Salient Features of Indian Economy	2-2
3.	New Economic Policy - LPG Modal	3-2
4.	Planning in India	4-7
5.	National Income of India	8-9
6.	Indian Financial System	10-11
7.	Indian Fiscal System	12-15
8.	Banking in India	16-18
9.	International Organizations	19-23
10.	Inflation	24-25
11.	Poverty	26-27
12.	Unemployment	28-28
13.	Agriculture	29-31
14.	Miscellaneous	32-40
15.	Population Highlights - 2011	41-45



# 1

## Meaning, Types & Sector of Economy

**Economics** : It is the social science that analyzes the production, distribution and consumption of goods and services. It is subdivided into **Microeconomics** which examines the behaviour of firms, consumers and the role of government and **Macroeconomics** which deals with inflation, unemployment, industrial production and the role of the government.

### Types of Economy:

**Socialistic Economy**: It is characterized by existence of public enterprise or state ownership of capital in all the important spheres of economic activity.

**Capitalistic economy**: It is characterized by existence of private enterprise and ownership of all important sectors of production.

**Mixed economy**: In a mixed economy, the government will provide essential goods and services which the market fails to produce well. In this system, public and private sectors co-exist. India's economy is a mixed economy.

### Sectors of Economy:

**Primary Sector**: The primary sector of the economy makes direct use of national resources. This includes agriculture, roaster and fishing, mining, extraction of oil and gas. Primary sectors of Indian economy is agriculture and the related sectors.

**Secondary Sector**: This sector generally takes the output of the primary sectors and manufactures finished goods. All industrial production where physical goods are produced come under the secondary sectors.

**Tertiary Sector**: It involves providing intangible goods like services. Financial services, management, consultancy, and IT are good examples of service sectors.

□□□□

The salient features of Indian Economy include the following :

**(1) Low Per Capita Income-** Per capita income is much lower in India as compared with other developed countries. At Present, the per capita income of a country is calculated on the basis of purchasing power of currency (of that particular country); while old traditional method was based on exchange rate of currencies.

**(2) Disparities in Income Distribution-** Though the objective of establishing a socialistic society was adopted in Second Five Year Plan but it has not been achieved yet. According to the data shown by NSSO, 39% of rural population possesses only 5% of all the rural assets while, on the other hand, 8% top households possess 46% of total rural assets.

Income disparities are more intensive in urban areas as compared with those of rural areas.

**(3) Dominance of Agriculture and Heavy Population Pressure on Agriculture-** Land-labour ratio is not favourable in India. Per capita land availability is very low and on the contrary, labour use per hectare is very high in India. Agriculture sector even today provides livelihood to about 65% to 70% of the total population and contributes about 17% of Gross Domestic Product (GDP).

**(4) Unbalanced Economic Development-** India has not yet achieved the goal of a balanced economic development. According to latest World Development Report 2007 about 64% of total labour force is dependent on agriculture, 16% on industries and the rest about 20% on trade, transport and other services.

**(5) Lack of Capital-Savings** are low in India due to low national income and high consumption expenditure.

**(6) Lack of Industrialisation-** India lacks in industrialisation based on modern and advanced technology, which fails to accelerate the pace of development in the economy.

**(7) Operation of Economic Vicious Circles-** Economic vicious circles are still in operation in Indian economy and as a result poverty has become both cause and effect in the country. **India is poor because it is poor**-indicates a true economic scene of the country. The intensity of poverty has made these vicious circles unbreakable in the country.

**(8) Market Imperfections-** Indian economy faces a number of market imperfections like lack of mobility among production factors from one place to the other and lack of specialisations which hinder the optimum utilisation of available resources. All these market imperfections and their results are important reasons for undeveloped state of Indian economy.

**(9) Limited Availability of Transport and Communication Facilities-** Transport facilities are not available in remote areas of the country due to which industrial development is not equally distributed among various parts of the economy. It also hinders the process of exploiting available resources in the country.

**(10) Existence of Traditional Society-** The social problems like traditions and customs, malpractices, superstitions etc. adversely affect the process of economic development, because these social obligations increases the unproductive expenditure of the masses and hardly spare any saving for capital formation process.

□□□□

## New Economic Policy

- New economic policy is related to economic reforms. Its aim is to bring about reforms in production pattern, to obtain new technology etc.
- ✓ The main reason to start new economic policy was gulf war and problem of balance of payment in India.
  - ✓ Three main objectives of new economic policy were liberalization, privatization and globalization.
  - ✓ Main sectors of new economic reform policy 1991 were fiscal policy, monetary policy, value fixation policy, foreign policy etc.
  - ✓ The following four main steps were taken under the fiscal policy 1991
    1. To control public expenditure strictly.
    2. To expand tax net.
    3. To observe discipline in management of funds.
    4. To curtail grants (subsidy).
  - ✓ Under the monetary policy, steps were taken to control inflation.
  - ✓ Measures implemented under the industrial reform policy 1991 are-
    1. Deregulation of Industries.
    2. Norms were relaxed for disinvestment.
    3. The areas reserved for public sector were opened to private sector.
  - ✓ Under the trade policy 1991, steps were taken to abolish the excessive protection given to many industries for the promotion of international integration of economy.
  - ✓ The measures implemented to bring efficiency and market discipline under the public sector policy 1991 are-
    1. Number of reserved industries decreased.
    2. The work of rehabilitation of sick industries handed over to board of industrial financial reconstruction.
    3. Voluntary retirement schemes started to cut down the size of work force.

**Privatization** : Privatisation is to increase participation of private sector in the public sector companies by capital investment or by management or both or to hand over a public sector unit to a private company is called privatization .

**Liberalization** : Liberalization is the process by which government control is relaxed or abolished.

**Globalization** : The process of amalgamation of an economy with world economy is called Globalization. It is signified by lower duties on import and export. By doing so, that sector will also get private capital and foreign technology.

**Disinvestment** : To reduce the government share in the public sector is called disinvestment.



## 4 Planning in India

Economic planning is the process in which the limited natural resources are used skillfully to achieve the desired goals.

The basic aim of economic planning in India is to bring about rapid economic growth through development of agriculture, industry, power, transport, communication and all other sectors of the economy.

### Planning commission structure and function:

- Planning commission was constituted on 15th march 1950.
- The Prime minister is the ex-officio chairman of this commission.
- There is no provision for planning commission in the constitution of India. It was constituted in the form of an advisory and specialist institution by the Union Cabinet on the proposal of a member of Union Parliament.
- The Deputy Chairman of the planning commission enjoys the status of a Cabinet Rank Minister.

### National Development Council

- N.D.C was constituted on 6th August 1952.
- The Prime Minister is the ex-officio chairman and the Secretary of Planning Commission is the ex-officio Secretary of this council. Chief ministers of all the states and the members of planning commission are the members of N.D.C
- Its aim is to make a co-operative environment for economic planning between states and Planning commission.
- The main function of NDC are-
  1. To evaluate the management of plans from time to time.
  2. To analyze the policies affecting development.
  3. To give suggestions to achieve the aim fixed in the plan.

### First five year plan (1951-1956)

- First five year-plan was based on the "**Herold-Domar Model**".
- The aim of this plan was to start process of

balanced development of economy. **Agriculture** was on top priority in this plan.

- The First Plan emphasised its immediate objectives the **rehabilitation of refugees, rapid agricultural development** as to achieve **food self-sufficiency** in the shortest possible time and **control of inflation**.
- This plan was successful and achieved the growth rate of **3.6%** which was more than its aim.
- During this plan there was increase of 18% in national income and 41% in per capita income.

### Second Five-Year Plan (1956-1961)

- This plan was based on the **P.C. Mahalanobis** model.
- To establish socialist order, derived from Soviet model, the Second Plan aimed at rapid industrialisation with particular emphasis on the development of basic and heavy industries.
- In this plan, Industries and Minerals were on top priority and 20.1% of total outlay was allocated for this sector.
- Second priority was given to Transport and Communication for which 27% of total plan outlay was allocated.
- This plan was also successful and it achieved **4.1%** rate of growth.
- Various important large industries like Steel Plant at Durgapur, Bhilai and Rourkela were established during this plan.

### Third Five-Year Plan (1961-1966)

- The aim of this plan was to make the economy independent and to reach self active take off position. This plan is also called "**Gadgil Yojana**."
- This plan could not achieve its aim of 5.6% growth rate.
- In this plan, agriculture and industry both were on its priority.
- The main reason of failure of this plan was Indo-China war, Indo-China Pakistan war and unprecedented drought.
- A growing trade deficit and mounting debt obligation led to more and more borrowings from the International

Monetary Fund. The rupee was devalued in June 1966 to little success as it soon turned out.

#### **Plan Holiday (From 1966-1967 to 1968-1969)**

- The miserable failure of the Third Plan forced the Government to declare 'Plan Holiday'. Three Annual Plans were drawn in this intervening period. The economy faced another year of drought during 1966-67.
- During this period, three separate plans were prepared.
- Equal priority were given to agriculture, its allied sectors and the industry sector.
- The main reason of plan holiday was Indo-Pakistan war, lack of resources and increase in price-level.

#### **Fourth Five-Year Plan (1969-1974)**

- The two main objectives of this plan were 'growth with stability' and 'progressive achievement of self reliance'.
- In this plan, 'Establishment of socialist order' was specially aimed.
- 'Growth with justice' and 'Garibi Hatao' (Removal of poverty) were the main objectives of this plan.
- This plan failed to achieve its aim and it achieved only 3.3% annual rate of growth as against its aim of 5.7%.
- The shortfall during this plan was due to the adversity of climate and arrival of refugees from Bangladesh.

#### **Fifth Five-Year Plan (1974-1979)**

- The Fifth Plan draft as originally drawn up was part of a long term Perspective Plan covering a period of 10 years from 1974-75 to 1985-86.
- The two main objectives of this plan were poverty eradication and attainment of self-reliance.
- During the plan, initially the growth rate target was fixed at 5.5%, however, later on, it was amended to 4.4%.
- Top priority was given to agriculture, followed by industry and mines.
- Originally, the approach paper of the Fifth Plan was prepared under C. Subramaniam in 1972, but final draft of the Plan was prepared and launched by D.P. Dhar.

- This plan was generally successful. However, there was no significant decline in poverty and unemployment.

- This plan, which was started by the then ruling Janta Government was later terminated in the year 1978.

#### **Rolling Plan (1978-1980)**

- The new pattern started by Janta Government, which meant that every year performance of the plan would be assessed and a new plan based on such assessment be made for the subsequent year.
- The rolling plan started with an annual plan for 1978-79 and as a continuation of the terminated Fifth Plan.

#### **Sixth Five-Year Plan (1980-1985)**

- The Janta Government originally introduced this plan for the period 1978-83, but later a new Sixth Plan replaced it for the period 1980-85.
- The basic objective of the Sixth Plan was removal of poverty. The plan aimed at achieving economic and technological self-reliance, reducing poverty, generating employment and improving the quality of life of the poorest through the Minimum Needs Programme etc.
- During this period, the Indian economy made all round progress and most of the targets fixed by the Planning Commission were realised, though during the last year of the plan (1984-85) many parts of the country faced severe drought conditions.
- The target growth rate, in this plan, was fixed at 5.2% and it achieved successfully 5.7% of annual rate of growth.
- In this plan, important programmes like Integrated Rural Development Programme (IRDP), Minimum Needs Programme (MNP) were started.

#### **Seventh Five-Year Plan (1985-1990)**

- The objectives of this plan include establishment of self sufficient economy, creation of more opportunities for productive employment, slowing down the rate of population growth, to provide people with adequate nutrition and energy and environmental protection. But main aim of the plan was to increase production in all sectors and to generate opportunities for employment.



- There was increase in per capita income at the rate of 3.6% per annum.
- In this plan, for the first time private sector was given priority in comparison to public sector.
- In this plan, employment generating programmes like Jawahar Rozgar Yojana were started.
- One of the major worries during this period was widening gap between the income and expenditure of the Government which led to mounting fiscal deficit.

#### **Annual Plans**

- The Eighth Five-Year Plan (1990-95) could not take off due to the fast changing political situation at the Centre. The new government which assumed power at the Centre in June 1991, decided that the Eight Five-Year Plan would commence on April 1, 1992 and that of 1990-91 and 1991-92 should be treated as separate Annual Plans. Formulated within the framework of the Approach to the Eighth Five-Year Plan (1990-95), the basic thrust of these Annual Plans was on maximisation of employment and social transformation.

#### **Eighth Five-Year Plan (1992-1997)**

- The fourth version of the Eighth Plan (1992-97) was approved at a time when the country was going through a severe economic crisis, a rising debt burden, ever-widening budget deficits, mounting inflation and recession in industry.
- The P.V. Narasimha Rao Government initiated the process of fiscal reforms as economic reforms.
- In this plan, the primary priority was given to "Development of Human Resources" i.e. Employment, Education and Public Health. In addition to this, the important aim made in this plan was to strengthen the basic infrastructure by the end of the decade.
- The plan was successful and got 6.8% annual rate of growth, which was more than its target of 5.6%.
- During this period, Pradhan Mantri Rozgar Yojana (PMRY) was started in the year 1993.

#### **Ninth Five-Year Plan (1997-2002)**

- The Ninth Plan was launched in the fiftieth (50th) year of India's Independence.

- Planning Commission released the draft Ninth Plan document on March 1, 1998. The focus of the plan is "**Growth with Social Justice and Equality**".
- It assigned the priority to agriculture and rural development with a view to generating adequate productive employment and eradication of poverty. However, the plan failed to achieve the GDP growth target of 7% and realized only 5.35% average GDP growth.
- The recession in international economy was held responsible for the failure of ninth plan.

#### **Tenth Five-Year Plan (2002-2007)**

- In the Tenth five-year plan, it had been proposed to eradicate poverty and unemployment and to double the per capita income in next 10 years.
- The Tenth Plan has indicated that the current backlog of unemployment is around 35 million persons i.e. 9% of the labour force.
- The Tenth Plan was expected to follow a regional approach rather than sectoral approach to bring down regional inequalities.

#### **Eleventh Five-Year Plan (2007-2012)**

The eleventh plan has the following objectives:

##### **1. Income & Poverty**

- Accelerate GDP growth from 8% to 10% and then maintain at 10% in the 12th Plan in order to double per capita income by 2016-17.
- Increase agricultural GDP growth rate to 4% per year to ensure a broader spread of benefits.
- Create 70 million new work opportunities.
- Reduce educated unemployment to below 5%.
- Raise real wage rate of unskilled workers by 20 percent.
- Reduce the headcount ratio of consumption poverty by 10 percentage points.

##### **2. Education**

- Reduce dropout rates of children from elementary school from 52.2% in 2003-04 to 20% by 2011-12

- Develop minimum standards of educational attainment in elementary school and by regular testing monitor effectiveness of education to ensure quality.

- Increase literacy rate for persons of age 7 years or above to 85%.

- Lower gender gap in literacy to 10 percentage point.

- Increase the percentage of each cohort going to higher education from the present 10% to 15% by the end of the plan

### 3. Health

- Reduce infant mortality rate to 28 and maternal mortality ratio to 1 per 1000 live births

- Reduce Total Fertility Rate to 2.1

#### (a)

- Provide clean drinking water for all by 2009 and ensure that there are no slip-backs.

- Reduce malnutrition among children of age group 0-3 to half its present level.

- Reduce anaemia among women and girls by 50% by the end of the plan.

#### (b) Women and Children

- Raise the sex ratio for age group 0-6 to 935 by 2011-12 and to 950 by 2016-17.

- Ensure that at least 33 percent of the direct and indirect beneficiaries of all government schemes are women and girl children.

- Ensure that all children enjoy a safe childhood without any compulsion to work.

#### (c) Infrastructure

- Ensure electricity connection to all villages and BPL households by 2009 and round-the-clock power.

- Ensure all-weather road connection to all habitation with population 1000 and above (500 in hilly and tribal areas) by 2009 and ensure coverage of all significant habitation by 2015.

- Connect every village by telephone by November 2007 and provide broadband connectivity to all villages by 2012.

- Provide housestead sites to all by 2012 and speed up the pace of house construction for rural poor to cover all the poor by 2016-17.

#### (d) Environment

- Increase forest and tree cover by 5 percentage points.

- Attain WHO standards of air quality in all major cities by 2011-12.

- Treat all urban waste water by 2011-12 to clean river waters.

- Increase energy efficiency by 20%.

- Target growth: 8.33%

Growth achieved: 7.94%

□□□□

According to the National Income Committee (1949), "A national income estimate measures the volume of commodities and services turned out during a given period counted without duplication." Thus **national income measures the net value of goods and services produced in a country during a year and it also includes net earned foreign income.** National income is a flow not a stock. As contrasted with national wealth which measures the stock of commodities held by the nationals of a country at a point of time, national income measures the productive power of an economy in a given period to turn out goods and services for final consumption.

In India, National income estimates are related with the financial year (April 1 to 31st March).

### Concepts of National Income

The various concepts of national income are as follows-

**Gross Domestic Product (GDP)** - It is the total money value of all final goods and services produced within the geographical boundaries of the country during a given period of time.

**Gross National Product (GNP)**- Gross National Product refers to the money value of total output or production of final goods and services produced by the nationals of a country during a given period of time, generally a year.

As we include all final goods and services, produced by nationals of a country during a year, in the calculation of GNP, we include the money value of goods and services produced by nationals outside the country in calculating GNP. Hence, income produced and received by nationals of a country within the boundaries of foreign countries should be added in Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of the country. Similarly income received by foreign nationals within the boundary of the country should be excluded from GDP.

In equation form:

$$\text{GNP} = \text{GDP} + X - M,$$

where

X = Income earned and received by nationals within the boundaries of foreign countries.

M = Income received by foreign nationals within the country.

If  $X = M$ , then  $\text{GNP} = \text{GDP}$ . Similarly, in a closed economy

$$X = M = 0$$

then also  $\text{GNP} = \text{GDP}$

As a conclusion it must be understood, while domestic product emphasises the total output which is raised within the geographical boundaries of the country, national product focuses attention not only on the domestic product but also on goods and services produced outside the boundaries of a nation. Besides, any part of GDP which is produced by nationals of a country, should be included in GNP.

**Net National Product (NNP)** - NNP is obtained by subtracting depreciation value (i.e. capital stock consumption) from GNP.

In equation form:

$$\text{NNP} = \text{GNP} - \text{Depreciation.}$$

**National Income**- GNP is based on market prices of produced goods which includes indirect taxes and subsidies. NNP can be calculated in two ways-

- (i) at market prices of goods and services
- (ii) at factor cost

**When NNP is obtained at factor cost, it is known as National Income.** National Income is calculated by subtracting net indirect taxes (i.e. total indirect tax-subsidy) from NNP at market prices. The obtained value is known as NNP at factor cost or National income.

In equation form:

NNP at factor cost or National Income

= NNP at Market price - (Indirect Taxes - Subsidy)

**Personal Income-** Personal income is that income which is actually obtained by nationals. Personal income is obtained by subtracting corporate taxes and payments made for social securities provisions from national income and adding to it government transfer payments, business transfer payments and net interest paid by the government.

In equation form :

**Personal Income** = National income - undistributed profits of corporation - payments for social security provisions - corporate taxes + government transfer payments + Business transfer payments + Net interest paid by government.

It should always be kept in mind that personal income is a flow concept.

**Disposable Personal Income-** When personal direct taxes are subtracted from personal income, the obtained value is called disposable personal income (DPI). In equation form:

**[Disposable Personal Income] = [Personal Income - Direct Taxes]**

□□□□

Paramount Coaching Centre

**Indian Financial System**

- Indian financial system is a system in which people, financial institutions, banks, Industrial companies and the government demand for fund and the same is supplied to them.
- There are two parts of Indian Financial System—first demand side and second supply side. The representative of demand side can be Individual investor. Industrial and Business Companies, Government etc. and the representative of supply side will be Banks, Insurance Companies, Mutual Fund and other Financial Institutions.
- The Indian financial system which refers to the borrowing and lending of funds or to the demand for and supply of funds of all individuals, institutions, companies and of the Government consists of two parts— the Indian money market and the Indian capital market.
- The Indian money market is the market in which short-term funds are borrowed and lent, however the capital market in India is the market for medium-term and long-term funds.
- The Indian financial system performs a crucial role in economic development of India through saving-investment process also known as capital formation.
- The financial system is commonly classified into: (a) Industrial finance (b) Agricultural finance (c) Development finance and (d) Government finance.
- **Devaluation** means lowering the official value of the local money in terms of foreign currency or gold.
- **Balance of Payments (BOP)**: It is a systematic record of all the economic transactions between one country and the rest of the world in a given period.
- **Balance of Trade (BOT)**: It is the difference between the value of goods exported and the value of goods imported per annum. Services are not included in BOT.
- BOP is divided in current account and capital account. EXIM Policy 2000-01 introduced Special Economic Zones Scheme (SEZ).
- In 1994-95, Indian Rupee was made fully

convertible on current account.

- Fiscal Policy is the policy relating to public revenue and public expenditure and allied matters.
- Usually, the Indian money market is classified into organised sector and the unorganised sector.
- The unorganised sector consists of indigenous bankers including the non-banking financial companies (NBFCs). Besides these two, there are many sub-markets in the Indian money market.
- The organised banking system in India can be broadly divided into three categories—the central bank of the country (**The Reserve Bank of India**), the commercial banks and the co-operative banks which includes private sector and public sector banks and also foreign banks.

**The Indian Capital Market**

- The Indian capital market is the market for long-term capital; it refers to all the facilities and institutional arrangements for borrowing and lending "term funds" — medium term and long term funds.
- The Capital Market in India includes : (i) Government Securities (Gilt-edged market) (ii) Industrial Securities Market (iii) Development financial institutions like IFCI, IDBI, ICICI, SFCs, IIBI, UTI etc. (iv) Financial Intermediaries like Merchant banks.
- Individuals who invest directly on their own in securities are also supplier of fund to capital market. The trend in the capital market is basically affected by two important factors : (i) operations of the institutional investors in the market (ii) the excellent results flowing in from the corporate sector.

**The capital market in India can be classified into :**

- Gilt-edged market or market for Government and semi-government securities.
  - (i) Industrial securities market
  - (ii) Development financial institutions
  - (iii) Non-banking financial companies
- The gilt-edged securities market is the market for Government and semi-



government securities which carry fixed interest rates.

The industrial securities market is the market for equities and debentures of companies of the corporate sector. This market is further classified into

- (a) new issue markets for raising fresh capital in the form of shares and debentures (commonly referred to as primary market) and
- (b) old issues market (or secondary market) for buying or selling shares and debentures of existing companies. This market is commonly referred to as the stock market or stock exchange.
- If shares or debentures of private corporations, primary securities of government companies or new securities and issue of bonds of public sector are sold or purchased in the capital market, then the market is called Primary Capital Market.
- Secondary Market includes transactions in the stock exchange and gilt-edged market.
- Merchant Bank, Mutual Fund, Leasing Companies, Risk Capital Companies etc. collect and invest public money into the capital market.
- Unit Trust of India (UTI) is the biggest Mutual Fund Institution of India.

#### Stock Exchange

- The stock exchange is the market for buying and selling of stocks, shares, securities, bonds and debentures etc. It increases the market ability of existing securities by providing simple method for public and others in buy and sell securities.
- The first organised stock exchange in India was started in Bombay (now Mumbai) when the "Native Share Brokers' Association" known as the Bombay Stock Exchange (BSE) was formed by the brokers in Bombay. BSE was Asia's oldest stock exchange.
- In 1894, the Ahmedabad stock Exchange was started to facilitate dealings in the shares of textile mills there.
- The Calcutta Stock Exchange was started in 1908 to provide a market for shares of plantations and jute mills.
- The number of stock exchanges rose from 7 in 1939 to 21 in 1945.
- Under the securities contract (Regulation) Act of 1956, the Government of India has so far recognised 23 stock exchanges. Bombay is the premier exchange in the country.
- With the setting up of National Stock Exchange, all regional stock exchanges have lost relevance.
- The BSE transformed itself into a corporate entity from being a brokers association, from the middle of August, 2005.
- As a public limited company, BSE (Bombay Stock Exchange) is obliged to dilute stock brokers stake to 49%.
- To prevent excessive speculation and volatility in the stock market SEBI has introduced rolling settlements from July 2, 2001 under which settlement has to be made every day.

#### Some Important Share Price Index of India

- **BSE SENSEX** : This is the most sensitive share index of the Mumbai Stock Exchange. This is the representative index of 30 main shares. Its base year is 1978-79. BSE is the oldest stock exchange of India, founded in 1875.
- **BSE 200** : This represents 200 shares of Mumbai Stock Exchange. Its base year is 1989-90.
- **DOLLEX** : Index of 200 BSE Dollar Value Index is called DOLLEX. Its base year is 1989-90.
- **NSE-50** : National Stock Exchange has launched a new share Price Index, NSE-50 in place of NSE-100 in April 1996. NSE-50 includes 50 companies shares. This stock exchange was founded on **Ferwani Committee's recommendation** in 1994.
- **CRISIL** : It is set up in 1988. It is a credit rating agency. It undertakes the rating, fixed deposit programmes, convertible and non-convertible debentures and also credit assessment of companies.
- **CRISIL 500** : It is the new share Price Index introduced by Credit Rating Agency the "Credit Rating Information Services of India Limited" (CRISIL) on January 18, 1996.
- Apart from CRISIL, there is another credit rating agency called "Investment Information and Credit Rating Agency of India Limited (ICRA)." It rates debt instruments of both financial and manufacturing companies.
- The National Stock Exchange (NSE) has launched a new version of its online trading software called 'National Exchange for Automatic Trading' (NEAT).

□□□□

**Fiscal System**

It refers to the management of revenue and capital expenditure finances by the state. Hence fiscal system includes budgetary activities of the government that is revenue raising, borrowing and spending activities.

**Fiscal Policy:** Fiscal policy refers to the use of taxation, public expenditure and the management of public debt in order to achieve certain specified objectives.

**Sources of revenue for centre**

The revenue of the central government consists of the following elements-

1. Tax revenue
2. Non tax revenue

**Sources of revenue for state-**

- a. State tax revenue
- b. Share in central taxes
- c. Income from social, commercial and economic service and profits of state run enterprises. State tax revenue includes among others land revenue, stamp, registration and estate duty etc.

**Expenditure of the centre:** The central government makes expenditures broadly under two heads-

1. Plan expenditure
2. Non Plan expenditure

Under plan expenditure comes outlay for agriculture, rural development, irrigation and flood control, energy, industry and minerals, transport communication, science & technology, environment and economic service etc.

The major non-plan expenditure are interest payments, defence, subsidies and general services.

- Public debt of the government of India is of two kinds, internal and external.
- Internal debt: It comprises loans raised from the open market, compensation bonds, treasury bills issued to the RBI, commercial banks etc.

**Objective of fiscal policy in India**

Fiscal policy essentially has a multidimensional role. However, in India in the context of indicative planning it has two major objectives -

1. Improving the growth performance of the economy.

2. Ensuring social justice to the people.

**Fiscal policy influences growth performance of an economy mainly in two ways -**

1. Influencing the resource mobilization.
2. Influencing the efficiency of resource allocation.

**There are three parts of the fiscal policy-**

1. Public revenue
2. Public expenditure
3. Public debt.

**Public Revenue:** Public revenue, an indispensable organ of public finance operation include all income and receipts of the government through various sources.

**Sources of Public Revenue:** Government spends money for development and welfare activities. The expenditure on food, education health, infrastructure etc. are increasing day by day. To meet these expenses the government mobilizes income from various sources. This income is called public revenue.

**The different sources of income are-**

- Tax
- Income from public enterprises

**Tax Revenue:** Tax is a compulsory payment by the citizens to the government to meet the public expenditure.

There are three types of taxes-

1. Direct and indirect tax
2. Progressive and regressive tax
3. Advalorem and specific tax

**Direct Tax:** A direct tax is one whose burden falls on the same person on whom it is levied i.e. he cannot shift his burden to somebody else.

**Indirect Tax:** An indirect tax is one which is imposed on someone but whose burden is shifted to some one else.

Direct Tax	Indirect Tax
○ Personal income tax	○ Excise duty
○ Corporate tax	○ Custom duty
○ Wealth tax	○ Sales tax
○ Gift tax	○ Service tax
○ Land Revenue	○ Value added tax
○ Professional tax	○ Passenger tax
○ Entertainment tax	

**Progressive tax:** A tax that takes away a higher proportion of one's income as the income rises is known as progressive tax. Indian income tax is a progressive tax.

**Regressive tax:** Regressive tax is one in which the rate goes down as the income of a person goes up.

**Budget:** The budget of the government of India for any year gives a complete picture of the estimated receipts and expenditure of the government for that year on the basis of the budget figures of the two previous years. The budget consists of two parts.

1. Revenue budget
2. Capital budget

**Revenue Budget:** All Current receipts such as taxation, surplus of public enterprises and expenditures of the government.

**Capital Budget:** All capital receipts and expenditure such as domestic and foreign loans, loan repayments, foreign aid etc.

**Deficits:** A budget can be a balance budget, surplus budget or a deficit budget. In a budget statement, there is a mention of four types of deficits.

**a. Revenue Deficit:** Revenue deficit refers to the excess of revenue expenditure over revenue receipts.

$$\text{Revenue Deficit} = \text{Total Revenue Expenditure} - \text{Total revenue receipts}$$

$$= \text{Non plan expenditure} + \text{Plan expenditure} - (\text{net tax revenue} + \text{non tax revenue})$$

$$\text{Budget Deficit} = \text{Total expenditure} - \text{Total receipts}$$

$$\text{Fiscal Deficit} = \text{Revenue receipts} - \text{Total expenditure}$$

**Primary Deficit:** Primary Deficit refers to fiscal deficit minus interest payments.

$$\text{Primary Deficit} = \text{Revenue Deficit} - \text{Interest payments}$$

#### **Revenue Deficits (RD)**

$$= \text{Revenue Expenditure} - \text{Revenue Receipts}$$

Government cannot balance its day-to-day expenditure and day-to-day income. It is dangerous.

$$\text{Fiscal deficit (FD)} = \text{Total Expenditure} - (\text{RR} + \text{non-debt creating capital receipts})$$

#### **PRIMARY DEFICIT**

$$= \text{Fiscal Deficit} - \text{Interest Bearings}$$

#### **MONETIZED DEFICIT**

It means net addition of RBI credit to the government during the year which leads to creation of new notes (currency) by the RBI and thus brings about monetization of the economy. (RBI makes this money against the government's treasury bills). FD can also be expressed in the form of the following equation

$$\text{FD} = \text{Budget Deficit} + \text{Borrowings (Wrong way of calculation)}$$

From 1997 government abolished BD as a concept as it includes borrowings

#### **VARIOUS TAXES PREVAILING IN INDIA**

1. Corporate Tax - Tax on Companies profit (30% on foreign companies it is 40%)
2. Customs Duty
3. Excise Duty
4. Income Tax
5. Service Tax
6. MAT - Minimum Alternative Tax
7. STT - Securities Transaction Tax
8. FBT - Fringe Benefit Tax
9. BCTT - Banking Cash Transaction Tax (BCTT is also called CWT - Cash Withdrawal Tax)
10. Tonnage Tax
11. EET - Exempt Exempt tax
12. MODAT
13. CENVAT
14. State Level VAT
15. CST - Central Sales Tax

#### **Corporate Tax:**

Tax on companies profit:

On domestic companies (30%)

On foreign companies (40%)

#### **SURCHARGE:**

Tax on Tax (10%) - To reduce inequalities. (Maximum limit is 1 crore)

**Indirect Cess:** It is a temporary levy imposed to achieve a specific objective

## CUSTOM DUTY

- Custom duty includes Export and import duty. Since there is no export duties in India for many year, for all purposes it means import duty.

PEARATE of custom duty means the highest average rate of import duty on non - agriculture goods i.e. on manufactured products.

In India, it is 10% at present. This doesn't mean that there will not be a higher custom duty on certain products. For eg. Import duty on luxury cars is even 200% on liquor more than 150% thus peak rate of duty by and large applies to most of the standard products.

- There is also a duty called **Counter Vailing Duty (CVD)** which is a duty imposed over and above basic custom duty on such imported products whose price happens to be lower than the price of similar domestic product so that in order to provide a competitive edge to the domestic product, a CVD is imposed in such a way that it makes the prices of imported products equal to/higher than domestic product prices.

There is also an import duty called '**Anti-Dumping Duty**' which can be imposed by a nation on such imported products which are deliberately sold by an exporting country at a prices lower than the price at which it may be sold in the home market. On such products, WTO permits imposition of duties.

Eg: china started dumping batteries in India.

## Excise Duty

It means duty on products manufacture within the country. Excise is imposed by the centre on most of the commodities.

## Service Tax

Tax on Services (10%)

## MAT- Minimum Alternative Tax

It is the tax imposed on companies which show high profits, pay high dividends to share holders and yet manipulate their accounts legally that they end up paying zero tax to the government on such companies, government imposes MAT at the rate of 10% of their booked profit i.e. profit on the basis of which they declare dividends.

## STT- Securities Transaction Tax

It is a tax imposed on transaction in the stock market i.e. on the total value of share bought and sold in the stock market. The tax is share equally between the year and the seller [at the rate of 0.25% on each]

## FBT- Fringe Benefit Tax

FBT is a tax imposed on Fringe Benefits provided by an employer to his employees by way of conveyance, entertainment, telephone, Children Education, Club membership, Pensioner Benefits etc.

## Tonnage Tax

It is a tax imposed on shipping company on the basis of tonnage carried by them and the number of days the ship has been in operation. On this basis a national income is worked out and subjected to tax at prevailing corporate tax rate.

## Capital Gains Tax

It is imposed on such gains made by an individual/company which arise due to increase in the value of a property over a period of time. For eg. A house bought for 5 lakhs in 2000 is sold for 40 lakh in 2007. Thus capital gain of 35 lakhs is subject to tax at the rate of 10%

## MODVAT

It was introduced by **Jha committee** in 1986. It means modified Value Added Tax which implies 2 things in respect of central excise duty.

(i) Removal of cascading burden

(ii) Rationalization Under MODVAT for eg. A pen

Under MODVAT for eg. A pen manufacture manufacturing 2 lakhs worth of pens in a year is subjected to pay excise duty at the rate of 20% (i.e. 40,000). But he is refunded excise duty paid by him on input used for manufacturing pens. Thus it means avoiding double taxation. Thus MODVAT was introduced to rationalize central excise duty. Earlier excise duty was paid on both output and input. MODVAT was renamed as CENVAT under which there was further rationalisation in the sense that rate of excise duty was the same with 16% both on input and output.

### State Level VAT

It is the VAT introduced from 1st April, 2005 to replace sales Tax, Turnover Tax, surcharge on sales tax etc. It was introduced on the recommendation of **Asim Das Gupta Committee** which proposed a white paper as a consensus among state government about the introduction of VAT. There are 2 standard rates of VAT- 12.5% and 4%. The former generally on final products and the latter on input including some essential commodities like drugs. There is also a 1% rate of VAT on gold and silver ornaments. Thus from 1st April, 2005 most state governments have introduced VAT to replace state sales tax. The biggest virtue of VAT is that it minimizes evasion because a seller pays VAT on his sales but gets refunds of VAT paid by him on previous purchases. A retailer pays VAT but is refunded VAT paid by him on goods purchased by him on wholesale. He cannot claim this refund unless he shows receipt. Thus VAT minimizes evasion and this is the reason that revenues of state governments have gone up substantially after the introduction of VAT.

### Central Sales Tax

It is the tax collected by the selling states from the buying state. Thus it is an interstate tax. The rate is 3%. It is abolished after GST was introduced.

**FRBM Act:** Fiscal responsibility and budget management Act was passed in 2003 for which rules were laid in 2004.

According to this act, the governments bring down its revenue deficit to zero and FD to 3% by 2008-09. The Act aims at ensuring stability, accountability and transparency on central govt. finances. It is binding on states to implement similar legislation on their own level.

**Government expenditure:** It is classified into-

- a. Plan expenditure
- b. Non-plan expenditure

**Plan expenditure-** The expenditure for which there is a provision in 5 year plan.

**Non-plan expenditure-** The expenditure for which provision is made in annual budget because most of this expenditure is uncertain, unpredictable, volatile and cannot be projected for a 5 year period. e.g. expenditure on defense, law and order, civil expenditure, grants to state etc.

The biggest culprit of government finances is fast rising non-plan expenditure although plan-expenditure is also rising but not as fast as the non-plan expenditure.

Most of the VRS non-plan expenditure is unproductive. Hence, it leads to borrowing, interest burden, high revenue and fiscal deficits. Unfortunately, government finds it extremely difficult to ascertain non-plan expenditure as most of it are due to political compulsion. However, the government in post reform period tried to reduce the overall expenditure by adopting zero based budgeting. Outcome budgeting, banning fresh recruitments in government offering and by handing over certain public utility, services to Private Sector. It has also taken measure to improve the performance of PSUs.

**Zero based budgeting** means that a government department prepares its annual budget in such a way as if there was no budget in the past (zero base). The idea is to identify each item of expenditure on its own merit rather than its reference to the past so that unnecessary expenditure is weeded out.

□□□□



## 8 Banking in India

### Reserve Bank of India (RBI)

The RBI was established under the Reserve Bank of India Act 1934 on 1st April 1935. It was nationalized on 1st January 1949. RBI is the central bank of the country.

### Functions of the RBI:

1. It is the sole authority to issue currency in India. It issues two rupee notes and above while one rupee and subsidiary coins are issued by the ministry of Finance but distributed by the RBI on behalf of the government.

It issues currency under Minimum Reserve System under which it keeps a minimum backing of 200 crores out of which 115 crores worth of gold & 85 crores worth of foreign securities i.e. bonds of U.S. govt. and some other advanced countries of Europe.

Against this backing, RBI can issue unlimited amount of currency in the country. It issues currencies according to the projection of GDP.

2. RBI is government Bank.
3. RBI is Banker's Bank.
4. RBI Acts as an agent to the Indian govt. as a member to the IMF.
5. RBI acts as the central clearing house for inter-bank transactions.
6. RBI is custodian of India's foreign exchange reserves.
7. RBI is the lender of the last resort. In other words, when a bank fails to get funds from any other source it can always depend on the RBI.
8. RBI is the controller of credit given by bank to various sectors of the economy. It controls credit by adopting the following 2 sets of measures.
  - (i) Quantitative measures
  - (ii) Qualitative measures also called selective measures

Quantitative measures are measures aimed at controlling and regulating the overall quantum/volume of credit (i.e. loans) given by commercial banks to various sectors of the economy. Qualitative measures are those aimed at controlling not only the quantum but also the purpose for which the loans are given by banks to various sectors of the economy eg. wine making or wheat production.

### Quantitative measures

1. Bank Rate (BR)
2. Cash reserve Ratio (CRR)
3. Open Market Operations (OMO)
4. Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR)
5. Repo/Reverse Repo

**Bank Rate:** Bank rate is the rate of interest at which the RBI provides assistance to commercial banks. When this rate is raised it is called 'Dear money policy' when it is lower it is called 'Cheap Money Policy' generally this rate may be raised during a period of inflation and lowered during a period of recession.

**Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR):** It is that ratio of the total deposit of a bank which it has to necessarily keep with the central bank of a country at any given point of time. This ratio generally may be raised at the time of inflation and lowered at the time of recession.

**Statutory Liquidity Ratio (SLR):** SLR is that ratio of the total deposits of a bank which it has to maintain and keep with itself in the form of liquid funds i.e. in the form of-

- (a) Cash in hand
- (b) Governments Securities

**Open market operations (OMO) :** OMO are operations conducted by the central bank of any country under which it may buy government securities from commercial bank or sell securities to commercial banks.

**Repos:** Repo means repurchase options exercised by the RBI since 1992 under which RBI buys govt. securities from banks repos are essentially short term operations conducted to manage the supply and demand of liquidity

in a short period. Thus repo means injection of liquidity by the RBI.

**Reverse Repo:** Reverse repo-operation started by the RBI since 1996 implies that it is banks which lend to the RBI by buying govt. securities from the RBI for a short period with a promise to sell them back to the RBI on a specified date at a certain price.

Thus reverse repo imply absorption of liquidity under which banks give loans to RBI against govt. security for a short period.

#### **Qualitative measures.**

1. Rationing of credit.
2. Regulation of credit for consumption purpose
3. Variation of margin requirements.
4. Moral control
5. Direct action

**Rationing of credit :** Under this method the RBI directs banks to give credit in accordance with the importance of various sectors in economy from time to time eg. It has directed banks that they must give 40% of their total credit at any given point of time to priority sector as identified by the RBI which consists of sectors like agriculture, small scale industries. Road & water transport, retail trade, low cost housing, poverty alleviation, employment generation etc.

**Regulation of credit for consumption purpose:** RBI directs banks to restrict credit for purchase of consumer durable like TV, fridge etc. and instead give more credit for productive purpose.

**Variation of margin requirements:** The RBI directs bank from time to time to vary (raise or lower) margins on loans given by banks particularly for sensitive and essential commodities eg: when a person required to take loan for a car then bank will give 85% loan & ask 15% for paying on his own (down payment).

**Moral control:** When banks defy from the instruction & regulation of RBI, the RBI gives moral pressure or advice from time to time to restrain from doing it and when the banks do not obey, it allows the public to know about it.

#### **Direct action:**

- (a) Charge penalty interest rate
- (b) Stop lending
- (c) Moratorium for few months
- (d) Cancel the license of the bank

#### **Banking in India**

- The first bank of limited liability managed by Indians was oduh commercial banks founded in 1881.
  - Swadeshi movement encouraged the formation of a number of commercial banks.
  - Commercial banks are broadly classified into nationalized or public sector banks and private sector banks with a few foreign banks.
  - Imperial bank of India was setup in 1921 by merging 3 presidency Banks of Madras, Bombay and Bengal. Imperial banks was nationalized in 1955 and renamed as State Banks of India (RBI) in 1959. 7 regional banks were nationalized and given the status of associate banks of state banks of India.
  - On 19th July 1969, 14 big commercial banks with deposits worth Rs. 50 crore or more and on 15th April 1980, six other scheduled banks were nationalized, bringing total number of nationalized banks to 27 (19+SBI+7SBI/Associates).
  - Banks that we deal with on a day to day basis are called Scheduled Commercial Banks. A scheduled commercial bank is a bank listed in the second schedule of the RBI act 1934 according to which such a bank must satisfy the following 2 conditions -
    - (a) Paid up capital of 5 lakhs and above
    - (b) Such a bank must function in the interest of the depositors.
- A scheduled commercial bank enjoys patronage refinancing of RBI while a non-scheduled bank does not.
- Scheduled commercial banks that we deal with on a day-to-day basis are -*
- (a) Public sector banks
  - (b) Pvt. Sector banks
  - (c) Foreign Banks

**Regional Rural Banks:** The regional rural banks (RRBs) have the objective of developing rural economy by providing credit and deposit facilities for agriculture and productive activities of all kinds in rural areas.

**Development of Banks**

Industrial development bank of India (IDBI) was established in 1964.

Industrial Finance Corporation of India (IFCI) was established in 1948.

Industrial credit and investment corporation of India limited (ICICI) was established in 1991.

Small Industries Development Bank of India (SIDBI) was established in 1989.

Export-Import bank of India (Exim bank) was established in 1982.

National housing bank (NHB) started operation in 1968.

NABARD: (National Bank for agriculture and Rural Development) was established in 1982.

**Important Banking term:**

1. **PLR:** Prime Lending rate is that rate of interest at which a bank loans its prime borrowers mostly corporate borrowers which have high net worth, like blue chip companies. For other non-prime borrowers it charges higher rate of interest than PLR. Each bank determines PLR rate itself.

□□□□

Paramount Coaching Centre

## 9

# International Organisations

### International Monetary Fund (IMF):

IMF is an international monetary organization. It was established on December 27, 1945 in Washington on the recommendations of Bretton Woods Conference.

#### Objectives of IMF-

- (i) To promote international monetary co-operation.
- (ii) To ensure balanced international trade.
- (iii) To ensure exchange rate stability.
- (iv) To grant economic assistance to member countries for eliminating the adverse imbalance in balance of payments.

IMF is controlled and managed by a Board of Governors. Each member country nominates a Governor. All the nominated Governors make the Board of Governors. Each country also nominates an alternate Governor who casts his vote in the absence of the Governor. Each Governor is allotted a number of votes which is determined by the quota allotted to the respective country in the capital of IMF.

Rank	Country	Quota %
I.	USA	17.09
II.	India	2.44

**International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD):** IBRD and its associate institutions as a group are known as the World Bank.

IBRD was established in December 1945 with the IMF on the basis of the recommendation of the Bretton Wood Conference. That is the reason why IMF and IBRD are called "Bretton Wood Twins". IBRD started functioning in June 1946, India is a member of four constituents of the World Bank Group i.e. IBRD, IDA, IFC and MIGA (i.e. Multilateral Investment Guarantee Agency)

#### Objectives of World Bank-

- (i) To provide long-run capital to member countries for economic reconstruction and development. World Bank provides capital mainly for following purposes.
- (iii) To induce long-run capital investment for assuring BOP equilibrium and balanced development of international trade. (This objective was adopted to increase the productivity of member countries

and to improve economic conditions and standard of living among them).

- (iii) To promote capital investment in member countries.
- (iv) To provide guarantee for loans granted to small and large units and other projects of member countries.

**Membership of the World Bank and the Voting Right-** Generally every member country of the IMF automatically becomes the member of World Bank. Similarly, any country which quits IMF is automatically expelled from the World Bank's membership. But under a certain provision a country leaving the membership of IMF can continue its membership with World Bank if 75% members of the Bank give their vote in its favour.

#### International Development Association (IDA):

IDA is an associate institution of World Bank known as soft loan window of World Bank. IDA was established on September 24, 1960. It kept its membership open to all members of World Bank. At present 159 countries are its member. IDA Provides loan to its member countries and no interest is charged on these long-term loans. These soft loans are provided to the poor countries of the World.

#### International Finance Corporation (IFC):

World Bank established IFC in July 1956. This corporation provides loan to private industries of developing nations without any government guarantee and also promotes the additional capital investment in these countries.

#### Objectives-

- (i) To provide loans to private sector.
- (ii) To co-ordinate capital and management.
- (iii) To induce capitalist countries to invest in developing countries.

**General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT):** In 1945, USA put forward many proposals for extending international trade and employment. On October 30, 1947 twenty three countries at Geneva signed an agreement related to tariffs imposed on trade. This agreement is known as General Agreement on tariffs and trade (GATT). It came

into force on January 1, 1948. Initially GATT was established as the forerunner of a temporary arrangement but later it took the shape of a permanent agreement. GATT's headquarters was in Geneva. On December 10, 1995, GATT was abolished and replaced by World Trade Organization (WTO) which came into existence on January 1, 1995.

**World Trade Organization (WTO):** The Uruguay round of GATT 1986-93 gave birth to World Trade Organisation. The members of the GATT signed an agreement of Uruguay round in April 1994 in Morocco for establishing a new organization named WTO. It was officially constituted on January 1, 1995 which took the place of GATT as an effective formal organisation. The present strength of WTO membership is 159. Objectives of WTO-

- (i) To improve standard of living of people in the member countries.
- (ii) To ensure full employment and increase in effective demand.
- (iii) To enlarge production and trade of goods.
- (iv) To enlarge production and trade of services.
- (v) To ensure optimum utilization of world resources.
- (vi) To accept the concept of sustainable development.
- (vii) To protect environment.

**United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD):** UNO declared 1960-70 as Development Decade. In 1961, UNO attempted to increase the income of developing countries with a growth rate of 5% p.a. during that development decade. In July 1962, a conference of developing countries was held at Cairo which resolved to convene a World Conference for this purpose. Economic and social Council of the UNO organized a World Trade and Development Conference from March 31, 1964 to June 16, 1964.

**Asian Development Bank (ADB):** ADB was established on the recommendations of ECAFE (Economic Commission for Asia and Far East). The aim of this Bank is to accelerate economic and social development in Asia and Pacific region. The Bank started its functioning on January 1, 1967. The head office of the Bank is located at Manila, Philippines.

**South Asian Free Trade Area (SAFTA):** The most significant aspect of the 12th SAARC

Summit (Jan. 4-6, 2004) at Islamabad, the Capital City of Pakistan was the signing of a historic Agreement on Free Trade. The leaders of India, Pakistan, and Sri Lanka have agreed upon to create a 'South Asian Free Trade Area' (SAFTA). SAFTA has come into force since January 1, 2006 replacing South Asian Preferential Trade Agreement (SAPTA) which was operative among SAARC countries, since December 7, 1995.

**South Asian Association for Regional Co-operation (SAARC):** India, Maldives, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Bhutan, Nepal and Afghanistan constituted an organization known as SAARC on the recommendations of Dhaka Conference on December 7-8, 1985. Its headquarter has been established at Kathmandu. A conference of heads of the countries is held every year but conferences were generally delayed for one reason or the other.

**Association of South-East Asian Nations (ASEAN):** ASEAN is a union of Southeast Asian Nations. Indonesia, Philippines, Malaysia, Singapore and Thailand constituted this association on August 8, 1967. Brunei also joined ASEAN in 1984. In July 1995, Vietnam was also given its membership. Laos and Myanmar got its membership in 1997. Cambodia also became its member in 1999. Its headquarter is in Jakarta.

**Organisation of the Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC):** OPEC was constituted in Baghdad in 1960. Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and Venezuela were its founder members. The objective of OPEC was to control production and price of petroleum so as to safeguard the interests of oil exporting countries. OPEC also attempts not only to stabilize oil prices but also to seek the maximum oil prices from the oil importing countries.

At present 13 countries are the members of OPEC. Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Venezuela, Qatar, Libya, Indonesia, Ecuador, UAE, Algeria, Nigeria and Angola. Angola was the last one to join OPEC on January 1, 2007. Its headquarter is in Vienna (Austria).

**G-8 (Formerly G-7):** G-7 was an organization of seven non-socialist countries which are highly industrialized in the world. G-7 included USA, Canada, Germany, Britain, France, Italy and Japan. After adopting free market policies in



the economy, Russia was also made a member of the organisation on June 21, 1997. At present it is known as G-8.

**G-15:** G-15 is an organization of 19 non-aligned developing countries. It was established in September 1989 in Non-aligned Summit (NAM).

The Secretariat of G-15 is in Geneva.

**European Economic Community (EEC) Or European Common Market (ECM):** Six European countries known as "Inner Six" (France, Belgium, Netherlands, Luxembourg, West Germany and Italy) constituted EEC on the basis of Rome Treaty (1957). The success of OECD played an important role in inducing these countries to establish EEC. The aim of EEC was to ensure complete free trade among member countries. On January 1, 1973, Britain, Denmark and Ireland got its membership. Greece, Spain and Portugal also became its members. Thus, the total membership of EEC went up to 15 on January 1, 1995 after the induction of Austria, Finland and Sweden to this Organisation. The Ten nations in Eastern Europe officially joined world's largest regional economic community - European-Union on May 1, 2004. They are Poland, Hungary, the Czech Republic, Slovakia, Slovenia, Lithuania, Latvia, Estonia, Cyprus and Malta. Out of these Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia are new States created by disintegration of USSR; Poland and Hungary. After the joining of total twelve new-nations, the present membership of European Union has become 27.

**North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA):** On August 12, 1992, a trilateral agreement between USA, Canada and Mexico took place which declared North American region as Free Trade Area. This agreement is known as NAFTA (North American Free Trade Agreement).

**Asia Pacific Economic Co-operation (APEC):** APEC was founded in November 1989 to devise programmes of co-operation between member nations through the establishment of meetings of economic leaders trade and foreign ministers. It was institutionalized in Bangkok and agreed to set up a secretariat in Singapore.

**World Trade Organization (WTO)**

## **GATT (General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade)**

During the great depression of 1930s international trade was badly affected and various countries imposed import restrictions for safeguarding their economies. As a result, there was a sharp decline in the world trade. In the year 1995, USA made many proposals for extending international trade and employment. In 1947, 23 countries signed an agreement related to tariffs imposed on trade. This agreement is known as 'GATT' (General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade). Initially GATT was established like a temporary arrangement but later it took the shape of a permanent agreement.

- The General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) was signed in 1948 in Geneva.
- The headquarters of GATT are situated in Geneva.
- GATT was signed by 23 countries in 1947 at Geneva. India was one of the founder member of GATT.
- Since 1994, 118 countries have been its members.
- GATT was a treaty with a secretariat at Geneva.

### **Objective of GATT**

- (a) To provide equal opportunities to all countries in international market for trading purpose without any favour.
  - (b) To ensure a better living standard in the world as a whole.
  - (c) To increase the effective demand for real income growth and goods.
- GATT also introduced 'MFN' (Most Favoured Nation) clause. According to this, every member country was considered an MFN country.
  - According to the MFN clause, any concession given to any nation was automatically given to all the member countries.

### **GATT Rounds**

- Eight rounds of GATT negotiations were held during its existence. The first six rounds were related to curtailing tariff rates. The seventh round was related to the non-tariff obstacles.
- The eighth round was entirely different from all the previous rounds because it included a number of new subjects for

consideration.

- The eighth round is known as the **Uruguay Round** which was the most controversial one.
- The discussions in this round gave birth to World Trade Organisation (WTO).

#### **Uruguay Round Agreement**

- The Uruguay round began in December 1986 at 'Punta-Del-Este' (Uruguay) and was supposed to have concluded at Brussels in 1990. The talks failed and were resumed in Geneva in January, 1991 and finally ended on December 15, 1993. The round originally involved 105 participants but 117 countries were in the end.
- The Uruguay round was special because it resulted in pacts in two sectors that were completely new to GATT.
  - (a) Services and
  - (b) Intellectual property rights
- There were differences among participating countries on certain critical areas; no agreement could be reached.
- To break this deadlock Mr. Arthur Dunkel, Director General of GATT, compiled a very detailed document known as Dunkel Proposals.
- India signed this proposal in Marrakesh, Morocco in April 1994.

Uruguay Round contained the mandate to have negotiations in the following areas.

**Part I of the declaration include the 14 areas, as given below**

1. Tariffs.
2. Non-tariff measures.
3. Agriculture.
4. Textiles and Clothing Trade (Multi-Fibre Agreement).
5. GATT-articles.
6. Subsidies.
7. Natural Resource Based Products.
8. Tropical Products.
9. Safeguards.
10. **Trade Related aspects of Intellectual Property rights (TRIPS).**
11. **Trade Related Investment Measures (TRIMS).**
12. Dispute settlements.

13. Functioning of GATT system.

14. Multilateral Trade Agreements and Arrangements.

**Part II of the declaration included trade in services and re-classified the Part-I of the declaration as follows:**

1. Market Access.
2. TRIPs.
3. TRIMs.
4. Agriculture.
5. Textiles.
6. Trade in Services.
7. Institutional Matters.

#### **World Trade Organisation (WTO)**

- The WTO, the legal and institutional foundation of multilateral trading system, was established on January 1, 1995 by the 'Marrakesh Agreement' signed at Marrakesh on April 15, 1994.
- It is the organization that succeeded the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT).
- GATT was formally dissolved only at the end of 1995.
- The Marrakesh Agreement gave until December 1996 for the contracting parties to GATT to join the new organization (WTO) as original members.
- WTO is a permanent organization which has been established on the basis of an international treaty approved by participating countries.
- WTO is not an agency of the UNO.
- At the end of 2004, there were more than 145 members. China became the 143rd member in 2001.

#### **Objectives of WTO**

- To improve the standard of living of people in the member countries.
- To ensure full employment and broad increase in effective demand.
- To increase production and trade of goods and services.
- To accept the concept of sustainable development.
- To ensure optimum utilization of world resources.
- To protect the environment.

#### **General Administration**

- WTO has a General Council for its administration which comprises of one permanent representative of each member nation. Normally, it has one meeting per month which is held at Geneva.
- The principal organs of the WTO are the Ministerial Council, the General Council, the Trade Policy Review Body, the Disputes Settlement Body, the Appellate Body, the Council of Trade in Goods, the Council on Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property rights and a Secretariat.
- The Ministerial is the supreme organ of the WTO consisting of the representatives of all the member-states.
- It is the highest decision-making body and meets at least once every two years to trade decisions on all matters under any of the multilateral trade agreements.
- The General Council is composed of delegates from all the member states and is responsible for conducting the day-to-day work of the WTO.
- There are a number of important committees for administration of WTO out of which two committees play the crucial role in WTO. They are as follows:
  - (i) Dispute settlement Body (DSB) and
  - (ii) Trade Policy Review Body (TPRB).
- The Dispute Settlement Body (DSB) deals with dispute between countries. Before cases are heard by the Dispute Panel, there is a 60-day consultation period. Appeals against the verdict of the DSB are heard by a seven member Appellate Body sitting for 60 days a year. Each appeal is heard by three of the Appellate Body members. The

decisions of the Appellate Body are binding and refusal to comply at this stage leads to trade sanctions.

- Trade Policy Review Body (TPRB) reviews the trade policy of member countries. The trade policy of all big trade powers of the world are reviewed after every two years. All the members of WTO are the members of TPRB. There are three other Sectoral Councils of WTO's General Council:
  - (i) Council for Trade-related aspects of Intellectual Property Rights
  - (ii) Council for Trade in Goods
  - (iii) Council for Trade in Services
- Director-General is the highest official of the organization to look after day-to-day working. General council of WTO elects Director General for four years. Four Deputy Directors General are also elected to assist the Director General.

#### **Functions of WTO**

- To provide a platform to member countries and to decide future strategies related to trade and tariff.
- To administer the rules and process related to dispute settlement.
- To provide facilities for implementation, administration and operation of multi-lateral and bilateral agreements of the world trade.
- To implement rules and provisions related to trade policy review mechanism.
- To assist IMF and IBRD for establishing coherence in universal economic policy determination.
- To ensure the optimum use of world resources.

□□□□

# 10 Inflation

## Inflation

It is a sustained increase in general price level over a particular period of time. It reduces the purchasing power of money.

**Hyper-Inflation** is a situation under which value of money falls so rapidly that people start losing faith in the currency and policy makers think in terms of switching over to barter or an alternative currency. This situation arose in Germany after world war I.

**Galloping Inflation** is similar to Hyper inflation.

**Stag inflation:** This means co-existence of inflation along with recession in certain sectors. It may arise due to rising input prices i.e. cost of product and due to anti-inflationary monetary policy which may lead to tightening of credit by Central Bank which may adversely hit those sectors which are heavily dependent on bank credit, thus leading to recession in those sectors.

## Recession

- Fall in demand, fall in investment/fall in business optimism.
- Situation characterized by negative growth rate of GDP for two successive quarters signifies a situation of recession. It is a situation characterized by falling demand, growing business pessimism and falling investment.

**Depression :** Recession which goes for a very long time unchecked takes the form of depression. It is a situation characterized by fall in prices, fall in demand, very fast decline in employment and falling production.

## TRADE CYCLE

Also called Business Cycle : The upswings and downswings observed in the market over a period of time.

## Causes of Inflation:

Rise in demand / fall in supply

**Inflation is the result of -**

▼ Demand Pull.

▲ Cost Push Factor

2 Sets of Factors

**In India Demand Pull factors are as follows:**

- Rise in population.
- Rise in govt expenditure particularly non-planned.
- Rise in Black money.
- Rise in money supply and deficit financing.
- Rise in wage and salary.
- Rise in consumerism.
- Rise in forex reserve.

## Factors on supply and cost side

- Speculation hoarding and black money.
- Rise in administered prices.
- Rise in indirect taxes.
- Import cost push factors.
- Rise in wages and salaries.
- Uncertainties of Weather.

## Measure to check rising prices:

There are 3 set of measures-

- I. Monetary Policy.
- II. Fiscal Policy-Government can reduce the rate of indirect taxes.
- III. Other Measures.

The latter has a limited role to control inflation in a country like India particularly because the government may not be able to reduce its non-planned expenditure although it can cut indirect taxes.

Monetary policy can play a very important role. For eg. not only through Qualitative and Quantitative measures, but also through a measure like market stabilization scheme.

In a country like India other measures has a predominant role in controlling inflation. Throughout 2008, inflation rate was very high. Government adopted the following measures.

1. Increasing import of essential commodities.
2. Strengthening PDS.
3. Banning exports of essential commodities.
4. Invoking ESMA to prevent disruption of essential services.
5. Preventing hoarding and black marketing like it did against cement production.
6. Thus a mix of monetary policies and fiscal policy has enabled government to moderate inflation.

Inflation in India is measured by using 2 indices-

- (i) WPI (Wholesale Price Index)
- (ii) CPI (Cost Price Index)

**WPI:** is used to measure the rate of inflation in the country on a point to point basis which implies rate of inflation during a certain week ending this year to the corresponding week ending last year. This is done on the basis of wholesale prices of 435 commodities collected from major wholesale markets in the country on a weekly basis. The base year for WPI is 2000-01.

**CPI:** is used to measure the cost of living of a common man on the basis of retail prices collected every month for 260 commodities which also includes some services. Thus CPI (IW) is used to grant Dearness Allowance (DA).

Significantly WPI has weight of 63% given to manufactured goods, 23% to food primary commodities and 14% to fuel like lubricants. On the other hand CPI (IW) gives 57% to food and primary commodities. This divergence in the two indices is not only due to number of commodities or weights given but also due to wholesale and retail prices differences.

**Producers Price Index (PPI):** Most developed countries are using it by not taking 3 things into account.

- (i) Indirect taxes.
- (ii) Transportation Costs.
- (iii) Profit margin.

Thus before a commodity reaches the consumer, rate of inflation is worked out at the producers level so that corrective measures can be taken at that level before inflation.

A committee was set up in India to study PPI.

#### **Inflation Targeting:**

By fixing a target percentage - that the inflation should not go beyond that targeted percentage.

#### **Consequences :**

- Rich will become richer and poor will become poorer.
- Leads to accumulation of Black money.
- Benefits borrower.
- Kills incentives for labour.
- Can cause recession in certain industries and misallocation of resources (Eg. if price of nonessential goods are stable/going down and that of essential goods are rising).

**Note-** Inflation brought about by an increase in demand is called **Demand Pull Inflation**.

Inflation brought about by an increase in the cost of the factors of production is called **Cost Push inflation**.

□□□□



The ultimate objective of development planning is human development. Increased social welfare of the people requires a more equitable distribution of development benefits along with better living environment. Development process needs to continuously strive for broad-based improvement in the standard of living and quality of life of the people through an inclusive development strategy that focuses on both income and non-income dimensions. The development of human resources contributes to sustained growth and productive employment.

The biggest challenge to development planning in India is posed by the problems of poverty, inequality and unemployment. The poor are those who live below the poverty line. The poverty line is defined in terms of per capita household expenditure. Poverty manifests itself in the form of both absolute poverty as well as relative poverty.

**Absolute Poverty:** When people do not have enough money to meet the basic threshold to buy food, shelter, clothing etc that is needed for survival, it is known as Relative Poverty. It is also defined in terms of insufficiency of basic needs. In India, these basic needs are measured in terms of calorie intake of 2400 in rural areas per person per day and 2100 in urban areas.

**Relative Poverty:** This concept is related to the general standard of living in a society. When people are poor in comparison to others around them, but may still have enough money to survive. Relative poverty relates to inequalities in a society. India is characterised by both in extreme measures i.e. absolute and relative poverty.

### Poverty and inclusive Growth

The Human Development Report 2010 measures poverty in terms of a new parameter, namely multidimensional poverty index (MPI), which replaced the human poverty index (HPI)

used since 1997. The MPI indicates the share of the population that is multi-dimensionally poorly adjusted by the intensity of deprivation in terms of living standards, health and education. The differences in population Below poverty line (BPL) widens substantially in case of India when this indicator is used instead of the national poverty line indicator while for other countries, there is less difference and in some cases even a fall.

A very significant development on poverty-estimation front in India has been the role of the Supreme Court which directed the Union government to clear the mess surrounding the issue of identification of the poor. In response to this directive, the planning commission has come out with revised monthly expenditure data to define the poor in urban and rural areas. In its affidavit to the Supreme Court in September 2011, the **Planning Commission has stated that anyone with a monthly expenditure below Rs. 965 in urban areas and below Rs. 781 in rural areas would be deemed poor. This translates to Rs. 32 a day in urban areas and Rs. 25 a day in rural areas.** The above numbers are an improvement over Tendulkar Committee members of Rs. 579 per month in urban areas and Rs. 447 per month in rural areas (at 2004-05 prices). The revised figures set a shamefully low bar for determining poverty and make a mockery of the whole exercise.

**Causes of Poverty:** The extent of poverty in an economy is due to a wide range of factors as follow:

- (i) Underdeveloped nature of economy.
- (ii) Rapid growth of population in an overpopulated country; even if the national income increases, the per capita income remains the same due to increase in population.
- (iii) Large inequalities in the ownership of earning assets such as land, buildings,

industry etc.

- (iv) Low level of productivity in agriculture and industry.
- (v) Large scale unemployment and under-employment.
- (vi) Inequality of opportunity in acquiring education and skills.
- (vii) State Policy.
- (viii) Regional disparities.

The main determinants of poverty in a country like India are generally reflected in terms of:

- (i) Lack of income due to a lack of productive employment and under-employment.
- (ii) Increasing prices of food grains which constitute the major item in the consumption basket.
- (iii) Inadequate social infrastructure affecting the quality of life of the people and their ability to take up gainful employment.

Among various factors contributing to poverty alleviation, economic growth in terms of its trickle-down effect has always been regarded as an important factor. However, it is not economic growth but also the sectoral composition of growth. If growth is concentrated more in agriculture and rural

sectors, it may lead to much large alleviation of poverty in India than if it is concentrated say, in large scale industries. Similarly, factors like physical and social infrastructure, focus on increasing productivity of small farmers, generation of employment opportunities, control of population, expenditure on human development etc. help alleviate poverty to a large extent. The main focus of poverty alleviation in the first two decades of Planning was on achieving a high rate of growth of GDP. It was assumed that a high rate of growth would bring about what was known as the trickle-down effect and thereby take care of the poor and the down-trodden. However, by early 1970s it became clear that trickle-down effect had not taken place and poverty alleviation would require redistribution policies. Hence, from mid 70's anti-poverty strategy has focused on direct attack on poverty in the form of Special Poverty Alleviation and Employment Generation Programmes.

Anti-poverty strategy has three broad components-

- Promotion of economic growth.
- Promotion of human development and target programmes of poverty alleviation.
- Employment generation to address multi-dimensional nature of poverty.

□□□□

Unemployment can be defined as a situation when person able and willing to work are seeking jobs at the prevailing wage level but they are unable to get the same .

In India, unemployment is structural in nature due to lack of productive capacity and resources.

#### **Types of unemployment -**

**Cyclical unemployment :** It is the result of depression in any economy.

**Seasonal unemployment :** Periodic unemployment created by seasonal variation in particular industries. eg.in the period between past harvest and next sowing, agricultural labourers are unemployed.

**Educated unemployment :** This is mainly found in urban areas. Those educated persons who are unable to get work come under this category.

**Under employment :** It results when a person contributes to less production than what he / she is capable. eg. an engineer working as a clerk is under employed.

**Structural unemployment:** Unemployment resulting from a mismatch between demand in the labour market and the skills and locations of the workers seeking employment.e.g when computers were introduced there were jobs but people could not match the skills required to operate the computer resulting in unemployment.

**Frictional unemployment:** Frictional Unemployment is transitional unemployment due to people moving between jobs.It refers to a transition period of looking for a new job for different reasons such as seeking a better job being fired from a current job or having voluntarily quit a current job.

**Seasonal unemployment:** It is a type of frictional unemployment that occurs in specific activities or occupations which are characterized by seasonal work. An example of seasonal unemployment is the joblessness during non-cultivation in rural areas.

**Natural rate of unemployment:** The sum total of frictional and structural unemployment is referred as the natural rate of unemployment.

**Open unemployment:** Open unemployment arises when a person voluntarily or involuntarily keeps himself/ herself out of consideration for certain jobs.

It is important to note that the type and nature of unemployment differs significantly in developing and developed countries. Unemployment in developed countries arises due to the lack of effective demand or economic slowdown, recession, or depression. In developing countries, unemployment occurs largely due to a lower demand for labour or inadequate employment opportunities in the economy. Such a situation occurs due to the subsistence nature of agriculture, a low industrial base and the small size of the tertiary sector. Let us now discuss the various concepts of unemployment applicable to developing nations including India.

All developing countries including India suffer from structural unemployment which exists both in open and disguised forms.

□□□□

- Agriculture is the mainstay of the Indian Economy.
- The share of agricultural sector capital formation in GDP declined from 1.92% in the early 90s to 1.28% in early 2000s. This has improved to 2.12% in 2006-07.
- Agriculture and allied sectors contribute to nearly 18% of national income while about 60% of the population is dependent on agriculture for their livelihood.
- The agricultural output depends on monsoon as nearly 60% of area sown is dependent on rainfall.
- Land utilisation data is available for 92.9% of total geographical area of 3,287.3 lakh hectares.
- Agriculture accounts only for about 10.6% of the total export earnings in 2009-10.
- Figures provided by the Central Statistical Organisation reveal that between 1950-51 to 1960-61, the share of agriculture in GDP has been in the range of 55 to 52%. The share of agriculture indicated a sharp decline and reached a level of 14.6% in 2009-10.
- Importance of agriculture in the national economy is indicated by many facts.e.g. agriculture is the main support for India's transport systems, secure bulk of their business from the movement of agricultural goods. Internal trade is mostly in agricultural products.
- Agricultural growth has direct impact on poverty eradication. It is also an important factor in containing inflation raising agricultural wages and employment generation.
- But since 2002-03, Indian agricultural sector is almost going through a crisis-huge food grains surplus wiped out, large imports of wheat being planned and farmers of suicides are more frequent all over the country.
- Besides, the allied sectors like horticulture, animal husbandry, dairy and fisheries have an important role in improving the overall economic conditions and nutrition of the rural masses.
- To maintain the ecological balance, there is need for sustainable and balanced development of both agriculture and the allied sectors.
- The Tenth Plan asserts emphatically that the agricultural sector acts as a bulwark in maintaining food security and in the process of national security as well.
- Agricultural growth rate achieved in 9th Plan was 2.1%, while the target for the 10th Plan (2002-07) was 4% and for 11th plan (2007-12) is 4%.
- Commercial crops are those crops which are produced for trade purpose and not for self-consumption by the farmers. It includes - Oilseeds crops, Sugar crops, Fibre crops, Narcotic crops, Beverage crops.
- To encourage the agricultural products, the government announces to minimum support price for important agricultural crops.
- The function of Agriculture Cost and Price Commission (ACPC) is to decide the minimum support prices on behalf of the government.
- Minimum Support Price (MSP) announced by the government is that price at which government is ready to purchase the crop from the farmers directly, if crop price falls below the MSP.
- For providing facilities relating to storage of agriculture products, "National Co-operative Development and Warehousing Board" was established in 1956 and "Central Warehousing Corporation" was established in 1957. Thereafter in states also the State Warehousing Corporation were established.
- The programme of High Yielding Variety Seeds was combined with a guiding project I.A.D.P. and a target was set to extend this system of development in entire country.
- The credit of green revolution in India is given to the Agriculture Scientist Dr Norman Borlaug. However, the contribution of Dr. M.S. Swaminathan is not less. But, its termed name is the contribution of

American scientist Dr. William Gande.

- Due to horrible famine during 1965-66 and 1966-67, the government implemented the new agriculture policy of high yielding seeds so as to increase agriculture production.
- India is the largest milk producing country in the world.
- There is significant increase in the milk production to the level of 108.5 million tonnes in the year 2008-09 as compared to 53.9 million tonnes in 1990-91.
- Speedy increase in the field of milk production is called White Revolution.
- To increase the pace of White Revolution, the Operation Flood was started.
- In milk production of the country the share of Buffalo, Cow and Goat is 50%, 46% and 45% respectively.
- The Father of Operation Flood was Dr. Verghese Kurien. The Operation Flood was the largest integrated dairy development programme of the world. It was started by National Dairy Development Board in 1970.
- The increase in oil seeds production was due to "Yellow Revolution".
- The progress in increase of fish production was called "Blue Revolution".
- Assam is the biggest tea producer in the country.
- India ranks sixth in world coffee production and contributes only 4% of world coffee production.
- Cuba is known as the Sugar Bowl of the world. Sugar is made of Beetroot.
- India holds first position in the world in the production of sugar-cane and sugar.
- The importance of agriculture in the industrial sector is not only for supply of raw material but it provides food grains for the people working in that sector and market for industrial products.

#### **Agricultural Production**

- Indian agriculture still depends upon monsoon.
- Agricultural production can be divided into two parts - Foodgrains and Non-foodgrains. The share of foodgrains is two-

third and non-foodgrains is one-third.

- The percentage of plan outlay on agriculture and allied sectors to total plan outlay varied between 31% and 14.9% from the First Plan to Tenth Plan.
- Actual outlay on the agricultural sector ranged between 18 and 24% of the total Plan outlay (except during the First Plan, it was as high as 31%).
- During Eleventh Plan (2007-12) the plan outlay on agriculture has declined to only 18.5%.
- During the first decade of planning (1951-61) when the First and Second Five Year Plans were implemented, the annual rate of growth in agriculture was 3.3%.
- During the next two decades of planning in 1961-81, the overall progress in agriculture was dismal mainly because of bad weather and poor monsoon conditions.
- The growth rate in the 1980's was highly respectable (3.9%).
- The Tenth Plan had fixed a target rate of growth of 4% in agriculture to achieve 8% rate of growth in GDP.
- During the Eleventh Plan also, the Planning Commission has fixed the target of 4% rate of growth in agriculture.
- The Tenth Plan was the first plan which did not fix targets of crop production.
- Actual production of rice ranged between 82 and 93 million tonnes in between 1997 and 2007.
- The production of wheat which stood at 11 million tonnes in 1960-61 rose to 76 million tonnes in 1999-2000, but declined to 72 million tonnes in 2003-04.
- Actual production of wheat ranged between 69 and 75 million tonnes in between 1997-2007.
- Even now the production of pulses fluctuates between 13 and 15 million tonnes per year.
- Green revolution did not cover barley, ragi and minor-milletts.
- The Green revolution was confined only to High Yielding Varieties (HYV) mainly rice, wheat, maize and jowar.
- National Agriculture Insurance Scheme was implemented in Oct. 1999.



- On 28th July 2000, the Central government fixed target for rate of growth in agriculture sector at more than 4% by 2005 under the National Agriculture Policy.

### **Land Reforms Programmes in India include**

- Elimination of intermediaries
- Tenancy Reforms
- Determination of ceiling of holdings per family
- Distribution of surplus land among landless people
- Consolidation of holdings (Chakbandi)
- By the end of first five year plan middlemen had been removed (except small areas).
- The following measures were made effective for the betterment of farmers :
  - (i) Regulation of tax
  - (ii) Security for the rights of farmers
  - (iii) Right of land ownership for the farmers
- For the reorganization of agriculture land holding mainly two measures were taken -
  - (i) Land ceiling (ii) Chakbandi.
- Land ceiling determines the maximum land which can be held by a farmer. Holding more than that area will be illegal.
- Chakbandi of land means to aggregate the divided and broken land.
- The land within area less than 1 hectare, is called marginal land holding, 1 to 4 hectare area is called small land holding and the land within area more than 4 hectare, is called large land holding.
- Chakbandi was implemented first time in India in the year 1920 in Baroda.
- The irrigation potential in India in 2000-01 was 9.47 crore hectare.
- Green Revolution was started in the Third Five Year Plan.
- The most positive effect of Green Revolution was on wheat. There was 500% increase in crop production.
- Unorganised sources of agriculture finance are money-lenders, money-dealers, relatives, businessmen, landlords and commission agents.
- Organised sources of agriculture finance are Co-operative Committees, Co-operative Banks, Commercial Banks, Regional Rural Banks, the Government etc.
- Co-operative Credit Organisation started first time in 1904.
- Primary Co-operative Committees provide credit for short period.
- State Co-operative Agriculture and Rural Development Banks provide credit for long period.
- Land Development Bank provides long-term loans.
- Land Development Bank was established in the year 1919 in the form of Land Mortgage Bank.
- National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development (NABARD) is the apex institution of Rural Credit. It was established on 12th July, 1982 by the merger of Agriculture Credit department and reconstruction of Agriculture and Development Corporation of the Reserve Bank of India. Its establishment is based on the recommendations of Shivraman Committee.
- Authorised share capital of NABARD was Rupees 500 crore. However, after an amendment its authorized share increased upto 5000 crore with effect from 1st February, 2001.
- Food stocks are maintained by the central government for 3 purposes:
  - (i) Maintaining prescribed buffer stock norms for food security.
  - (ii) Monthly supply through Public Distribution System (PDS).
  - (iii) Market intervention to stabilise open market prices.
- Buffer stock on January 1, 2002 was a 58 million tonnes.
- Two major crops of India :
  - (a) Kharif Crops : Sown in July and harvested in October. They include, - Rice, Jowar, Bajra, Maize, Cotton, Sugarcane, Soyabean, Groundnut.
  - (b) Rabi Crops: Sown in October and harvested in March/April. They include Wheat, Barley, Gram, Tur, Rapeseed, Mustard.
  - (c) Zayad Crops: Sown during March to June. It include Watermelons, Vegetables, Moong etc.

□□□□

A

**Accession Tax**

This is a tax which is levied on gifts and inherited property. This tax is not a liability on the donor. This tax is levied on the recipient.

**Active Market**

This is a term used by stock exchange which specifies the particular stock or share which deals in frequent and regular transactions.

**Ad-valorem Tax**

Ad-valorem tax is a kind of indirect tax in which goods are taxed by their values. In the case of ad-valorem tax, the tax amount is calculated as the proportion of the price of the goods. Value added Tax (VAT) is an ad-valorem Tax.

**Amalgamation**

It means 'merger'. As and when necessity arises two or more companies are merged into a large organization. This merger takes place in order to affect economies, reduce competition and capture market. The old firms completely lose their identity when the merger takes place.

**Amortization**

Repayment of loans with interest over a certain period of time or recording the depreciation of an asset over a period of time in accounting is termed as amortization.

**Annuity**

Annuity means pension which the Insurance Company provides in return to premiums. When a man retires, he gets back the total paid as a regular pension which continues lifelong. The amount of the pension is calculated keeping in view the life expectancy of the investor.

**Appreciation**

Appreciation means an increase in the value of something e.g. stock of raw materials or manufactured goods. It is the antonym of Depreciation. When the prices rise due to inflation, appreciation may occur.

**Arbitration**

Where there is an industrial dispute, the Arbitration comes to the force. The judgment

is given by the Arbitrator. Both the parties have to accept and honour the Arbitration. Arbitration is the settlement of labour disputes that takes place between employer and the employees.

**Autarchy**

It means that the country itself can satisfy the needs of its population without making imports from other countries.

**Automation**

Automation means the use of machinery & technology to replace the labour's work. Automation increases the demand of skilled workers.

**Balanced Budget**

When the total revenue of the government exactly equals the total expenditure incurred by the government, the budget becomes a balanced budget.

**Union Budget**

Under Article 112 of the constitution, a statement of estimated receipts and expenditure called the "Annual Financial Statement", has to be placed before Parliament for each financial year.

This Statement is the main budget document. It is an estimate of the Government's revenue and expenditure at the end of a fiscal year, which runs from April 1 to March 31.

A Union Budget is the most comprehensive report of the Government's finances, in which revenues from all sources and outlays to all activities are consolidated. The budget also contains estimates of the government's accounts for the next fiscal called budgeted estimates.

**Revenue Budget**

The revenue budget consists of revenue receipts of the Government and its expenditure. Revenue receipts are divided into tax and non-tax revenue. Tax revenues constitute taxes like income tax, corporate tax, excise, customs, service and other duties that the Government levies.

The non-tax revenue sources include interest on loans, dividend on investments etc.

Revenue surplus is the excess of revenue receipts over revenue expenditure.

### **Fiscal Deficit**

This is the gap between the Government's total spending and the sum of its revenue receipts and non-debt capital receipts.

### **Finance Bill**

The Government proposals for the levy of new taxes, alterations in the present tax structure, or continuance of the current tax structure are placed before the Parliament in this bill. The bill contains amendments proposed to direct and indirect taxes.

### **Direct and Indirect Taxes**

Direct taxes are levied on the incomes of individuals and corporate. For example, income tax, corporate tax etc. Indirect taxes are paid by consumers when they buy goods and services. These include excise duty, customs duty etc.

### **Some Other Terms**

**Central plan outlay** : It refers to the allocation of monetary resources among the different sectors in the economy and the ministries of the Government.

**Public account** : The Government acts like a banker for transactions relating to provident funds, small savings collection etc.

The funds that the Government receives from its bank like operations are kept in the public account, from which the related disbursements are made.

These funds do not belong to the Government and have to be paid back to the persons and authorities who have deposited them.

**Ad-valorem duties**: These are the duties, determined as a certain percentage of the price of products.

**Balance of payments** : Balance of payments is the difference between the demand for and supply of a country's currency on the foreign exchange market.

**Budget estimates** : it is an estimate of fiscal and revenue deficits for the year. The term is associated with the estimates of the Centre's spending during the financial year and the income received through taxes.

### **Consolidated fund :**

It includes all Government revenues, loans raised and recoveries of loans granted.

All expenditure of the Government is incurred from the consolidated fund and no amount can be withdrawn from the fund without authorization of the Parliament.

**Contingency fund** : This is a fund used for meeting emergencies where the Government cannot wait for an authorization of the Parliament. The Government subsequently obtains Parliamentary approval for the expenditure. The amount spent from the contingency fund is returned to the fund later.

**Monetary policy** : This comprises actions taken by the central bank to regulate the level of money or liquidity in the economy or change the interest rates.

### **Balance of Payment**

Balance of payment of a country is a systematic record of all economic transactions completed between its residents and the residents of remaining world during a year. Balance of payment is a comprehensive term which includes both visible and invisible items. Balance of payment not only include visible export and imports but also invisible trade like shipping, banking, insurance, tourism, royalty, payments of interest on foreign debts.

### **Balance of Trade**

Balance of trade refers to the total value of a country's export commodities and total value of imports commodities. Thus balance of trade includes only visible trade i.e. movement of goods (exports and imports of goods). Balance of trade is a part of Balance of payment statement.

### **Balance Sheet**

Balance sheet is a statement showing the assets and liabilities of a business at a certain date. Balance sheet helps in estimating the real financial situation of a firm.

### **Bank**

Bank is a financial institution. It accepts funds on current and deposit accounts. It also lends money. The bank pays the cheques drawn by customers against current and

deposits accounts. The bank is a trader that deals in money and credit.

#### **Bank Rate**

It is the rate of interest at which the central bank lends money to the lower banking institutions. Bank rate is a direct quantitative method of credit control in the economy.

#### **Bilateralism**

It implies an agreement between two countries to extend to each other specific privileges in their international trade which are not extended to others.

#### **Birth Rate**

Birth Rate (or Crude Birth Rate) is number of the live births per thousand of the population during a period, usually a year.

#### **Black Money**

It is unaccounted money which is concealed from tax authorities. All illegal economic activities are dealt with this Black Money. Hawala market has deep roots with this black money. Black money creates parallel economy. It puts an adverse pressure on equitable distribution of wealth and income in the economy.

#### **Blue Chip**

It is concerned with such equity shares whose purchase is extremely safe. It is a safe investment. It does not involve any risk.

#### **Blue Collar Jobs**

These Jobs are concerned with factory. Persons who are unskilled and depend upon manual jobs that require physical strain on human muscle are said to be engaged in Blue Collar Jobs.

#### **Brain-Drain**

It means the drift of intellectuals of a country to another country. This Brain-Drain deprives a country of its genius and capabilities.

#### **Brokerage**

It is the commission which the broker earns. It also refers to middleman earning. Both the buyers and the sellers pay a certain amount to the broker for rendering the services to them.

#### **Budget**

It is a document containing a preliminary approved plan of public revenue and public

expenditure. It is a statement of the estimated receipt and expenses during a fixed period. It is a comparative table giving the accounts of the receipts to be realised and of the expenses to be incurred.

#### **Budget Deficit**

Budget deficit is the difference between the estimated public expenditure and public revenue. The government meets this deficit by way of printing new currency or by borrowing.

#### **Buoyancy**

When the government fails to check inflation, it raises income tax and the corporate tax. Such a tax is called Buoyancy. It concerns with the revenue from taxation in the period of inflation.

#### **Business Cycle**

Business cycle (also known as trade cycle) are species of fluctuations in the economic activity of organised communities. Every trade cycle have five different subphases- depression, recovery, full employment, prosperity (boom) and recession.

#### **Capital Market**

Capital market is the market which gives medium term and long term loans. It is different from money market which deals only in short term loans.

#### **Capitalism**

Capitalism is an economic system in which all means of production are owned by private individuals. This system is based on 'Laissez-faire system' i.e. no state intervention. Sovereignty of consumer prevails in this system. Consumer behaves like a king under capitalism.

#### **Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR)**

The commercial banks are required to keep a certain amount of cash reserves at the central bank. This percentage amount is called CRR.

#### **Census**

Census gives us estimates of population. It tells us the rate at which the total population is increasing among different age groups. In India census is done after every 10 years. The latest census in India has been done in 2001.

### **Central Bank**

Central Bank may be defined as the apex banking and monetary institution whose main function is to control, regulate and stabilize the banking and the monetary system of the country in the national interest.

### **Cheap Money**

It refers to that money which is made available to the borrowers at a low rate of interest. It accelerates the process of credit expansion by the banks. It is used as a measure to combat depression and revive the economy.

### **Closed Economy**

Closed economy refers to the economy having no foreign trade (i.e., export and import). Such economies depend exclusively on their own internal domestic resources and have no dependence on outside world.

### **Commercial Bank**

Commercial Bank is an institution of finance. It deals with the banking services through its branches in whole of the country. Operation of current accounts, deposits, granting of loans to individuals and companies etc. are various functions of the commercial bank.

### **Communism**

Communism is a political and economic system in which the state makes the major economic decision. State owns the bulk of capital assets. Responsibility for production and distribution lies with the state in this system.

### **Consumer Price Index**

It is also known as 'Cost of Living Index' or 'Retail Price Index'.

It does not measure actual cost of living or the various reasons of its fluctuations, rather it measures only changes in price level.

### **Core Sector**

Economy needs basic infrastructure for accelerating development. Development of infrastructure industries like cement, iron and steel, petroleum, heavy machinery etc. can only ensure the development of the economy as a whole. Such industries are core sector industries.

### **Corporation Tax**

It is a tax on company's profit. It is a direct tax which is calculated on profits after

interest payments and allowance (i.e. Capital allowance) have been deducted but before dividends are allowed for.

### **Cost-push Inflation**

It arises due to an increase in production cost. Such type of inflation is caused by three factors : (i) an increase in wages (ii) an increase in the profit margin (iii) imposition of heavy taxation.

### **Credit Rationing**

Credit rationing takes place when the banks discriminate between the borrowers.

### **Credit Squeeze**

Monetary authorities restrict credit as and when required. This credit restriction is called credit squeeze. Monetary authorities adopt the policy of credit squeeze to control inflationary pressure in the economy.

### **Custom Duty**

Custom duty is a duty that is imposed on the products received from exporting nations of the world. It is also called protective duty as it protects the home industries.

### **Dear Money**

Dear money is that money which can only be borrowed at a high rate of interest. Dear money policy is deliberate policy which is adopted by the monetary authorities to check inflation in the economy.

### **Death Duty**

It is a direct tax which is imposed on the estate of deceased person. Death duty or Death Tax is a form of personal tax on property which is levied when property passes from one person to other at the time of death of the former.

### **Death Rate**

Death rate signifies the number of deaths in a year per thousand of the population. It is mostly known as crude death rate. Life expectancy is an important determinant of death rate. A country having high life expectancy will have a high crude death rate.

### **Decentralisation**

Decentralisation means the establishment of various unit of the same industry at different places. Large scale organisation or industry cannot be run at one particular place or territory. In order to increase the efficiency of the industry, various units at different places are located.



### **Deficit Financing**

It is a policy of bridging a deficit between governments expenditure and revenue. Deliberately budgeting for a deficit is called deficit financing.

### **Deflation**

Deflation is that state of falling prices which occurs at that time when the output of goods and services increases more rapidly than the volume of money in the economy.

### **Devaluation**

Devaluation is a process in which the government deliberately cheapens the exchange value of its own currency in terms of other currency by giving it a lower exchange value. Devaluation is used for improving the balance of payment situation in the country.

### **Direct Tax**

A tax is said to be a direct tax when it is not intended to be shifted to anybody else. Thus the impact and incidence of direct tax fall on the same person shifting of direct tax is not possible. Income Tax is an example of direct tax.

### **Disinflation**

It refers to a process of bringing down prices moderately from their high level without any adverse impact on production and employment. Thus, disinflation is an anti-inflationary measure.

### **Dividend**

Dividend is the amount which the company distributes to shareholders when the profits of the company are calculated by the board of directors.

### **Economic Integration**

Economic integration appears when two or more nations coordinate themselves and their economies are linked up. It may exhibit itself in the form of free trade area or a full economic union. EEC is an example of economic integration.

### **E-Governance**

It is a system which connects and associates the various components of the government (i.e. various ministries and departments) with the computer based network so as to formulate policies, allocate resources, implement various programmes and assess their progress with more convenience.

### **Estate Duty**

It is a tax which is levied on the estate of a deceased person. It is also known as death duty. It is an progressive tax in nature.

### **Excise Duty**

It is a tax which is imposed on certain indigenous production (e.g. petroleum products, cigarettes etc.) of the country. Excise duty may be imposed either to raise revenue or to check the consumption of the commodities on which they are imposed. Excise duty is progressive in nature.

### **Face Value**

It refers to that normal value of coin at which the coin circulates and is accepted in the discharge of debt or obligation.

### **Fascism**

It is a form of political system. It also lays emphasis on military strength and prestige of the country. It is the extreme nationalism and the ultimate goal is self-sufficiency.

### **Federal Economy**

A federal state is a union of state in which authority is divided between the federal (or central) government and the state governments.

### **Fiduciary Issue**

Generally bank-note are backed by gold. But when they are not backed by gold and government securities replace gold, it is called fiduciary issue. Such fiduciary issue results in inflation.

### **Finance Market**

Finance market comprises of money markets which are considered suitable and essential for carrying on trade and commerce. It includes - Money Market, Discount Market, Capital Market, Stock Exchange or Securities Market, Foreign Exchange Market.

### **Financial Intermediaries**

Financial institution which are engaged in borrowing and lending money are called financial intermediaries. It also includes commercial banks. Financial intermediary is a middle man between manufacturer and wholeseller, between a whole- seller and retailer and between a retailer and consumer.

### **Fiscal Policy**

Fiscal policy is that part of government

economic policy which deals with taxation, expenditure, borrowing, and the management of public debt in the economy.

### **GEM**

GEM (Gender Empowerment Measure) is a composite index measuring gender inequality in three basic dimensions of empowerment- economic participation and decision making, political participation and decision making and power over economic resources.

### **GDI**

GDI (Gender Related Development Index) is a composite index measuring average achievement in the three basic dimensions captured in the human development index- a long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living adjusted to account for inequalities between men and women.

### **Gini-coefficient**

It represents the measurement of inequality derived from the 'Lorenz Curve,' with every increase in the degree of inequality, the curvature of the Lorenz Curve also increases and the area between the curve and 45° line becomes larger.

### **Gross National Product Deflator**

It is a Price Index Number used to correct the money value of Gross National Product (GNP) for price changes so as to isolate the changes which have taken place in the physical output of goods and services.

### **HDI**

HDI (Human Development Index) is a composite index measuring average achievement in three basic dimensions of human life- long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living.

### **Hot Money**

That foreign money is termed as hot money which has the tendency to migrate towards more profit-oriented places.

### **Import Duty**

Import duty is a tax on imports imposed on an ad-valorem basis i.e. fixed in the form of a percentage on the value of the commodity imported.

### **Indirect Tax**

Indirect tax is that tax which is levied on goods or services produced or purchased.

Indirect taxes are those which are demanded from one person in the expectation and intention that he shall indemnify himself at the expense to another.

### **Initial Public Offer (IPO)**

IPO is an initial issue of shares released by a company which invites share contributions from the public.

### **Inflation**

A situation of a steady and sustained rise in general prices is usually known as inflation. Inflation is a state in which the value of money is falling i.e. prices are rising.

### **Joint Demand**

Joint demand appears in case of complementary goods. When two commodities are complementary to one another and cannot be used separately, they have joint demand. Bread and butter, sugar and tea, pen and ink are a few examples of joint demand. In joint demand, a change in demand of one commodity brings about the proportionate change in demand for the other.

### **Joint Sector**

When a sector is jointly owned, managed and run by both public and private sector, it is called joint sector. This sector indicates the partnership between the two i.e. public and private sector.

### **Knowledge Processing Out-sourcing (KPO)**

KPO is a process in which knowledge based services (like services of Advocates, Engineers etc.) are sought from foreign countries. In modern days, many developed nations including USA are taking advantage of KPO.

### **Labour Union**

Labour union represents that organisation of workers which works for improving working condition of labours and also for raising their wage by adopting 'collective bargaining' measures with the management of the industry in particular.

### **Laffer Curve**

This curve is given by American economist Prof. Arthur Laffer. It represents relationship between total tax revenue and corresponding tax rates.

### **Laissez Faire**

It is a French word meaning 'non interference'. This doctrine was popularised by classical economists who gave the view that government should interfere as little as possible in the economic activities of the individuals.

### **Life Expectancy at Birth**

The number of years a newborn infant would live if prevailing pattern of age specific mortality rates at the time of birth were to stay the same throughout the child's life.

### **Liquidation**

Liquidation takes place because of company's insolvency. In liquidation, assets are turned into cash for settling outstanding debts and for apportioning the balance, if any, amongst the owners.

### **Liquidity**

Assets which can easily be converted into cash money are said to have liquidity. Land does not possess liquidity as it takes longer time to get converted into cash.

### **Liquidity Ratio**

The commercial banks under banking regulations have to maintain a certain specified proportion of their total deposits of various categories in liquid assets. This maintainable proportion is called liquidity ratio.

### **Listed Company**

When the shares of a company are listed in stock exchange markets, the company is called a listed company.

### **Loan Capital**

Capital in a company other than share capital is called loan capital. Loan capital (i.e., debentures) earns a fixed rate of interest.

### **Lorenz Curve**

This curve shows the degree of inequalities of a frequency distribution in a graphical manner. It is a curve on a graph which shows the cumulative proportion of a statistical population against this cumulative share of some characteristic. This curve is commonly used to depict income distribution showing the cumulative percentage of people from the poorest up and their cumulative share of national income.

### **Merit Goods**

Merit goods refer to those goods that are very essential to the society as a whole and hence the government ensures their availability to all consumers regardless of their ability to pay at reasonable price.

### **Micro Finance**

To provide credit facilities to rural poor, particularly to women without any corresponding guarantee for operating productive activities is known as micro finance. It is being used as a suitable instrument for women economic empowerment in rural areas.

### **Mixed Economy**

It refers to that economic system in which both private and public sector co-exists. Indian economy is an example of a mixed economy.

### **Money Market**

The term money market refers to the totality of financial institutions which deal with short-term funds in the economy. In other words, the money market represents the country's pool of short-term invisible funds to meet the short-term requirements of the economy.

### **Monetary Policy**

Monetary policy comprises all measures applied by the monetary authorities with a view to produce a deliberate impact on the nature and volume of money so as to achieve the objectives of general economic policy. It aims at regulating the flow of currency, credit and other money substitutes in an economy with a view to affect the total stock of such assets as well as to influence the demand of the community for such assets.

### **Monopoly**

Monopoly refers to that market structure where there is only one seller in the market who controls the entire market supply and no substitute of the product is available in the market.

### **Multinational Company**

It is a large scale company which has its production base in several countries and the bulk of the production is produced in outside nations. This company produces more overseas than they do in its parent country.

Increased trade and economies of scale have encouraged such type of companies in the recent years.

### **Non Performing Assets (NPA)**

NPAs signify those distributed loans by banks and financial institutions against which repayment of principal and the due interest payment is not timely made. Such unpaid amounts comprising principal as well as interest amount make non-performing assets.

### **Open Economy**

Open economy is that economy which is left free and the government imposes no restrictions on trade with areas outside that economy.

### **Okun's Law**

Arthur Okun presented an empirical relationship between cyclical movements in GNP and unemployment. Okun found that an annual 2-5% increase in the rate of real growth above the trend growth results in a 1% decrease in the rate of unemployment. This relationship is known as Okun's Law.

### **Permanent Account Number (PAN)**

PAN is a number issued by Income Tax Department to their tax payers. Every tax payer has to mention this PAN in the tax return filed every year. It is being used as measure to check tax evasion.

### **Poverty Line**

Poverty line is a virtual line demarcating persons living below and above it. In India, all those persons are treated living below poverty line who are not able to acquire food equivalent to 2100 calories per person per day in urban areas and 2400 calories per person per day in rural areas.

### **Public Issue**

Public issue refers to the direct offer of new shares by a company to the general public through newspaper advertisement on a pre-determined and published price.

### **Public Sector**

Public sector signifies those undertakings which are owned, managed and run by public authorities. Public sector includes direct government enterprise, the nationalised industries and public corporations. In this sector of the economy, the government acts

itself as an entrepreneur.

### **Regressive Tax**

It is a tax in which rate of taxation falls with an increase in income. In regressive taxation, incidence falls more on people having lower incomes than that of those having higher incomes.

### **Repressed Inflation**

It is a state in which aggregate demand is greater than the total supply of goods and services in an economy, but prices are prevented from rising to eliminate excess demand. The holding down of price is sometimes done by government as a means of suppressing inflation.

### **Reserve Asset Ratio**

It is the ratio of a bank's reserve assets to its eligible liabilities.

### **Security**

Security refers to a share, bond or government stock that can be bought and sold usually on the stock exchange or on a secondary market and carries a right to some form of income, either in the form of a fixed rate of interest or dividends.

### **Share Capital**

It is the amount of money raised by a company by issuing shares. Fully paid share capital is the amount raised by payment of the full par value of the issued shares.

### **Smart Card**

It is a scheme of post department started under premium savings banks service in some selected cities of the country. To eliminate the passbook system, a 'small card' is issued which can be used at various post offices for the withdrawal or deposit of money.

### **Socialism**

The political doctrine that the means of production (machines, materials and output) should be owned by society and specifically either by the state, as in the case of nationalized industries or by the workers directly, as in the case of producer co-operatives.

### **Special Drawing Rights (SDRs)**

It is a reserve asset (known as 'Paper Gold') created within the framework of the International Monetary Fund in an attempt to increase international liquidity and now

forming a part of countries official reserves along with gold, reserve positions in the IMF and convertible foreign currencies.

#### **Special Tax (Unit Tax)**

It is a tax imposed per unit of a commodity rather than on the value of the commodity compare ad-valorem.

#### **Stabilization Policy**

It is Government economic policy announced at reducing the cyclical and other fluctuations that take place in a market economy.

#### **Stagflation**

It is a state of the economy in which economic activity is slowing down, but wages and prices continue to rise. The term is a blend of the words stagnation and inflation.

#### **Tariff**

It is a tax or a duty on imports, which can be levied either on physical units. e.g. per tonne (specific) or on value (ad-valorem). Tariffs may be imposed for a variety of reasons including to raise government revenue, to protect domestic industry from subsidized or low-wage imports, to boost domestic employment or to ease a deficit on the balance of payments.

#### **Trade Union**

It is an organisation of employees who join together to further their interests. Trade Unions negotiate on behalf of their members in collective bargaining with employers and in the event of a dispute may put pressure on employers by withdrawing labour (i.e. strike) or by some less drastic form of action (i.e. go-slow, working to rule).

#### **Trickle Down Theory**

This theory signifies the attempt of transferring the benefits of high growth rate of

national income to the lowest strata of the society. This theory ensures to reduce the income disparities in the society.

#### **VAT (Value Added Tax)**

VAT seeks to tax the value added at every stage of manufacturing and sale with a provision of refunding the amount of VAT already paid at the earlier stages to avoid double taxation. In other words, the tax already paid can be claimed at the next stage of value addition.

#### **Wealth Tax**

Wealth tax is that tax which is imposed on the value of total assets but the wealth upto a certain limit is exempted from such tax.

#### **Welfare State**

It refers to a nation that provides to all at least the minimum standards in respect of education, health, housing, pensions and other social benefits.

#### **Wholesale Price Index**

Wholesale Price Index is that index which is calculated on the basis of wholesale prices. It is calculated in a similar way to the Retail Price Index.

#### **Webriz Curve**

Webriz Curve represents the graphical relationship between level of unemployment and level of employment avenues availability in the Country. Both these components of webriz curve have inverse relationship.

#### **Zender Budgeting**

Zender budgeting is an attempt to specify the attempts of women upliftment without any sex-discrimination while formulating policies and making allocation of funds for these policies.

□□□□



# 15 Population Highlights - 2011

## Population Census 2011

- Total population of India is 1.2 billion.
- It comprises 62.37 crores males and 58.65 crores females.
- Density of population is 382 persons/sq km.
- Sex ratio is 940 females/1000 males.

### The major highlights of the Census 2011 (Provisional figures) are as under:

- The population of India has increased by more than 181 million during the decade 2001-2011.
- Percentage growth in 2001-2011 is 17.64; Males-17.19 and Females-18.12.
- 2001-2011 is the first decade (with the exception of 1911-1921) which has actually added lesser population compared to the previous decade.
- Uttar Pradesh (199.5 million) is the most populous State in the country followed by Maharashtra with 112 million.
- The percentage decadal growth rates of the six most populous States have declined during 2001-2011 compared to 1991-2001:
  - Uttar Pradesh (25.85% to 20.09%)
  - Maharashtra (22.73% to 15.99%)
  - Bihar (28.62% to 25.07%)
  - West Bengal (17.77 % to 13.93%)
  - Andhra Pradesh (14.59% to 11.10%)
  - Madhya Pradesh (24.26% to 20.30%)
- The total number of children in the age-group 0-6 is 158.8 million (-5 million since 2001)
- Uttar Pradesh (29.7 million), Bihar (18.6 million), Maharashtra (12.8 million), Madhya Pradesh (10.5 million) and Rajasthan (10.5 million) constitute 52% children in the age group of 0-6 years.
- Population (0-6 years) 2001-2011 registered minus (-)3.08 % growth with minus (-)2.42 for males and -3.80 for females.
- The **proportion of Child Population** in the age group of 0-6 years to total population is 13.1 % while the corresponding figure in 2001 was 15.9 %. The decline has been

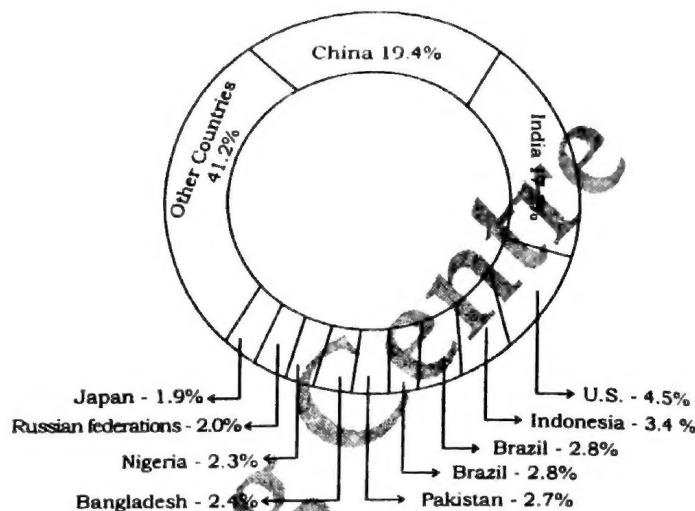
to the extent of 2.8 points

- **Overall sex ratio** at the national level has increased by 7 points to reach 940 at Census 2011 as against 933 in Census 2001. This is the **highest sex ratio** recorded since Census 1971 and a shade lower than 1961. Increase in sex ratio is observed in 29 States/UTs.
  - Three major States (J&K, Bihar & Gujarat) have shown decline in sex ratio as compared to Census 2001.
  - **Kerala** with 1084 has the highest sex ratio followed by Puducherry with 1038, Daman & Diu has the lowest sex ratio of 618
  - **Mizoram** has the highest **child sex ratio** (0-6 years) of 971 followed by Meghalaya with 970. Haryana is at the bottom with ratio of 830 followed by Punjab with 846.
  - **Percentage growth in literacy during 2001-2011** is 38.82; males 31.98% & females 49.10%.
- Important facts from provisional 2011 Census Report:
- According to the provisional 2011 Census report, India's population is now pegged at 1.21 billion i.e an increase of more than 181 million in the last 10 years.
  - The Census 2011 is the 15th census of India since 1872 and conducted in two phases - houselisting and housing census (April to September 2010) and population enumeration (February 9 to 28, 2011).
  - India now accounts for world's 17.5 per cent population.
  - China has 19.4 per cent of the world's total population whereas India has 17.5 per cent of the world's population.
  - India's population is now bigger than the combined population of USA, Indonesia, Brazil, Pakistan and Bangladesh.
  - **Uttar Pradesh** is the most **populous state** and the combined population of Uttar Pradesh and Maharashtra is more than that of the USA.
  - The most populous district is Thane in Maharashtra. The Union Territory of

**Lakshadweep** is the **least populated** at 64,429.

- The highest population density is in Delhi's Northeast district (37,346 per sq km) while the lowest is in Dibang Valley in Arunachal Pradesh (just one per sq km).
- The latest **child sex ratio** is 914 females /1,000 males-the lowest since Independence.
- **Child sex ratio** in the **Punjab(830/1000)** and **Haryana (846/1000)** remains worst.
- The gap of 21.59 percentage points recorded between male and female literacy rates in 2001 census reduced to 16.68 percentage points in 2011
- The **literacy rate** has gone up from 64.83 per cent in 2001 to 74.04 per cent in 2011 showing an increase of 9.21 per cent.(Anyone above age 7 who can read and write in any language is considered a Literate.)
- **Literacy rate** for males rose from 75.26 to 82.14 per cent marking a rise of 6.9 per cent, it increased by 11.8 per cent for females to go from 53.67 to 65.46 per cent. Literacy rate improved sharply among females as compared to males.
- Ten states and union territories that have attained literacy rate of above 85% are- Kerala, Lakshadweep, Mizoram, Tripura, Goa, Daman and Diu, Puducherry, Chandigarh, National Capital Territory of Delhi and the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
- **Kerala** has the **highest literacy rate** at 93.91 per cent followed by Lakshadweep at 92.28 per cent.
- **Mizoram's** two districts - Serchhip (98.76 per cent) and Aizawl (98.50 per cent) have recorded highest literacy rates while Madhya Pradesh's Alirajpur district (37.22 per cent) and Chhattisgarh's Bijapur district (41.58 per cent) recorded lowest literacy rates.
- **Bihar** is at the bottom of the ladder with literacy rate of 63.82 followed by **Arunachal Pradesh** at 66.95.

## India Compared to 9 others most populous countries in the world



### Number of administrative units in 2011

• State/UTs	35
• Districts	640
• Sub-Districts	5,924
• Villages	6.41 Lakh

### Population - Census - 2011

• Person	1210.2 million
• Males	623.7 million
• Females	586.5 million

### Top 5 states/ UTs in terms of population

• Uttar Pradesh	19,95,81,477
• Maharashtra	11,23,72,972
• Bihar	10,38,04,637
• West Bengal	9,13,47,736
• Andhra Pradesh	8,46,65,533

### Bottom 5 States/UTs in terms of population

• Lakshadweep	64,429
• Daman & Diu	11,23,72,972
• D. & N. Haveli	3,42,853
• A. & N. Islands	3,19,944
• Sikkim	6,07,680

Bottom 2 Districts in terms of population	
• Dibang Valley (Arunachal Pradesh)	7, 948
• Angew (Arunachal Pradesh)	21,089

Top 2 States as per Sex Ratio 2011-	
• Kerala	1,084
• Puducherry	1,038

Bottom 2 States	
• Daman & Diu	618
• Dadar & Nagar Haveli	775

Districts ranked as per sex Ratio 2011	
Top 2 Districts	Bottom 2 Districts
• Male : 1,176 (Puducherry)	Daman : 533
• Almora : 1,142 (Uttarakhand)	Leh (Ladakh) (Jammu & Kashmir)

States/UTs ranked as per Sex Ratio (0-6 year) 2011	
Top 2 States/UTs	Bottom 2 States/UTs
Districts Sex Ratio (0-6)	Districts Sex Ratio (0-6)
Mizoram : 971	Haryana : 830
Meghalaya : 970	Punjab : 846

Districts ranked as per Sex Ratio (0-6) 2011	
Top 2 States/UTs	Bottom 2 States/UTs
Districts Sex Ratio (0-6)	Districts Sex Ratio (0-6)
Lahul & Spit : 1,013 (Himachal Pradesh)	Jhaijar : 774 (Haryana)
Tawang (Arunachal Pradesh) 1,005	Mahendragarh : 778 (Haryana)

Ranking of States-Literacy-Rate-2011			
Top 2 States/UTs		Bottom 2 States/UTs	
State	Literacy Rate	State	Literacy Rate
Kerala	93.91	Bihar	63.82
Laksh	92.28	Arunachal	66.95
Adweep		Pradesh,	

Districts Ranked as-per Literacy Rate 2011			
Top 2 States/UTs		Bottom 2 States/UTs	
State	Literacy Rate	State	Literacy Rate
Serchhip	98.76	Aliraypur (M.P.)	37.22
Aizawl (Mizoram)	98.50	Bijapur (Chhattisgarh)	41.58

Ranking of States-UTs as per population Density 2011			
Top 2 States/UTs		Bottom 2 States/UTs	
States/UTs	Density	States/UTs	Density
NCT of Delhi	11,297	Arunachal Pradesh	17
Chandigarh	9,252	A.&N. Islands	46

Districts as per population density 2011			
Top 2 Districts		Bottom 2 Districts	
Districts	Density	Districts	Density
North East NCT of Delhi	37.346	Dibang Valley (Arunachal Pradesh)	1
Chennai (Tamil Nadu)	26,903	Samba (Jammu & Kashmir)	2

Density of Population 2001-2011			
	2011	2011	Difference
Density	325	382	57
			% Difference
			17.5

# Census 2011 : At a Glance (Provisional Figures)

S. No.	State/UTs	Total Population			Sex-Ratio (No. of Females per 1,000 Males)	Density (persons per sq. km)	Percent- age Decadal growth	Literacy Rate (%)			Contrib- ution of States Population in Total Population (per cent)
		Persons	Males	Females				In Total Popula- tion	Males	Females	
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	India	1,210,193,422	623,724,248	586,469,174	940	382	17.64	74.04	82.14	69.46	100.00
1.	Jammu & Kashmir	12,548,926	6,665,561	5,883,365	883	124	23.71	68.74	78.26	58.07	1.04
2.	Himachal Pradesh	6,856,509	3,473,892	3,382,617	974	123	12.81	83.78	90.83	76.60	0.57
3.	Punjab	27,704,236	14,634,819	13,069,417	893	550	13.73	76.68	81.48	71.34	2.29
4.	Chandigarh	1,054,686	580,282	474,404	818	9,252	17.10	86.43	90.54	81.38	0.09
5.	Uttarakhand	10,116,752	5,154,178	4,962,574	963	189	19.17	79.61	88.33	70.70	0.84
6.	Haryana	25,353,081	13,505,130	11,847,951	877	573	19.90	76.64	85.38	66.77	2.09
7.	Delhi	16,753,235	8,976,410	7,776,825	866	11,297	20.96	86.34	91.03	80.93	1.38
8.	Rajasthan	68,621,012	35,620,086	33,000,926	926	201	21.44	67.06	80.51	52.66	5.67
9.	Uttar Pradesh	199,581,477	104,596,415	94,985,062	908	828	20.09	69.72	79.24	59.26	16.49
10.	Bihar	103,804,637	54,185,347	49,619,290	916	1,102	25.07	63.82	73.39	53.33	8.58
11.	Sikkim	607,688	321,661	286,027	889	86	12.36	82.20	87.29	76.43	0.05
12.	Arunachal Pradesh	1,382,611	720,232	662,379	920	17	25.92	66.95	73.69	59.57	0.11
13.	Nagaland	1,980,602	1,025,707	954,895	931	119	-0.47	80.11	83.29	76.69	0.16
14.	Manipur	2,721,756	1,369,764	1,351,992	987	122	18.65	79.85	86.49	73.17	0.22
15.	Mizoram	1,091,014	552,339	538,675	975	52	22.78	91.58	93.72	89.40	0.09
16.	Tripura	3,671,032	1,871,867	1,799,165	961	350	14.75	87.75	92.18	83.15	0.30
17.	Meghalaya	2,964,007	1,492,668	1,471,339	986	132	27.82	75.48	77.17	73.78	0.24
18.	Assam	31,169,272	15,954,927	15,214,345	954	397	16.93	73.18	78.81	67.27	2.58
19.	West Bengal	91,347,736	46,927,389	44,420,347	947	1,029	13.93	77.08	82.67	71.16	7.55
20.	Jharkhand	32,966,238	16,931,688	16,034,550	947	414	22.34	67.63	78.45	56.21	2.72
21.	Odisha	41,947,358	21,201,878	20,745,680	978	269	13.97	73.45	82.40	64.36	3.47
22.	Chhattisgarh	25,540,196	12,827,915	12,712,281	991	189	22.59	71.04	81.45	60.59	2.11
23.	Madhya Pradesh	72,593,563	37,612,920	34,984,645	930	236	20.30	70.63	80.53	60.02	6.00
24.	Gujarat	60,382,620	31,482,282	28,901,346	918	308	19.17	79.31	87.23	70.73	4.99
25.	Daman & Diu	42,911	150,100	92,811	618	2,169	53.54	87.07	91.48	79.59	0.02
26.	Dadra & Nagar Haveli	542,853	193,178	149,675	775	698	55.50	77.65	86.46	65.93	0.03
27.	Maharashtra	112,372,972	58,361,397	54,011,575	925	365	15.99	82.91	89.82	75.48	9.29
28.	Andhra Pradesh	84,665,533	42,509,881	42,155,652	992	308	11.10	67.66	75.56	59.74	7.00
29.	Karnataka	61,130,704	31,057,742	30,072,962	968	319	15.67	75.60	82.85	68.13	5.05
30.	Goa	1,457,723	740,711	717,012	968	394	8.17	87.40	92.81	81.84	0.12
31.	Lakshadweep	64,429	33,106	31,323	946	2,013	6.23	92.28	96.11	88.25	0.01
32.	Kerala	33,387,677	16,021,290	17,366,387	1,084	859	4.86	93.91	96.02	91.98	2.76
33.	Tamil Nadu	72,138,958	36,158,871	35,980,087	995	555	15.60	80.33	86.81	73.86	5.96
34.	Puducherry	1,244,464	610,485	633,979	1,038	2,598	27.72	86.55	92.12	81.22	0.10
35.	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	379,944	202,330	177,614	878	46	6.68	86.27	90.11	81.84	0.03





***Conferred the Best Coaching institute of the NCR Award  
by  
The Educational Standards and Testing Council of India***

**Head Office**

**Mukherjee Nagar : 704, Above Big Apple, Dr. Mukherjee Nagar, Delhi-110009**

**Centres at  
Delhi- NCR**

★ MUKHERJEE NAGAR ★ KINGSWAY CAMP ★ MUNIRKA ★ NOIDA ★ ROHINI  
★ BADARPUR BORDER ★ DILSHAD GARDEN ★ GURGAON ★ UTTAM NAGAR

**Others**

★ VARANASI ★ MEERUT ★ AGRA ★ JAIPUR ★ ROHTAK ★ PANIPAT ★ PATNA  
★ BAHADURGARH ★ ANUPPUR ★ SONEPAT ★ CHANDIGARH ★ LUCKNOW